

VISIT...

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

中文

中文课程

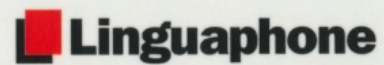


Handbook



 **Linguaphone**

Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone
Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone
Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone
Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone
Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone
Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone
Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone
Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone
Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone
Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone
Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone Linguaphone



Linguaphone Institute Limited, London
www.linguaphone.com

GCHEN110

中文课程

Handbook

Translation Notes Vocabularies

Linguaphone Institute Limited
Liongate Enterprise Park
80 Morden Road
Mitcham CR4 4PH
Great Britain

© MCMLXXVI Linguaphone Institute Limited, London

All rights reserved. No part of this publication, or related recorded material, may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of Linguaphone Institute Limited.

This impression 2003

LSN GCHENH10

Printed and bound in Great Britain by
Antony Rowe Ltd

Course prepared by: **Professor Nobumitsu Kanegae**, President of Tokyo University of Foreign Studies, and Professor of Chinese.

Professor Yasokichi Mochizuki, Professor of Chinese, Osaka City University.

Professor Weixian Gao, Professor of Chinese, Tenri University.

Recorded by: Staff of the New Asia Yale in China Language Centre in Hong Kong, and by specially selected teachers of Chinese in the Linguaphone Studio in London.

This Handbook compiled by: **D. E. Pollard**, Professor of Modern Chinese, School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London

T. R. Chang, B.A., formerly lecturer in Chinese, Ealing College.

Note: The prices and situations in this course, current at the time of writing, may not necessarily reflect present-day values and conditions.

The Linguaphone Academic Advisory Committee

Chairman :

Professor the Lord Quirk, D.Litt., FBA, Chairman of the British Library Advisory Committee; Past President of the British Academy; sometime Vice-Chancellor, University of London; formerly Quain Professor of English, University College London; Hon. Fil. Dr (Lund, Uppsala); Hon. Doct. d'Univ. (Paris, Liège, Nijmegen); Hon. LL D (Reading); Hon. D.Litt. (Leicester, Salford, Newcastle, Durham, Glasgow, Bar Ilan, Southern California, Brunel); Hon. D.U. (Bath, Essex, Open); Hon. D.Sc. (Aston); Fellow of the Royal Belgian Academy of Sciences, of the Royal Swedish Academy, of the Finnish Academy of Sciences, and of the Academia Europaea.

Members :

Professor Ian T M Gow, MA, Ph.D., Dip Jap, FIL(Hon.), Director, School of East Asian Studies, University of Sheffield; Member: Office of Science and Technology's Asia Pacific Advisory Group, UK-Japan 2000 Education Committee; formerly Director, Scottish Centre for Japanese Studies and Deputy Principal, University of Stirling.

Professor Nigel B R Reeves, OBE, MA, D.Phil., FIL, FRSA, CIEs, Goethe Medaille of the Goethe Institute, Professor of German and Head of the Department of Modern Languages, Aston University, Member of Board, Institute of Germanic Studies, University of London, Vice President, Institute of Linguists.

Professor Albert Sonnenfeld, AM, Ph.D. (Princeton), Officier, Ordre des Palmes Académiques, Officier, Ordre des Arts et des Lettres, Marion Frances Chevalier Professor of French and Comparative Literature, Chairman, Department of French and Italian, University of Southern California; formerly Professor of French and Chairman, Department of Romance Languages and Literatures, Princeton University.

Professor J C Wells, MA (Cantab), Ph.D. (London), Professor of Phonetics in the University of London.

Christine Wilding, BA, Secretary General of the Association for Language Learning, Chevalier, Ordre des Palmes Académiques.

Contents

This Handbook	vi
Chinese grammar	vii
Chinese characters	ix
Pinyin	x
The sounds of Chinese	1
Introduction	3
Lessons 1 - 28	5
Alphabetical vocabulary	203
Proper names	233

This Handbook

In this Handbook you will find:

- 1 Introductory notes on:
 - a Chinese grammar,
 - b Chinese characters,
 - c the Pinyin form of spelling;
- 2 Notes on the sounds of Chinese;
- 3 A translation of the Introduction;
- 4 For each of lessons 1 - 28:
 - a a complete translation of the text of the lesson,
 - b a list of the new words introduced in the lesson, with their English equivalents; the words are listed in the order of their appearance in the lesson,
 - c explanatory notes on the grammatical points of each lesson;
- 5 An alphabetical vocabulary listing all the words used in the course, with their English equivalents;
- 6 A list of the proper names used in the course.

Chinese grammar

Words

- 1 Chinese words are very versatile grammatically. Much more commonly than in English, the same word may be both adjective and adverb, or noun and verb, or other combinations of parts of speech.
- 2 Probably due to the fact that there are often a variety of meanings for the same sound, a large number of Chinese characters/words have to combine with others in order to be identifiable. For instance, the character **fù**: *father* when written is unambiguous, but to the ear it would in isolation suggest several possibilities; therefore it has to combine with other characters to convey the intended meaning, e.g. **fùqin**: *father-relative* = *father*, or **fù-mǔ**: *father-mother* = *parents*. "Words" like this we call "bound" words, or "combining forms". Other words which are intelligible by themselves we call "free".

Nouns

- 1 Nouns in Chinese do not have plural forms, with the exception of groups of people, and then only in certain circumstances. Pronouns, however, do have plural forms.
- 2 There are a few suffixes (word endings) which are peculiar to nouns, like **-zi** and **-tou**, but by no means all nouns take such suffixes.

Verbs

- 1 The form of the verb itself does not vary. That means there are no plural forms, comparable to *he has/they have*, and there are no tense changes, like *I have/I had*. But Chinese does have verb suffixes to indicate aspect: **-zhe** to show that an action is/was in progress (comparable to **-ing** in English), and **-le** to show that an action has/had been completed. There are also auxiliary verbs to indicate that an action is in prospect (like *will* in English).
- 2 Chinese verbs are indeterminate as to voice, that is, they can be either "active" or "passive". For example, the verb **chī** could mean either *eat* or *be eaten*, according to context. There are, however, means of indicating that the subject of a sentence is being acted upon, rather than originating the action, and these are being used increasingly regularly nowadays.
- 3 Imperatives have no special form. The command *Come!*, for instance, may be expressed by the plain verb **Lái!**, or by the verb together with the pronoun: **Nǐ lái!**—*You come!*

- 4 Verbs in Chinese only stand for initiatives: they are non-committal on whether the action denoted was actually carried out. In other words, the simple verb form covers contingencies where *try to* or *go to* must be supplied in English. Consequently, to indicate the successful completion of an action, Chinese has a variety of verb endings or complements which by themselves mean such things as *attain*, *finish*, *satisfactory*, etc.

Sentence particles

Chinese is rich in single-syllable sounds with no definite meaning which convey a tone of voice. They are necessitated by the limited range of intonation possible in a tonal language. They include **ba** (suggestion), **ma** (enquiry), **a** or **ya** (surprise).

Sentences

- 1 By the standards of English, Chinese sentences are often incomplete: in particular, pronouns in the subject position are commonly omitted when it is clear who is being referred to.
- 2 In complex sentences, the connection between the parts is not always marked. Though there are words in Chinese for connectives like *when*, *and*, *so*, *that is*, etc., they are not always used. What you might find instead is simply a progression of events or images. For instance, in Lesson ten there is a sentence **Wǒ xiǎng mǎi diǎnr biānpào huíqu fàng**; word for word this is *I intend buy some firecrackers go back let off*. This just presents the succession of events visualized by the speaker without any *in order to*, *when* or *and*.

Word order

- 1 In a simple sentence Chinese word order generally follows the familiar sequence of subject—verb—object, e.g. **Wǒ xué Zhōngwén**: *I am studying Chinese*. But, especially in more complex sentences, the tendency is to start the sentence with the matter you wish to comment on (called the “topic”), and then say what you want to say about it. The “topic” may be the logical object of the verb, e.g. **Nèi běn xiǎoshuō wǒ kànle liǎng cì**: *That novel I read twice*. In English such word order is normally adopted only if some contrast is intended, which is not necessarily the case in Chinese.
- 2 The general rule in Chinese syntax is that the modifier precedes the modified. That means for one thing that adverbs come before verbs: in the sentence *We leave tomorrow*, *tomorrow* must precede *leave* (**Wǒmen míngtiān líkāi**: *We tomorrow leave*). It also means that adjectival expressions precede the nouns they describe: in *this big box* the word order

would correspond with the English, but in the phrase *the man with long hair*, *with long hair* would also precede *the man*; even relative clauses (e.g. *who opened the door for me*) still precede the noun, giving the order *the for-me-open-door man*.

- 3 In questions containing interrogative words, such as *why*, *who*, *what*, *how*, the word order is the same as that of corresponding statements. For example, instead of asking *What is he learning?*, the Chinese ask *He is learning what?* (answer: *He is learning Chinese*).

Chinese characters

Every syllable which goes to make up a word in Chinese is represented in writing by a separate character. It is as if the word *retain* in English were written with two signs meaning *hold* and *back*. Just as *re-* and *-tain* occur in several different words in English, so the same characters recur in different combinations in Chinese. One sound, however, may have a multiplicity of meanings, and each meaning is matched by a different character; so *hard* in English may have several different meanings, but they are all written in the same way, while **yìng** in Chinese is written differently depending on whether it means *hard*, or *respond*, or *reflect*, or something else again.

The number of recorded characters (from a literature going back thousands of years) is huge, but a workable vocabulary for the present day would be about three thousand. Undoubtedly there was a strong pictorial element in the drawing of characters originally, but this pictorial element is hardly recognizable any more. In many cases characters still give clues to their meaning and pronunciation from the way they are constructed, with a “radical” and “phonetic”. Ideally the radical indicates the general class of ideas to which the word belongs: the “heart” radical governs emotional terms, plants have a “wood” radical, liquids a “water” radical, and so on; but there are many characters which have a purely arbitrary radical. Similarly, the “phonetic” element sometimes gives an accurate indication of the pronunciation, but as often it is unreliable in terms of the modern language. Traditionally characters have been classed under 214 radicals. In the Chinese People’s Republic this number has been reduced to 189 in the process of simplification, which has also involved a reduction in the number of strokes of more complicated characters. The characters printed in this text are of this simplified kind. In this course they are used only for reference, however: no attempt is made in this book to teach how they are constructed, or the order in which the strokes are written. A separate book provides an introduction to the characters.

Pinyin

The chief medium for presenting the language here is a form of spelling called Pinyin. It is used in the People's Republic as an aid in teaching the national language (known as **pǔtōnghuà**: *common language*). Pinyin had several predecessors in China, but all instructional materials currently produced in China, and most material produced abroad, adopt this system. The majority of the letters pinyin uses have a sound value similar to (not the same as!) that of English letters, but some are quite different. In particular we would draw your attention to the last three groups of consonants in your sounds section 2 (**j, q, x**; **zh, ch, sh, r**; **z, c, s**), and to the vowels **i** and **ü**: the **i** following **z, c, s**; **zh, ch, sh, r** represents a quite different sound from that following the other consonants; and the **ü** sound in **nü** and **lǚ** is common to **ju, qu, xu**, and **yu**, only the two dots are dropped in the latter group. Further spelling changes are dealt with in the notes on the sounds section which follow.

The sounds of Chinese

You will find the sounds at the beginning of the recordings and the printed version at the beginning of the Textbook.

- 1 Names of the letters. This shows how individual letters are referred to, as "ay" (a), "bee" (b), etc. in English.
- 2 Initial Consonants. These are pronounced here not in isolation, but with a vowel following.
- 3 Tones of Monosyllabic Words. Tone refers to the relative pitch of the voice within the normal speaking range—not extra high or extra low. The pitch contours can be described as follows:
 - (1) ā, first tone: high, level, even in loudness.
 - (2) á, second tone: starts about the middle of the normal pitch range and rises, at the same time increasing in loudness.
 - (3) ǎ, third tone: starts fairly low and dips to nearly the bottom of the range, then briefly turns up at the end.
 - (4) à, fourth tone: starts high and loud, falls abruptly in pitch and loudness.
- 4 Aspirated sounds and unaspirated sounds. This unit contrasts sounds which are differentiated only by the presence or absence of an initial puff of breath.
- 5 Finals
 - (1) Single vowel sounds. Of these, the ê is that which occurs as a final after another vowel, as in **bie** and **lüe**; the "circumflex" sign is not used in combinations. The **i** after **zh** and the **i** after **z** are both retroflex (the tongue being curled back), but (**zh**)**i** is produced from the back of the mouth, (**z**)**i** from the front.
i is written as **yi** in isolation and as **y** at the beginning of syllables (e.g. **yan**)
u is written as **wu** in isolation and as **w** at the beginning of syllables (e.g. **wen**)
ü is written as **yu** in isolation and at the beginning of syllables (e.g. **yue**)
 - (2) Diphthongs (2 vowel sounds in combination).
 - (3) Triphthongs (3 vowel sounds in combination). As you see from the examples, **uei**, and **iou** are written as **-ui** and **-iu** when preceded by a consonant.
 - (4) Nasalized finals. The sound **uen** is written as **un** (as in **chūn**).
 - (5) Retroflex Vowel (i.e. produced with tongue curled back).
- 6 Tones of Two-syllable Words.
Third tone. When immediately followed by another syllable, the third

tone falls away without turning up at the end (**Běijīng, yǎnyuán, jiěfàng**), except when a third tone is followed by another third tone, when the first one rises like a second tone (**guǎnlǐ**).

Fourth tone. When a fourth tone is followed by another fourth tone, the pitch contour of the first is slightly restricted, and it is pronounced slightly less loudly than the second (**shèhuì**).

7 Changes of tone.

Here **wǒ mǎi** illustrates the rise in tone of the first of two third tone words said together (N.B. these changes are not marked in our text).

When three or four third tone words occur in sequence, all but the last change to the rising contour of the second tone, except that normally unstressed words may change to first tone. In **Wǒ yě xiǎng mǎi, yě** is one of those unstressed syllables. In longer sequences of third tones, the sequence may be broken according to natural sense-groupings: in **Wǒ yě xiǎng mǎi bǐjìběn**, the break occurs between **wǒ yě xiǎng**: *I also intend* and **mǎi bǐjìběn**: *to buy a notebook*.

8 Stressed Syllables.

Though in isolation all meaningful elements in Chinese have a tone, in certain combinations some syllables lose their specific tone, become “atonal” or “neutral”. The first group in this unit illustrates the neutral tone following first, second, third and fourth tones; then for contrast the second group demonstrates initial first, second, third and fourth tone syllables followed by full-stressed syllables in the same tone.

9 Finals with **er** suffix.

This final **-r** is particularly associated with Peking dialect. It tends to absorb the final sound of the word to which it is attached, but for recognition purposes the spelling of the original word is retained.

10 Retroflex Sounds.

This unit practises the four retroflex initials, **zh, sh, ch** and **r**, and the sibilant initials **z** and **s** in combination with the retroflex vowel **i**.

11 Numbers.

There are **Yī**: *one*; **èr**: *two*; **sān**: *three*; **sì**: *four*; **wǔ**: *five*; **liù**: *six*; **qī**: *seven*; **bā**: *eight*; **jiǔ**: *nine*; **shí**: *ten*; **bǎi**: *hundred*; **qiān**: *thousand*; **wàn**: *ten thousand*; **yì**: *hundred million*; **líng**: *zero*.

Rùmén piān

Introduction

One

Lin Lisan: Hello!
My name is Lin Lisan.
I am Chinese.
I am a teacher.

He is a visitor.
He is not Chinese.
He is a foreigner.
He can speak Chinese.

I teach Chinese.
You learn Chinese.
You are a student.
I read, you listen.
I speak, you write.

This is a record.
That is a tape-recorder.
This is a book.
That is a note-book.
That is not a pencil.

Two

Lin Lisan: How do you do.
Student: How do you do, teacher.
Lin Lisan: Please sit down.
Student: Thank you.
Lin Lisan: You are a student?
Student: Yes, I am a student.
Lin Lisan: What are you studying?
Student: I am studying Chinese.
Lin Lisan: Have you a text-book?
Student: I have a text-book.
Lin Lisan: There you are! (You have come!)

Guest: How are you?
Lin Lisan: Please come in!
Guest: Thank you.
Lin Lisan: You are all well?
Guest: (Yes,) all very well, thanks.
Lin Lisan: Please have some tea.
Guest: I have to go.
Lin Lisan: Goodbye.
Guest: Goodbye.

Three

Wang Dawen: My name is Wang Dawen.
I am from Peking.
I am twenty-six years old.
I work at the travel agency.
This is my father.

Wang Quanmin: Hello!
I am Wang Quanmin.
I am fifty.
I am a worker.

Wang Dawen: This is my mother.

Guo Fengmei: Hello!
I am Kuo Fengmei.
I am forty-five years old.
I also am a worker.

Wang Dawen: This is my brother.

Wang Guiwen: Hello!
I am Wang Guiwen.
I am seventeen years old.
I am a high-school student.

Wang Dawen: This is my sister.

Wang Huiying: Hello!
My name is Wang Huiying.
I am thirteen years old.
I am a junior high-school student.

Wang Dawen: That is Comrade Li Guodong.
He is from Canton.
He is my friend.
That is Comrade Zhang Yi.
He is also from Peking.
He is my colleague.
That is Comrade Sun Yulan.
She is not from Peking.
She is from Shanghai.
She also is my colleague.
That is Comrade Zhao Ziqiang.
He is our neighbour.
He is a driver.

Dì yī kè

Lesson one

Wǒ jiā

My home

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: My home is in Maxian Lane in Peking.
My home is a single-storied house.
My home has three rooms.
My home has a small yard.
In the yard there is a pomegranate tree.
There are two oleanders.
The pomegranate tree is on the east side.
The oleanders are on the west side.
On the east side there are also four tubs of monthly roses.
On the west side there are also some plants and flowers.

In my family there are five people,
father, mother, brother, sister and me.
My father works in a printing works.
My mother works in a textile mill.
I work in a travel agency.
My brother studies in high-school.
My sister studies in junior high-school.
They are both good all-round students.
My family is a happy family.

This is my room.
This is also my brother and sisters' room.
This is the room of the three of us.
That is my mum and dad's room.
The room in the middle is the living room.
In the living room there is a square table.
On the table there is a clock, a radio, and also a pair of vases.
Here we eat, talk, and entertain guests.

Today is Sunday.
Dad is reading the paper indoors.
Mum is looking at the flowers in the yard.
I am reading a book indoors.
Neither my brother nor sister are at home.

Two

My Dwelling-house

Zhang Yi: Comrade Wang, where is your home?

Wang Dawen: In Maxian Lane.

Zhang Yi: Is your home a single-storied house?
 Wang Dawen: Yes.
 Zhang Yi: How many rooms has your house?
 Wang Dawen: It has three rooms.

Zhang Yi: Whose room is this?

Wang Dawen: This is my room.

Zhang Yi: Whose room is that?

Wang Dawen: It is dad and mum's.

Zhang Yi: What is the room in the middle?

Wang Dawen: The living room.

Zhang Yi: Where do you eat?

Wang Dawen: In the living room.

Zhang Yi: Has your home a yard?

Wang Dawen: Yes, it has a small yard.

Zhang Yi: What is there in the yard?

Wang Dawen: There is a pomegranate tree.

Zhang Yi: What else is there?

Wang Dawen: There are also oleanders.

Zhang Yi: How many are there?

Wang Dawen: Two.

Zhang Yi: What else is there?

Wang Dawen: There are also some monthly roses.

Zhang Yi: How many tubs?

Wang Dawen: Four.

Zhang Yi: On which side is the pomegranate tree?

Wang Dawen: On the east side.

Zhang Yi: And the oleanders?

Wang Dawen: On the west side.

The members of my family

Zhang Yi: Who is there in your family?

Wang Dawen: My father, mother, brother and sister; there is another older sister, already married.

Zhang Yi: You haven't any elder brothers or sisters?

Wang Dawen: That's right, I haven't.

Zhang Yi: How old is your father?

Wang Dawen: Fifty.

Zhang Yi: How old is your mother?

Wang Dawen: Forty-five.

Zhang Yi: What does your father do?

Wang Dawen: He's a worker (a manual worker).

Zhang Yi: Does your mother also work?

Wang Dawen: That's right, she too is a worker.

Zhang Yi: Where does your father work?

Wang Dawen: In a printing works.

Zhang Yi: And your mother?

Wang Dawen: In a textile mill.

Zhang Yi: Do your brother and sister both work too?

Wang Dawen: No, they are both at secondary school.

Zhang Yi: Is your father at home today?

Wang Dawen: Yes.

Zhang Yi: What is he doing at home?

Wang Dawen: He's reading the paper.

Zhang Yi: Is your mother at home too?

Wang Dawen: Yes, she's at home too.

Zhang Yi: Is she also reading the paper?

Wang Dawen: No, she's not reading the paper, she's looking at the flowers in the yard.

Zhang Yi: Are your brother and sister both at home?

Wang Dawen: No, they are both out.

Words in this lesson

dì prefix for ordinal numbers

yī one

kè lesson

wǒ I, me

jiā home, family

zài (as a main verb) to be located;

(as a preposition) in, at, on

Běijīng Peking

Máxiàn a proper name

hútong lane (in a city)

yǒu to have; there is (are)

sān three

jiān measure word for rooms

wūzi room

ge general measure word

xiǎo small

yuànzi yard

lǐ in

kē measure word for trees

shíliushù pomegranate tree

liǎng two, a couple

jiàzhútáo oleander tree

dōngbianr east side

xībianr west side

hái as well, in addition, else

sì four

pén tub, bowl, pot

yuèjihua monthly roses

yìxiē some, a few

cǎohuā plants and flowers

wǔ five

rén person, people

fùqin father

mǔqin mother

didi younger brother

mèimei younger sister

hé together with, and

yìnshuāchǎng printing works

gōngzuò work, to work

fǎngzhīchǎng textile mill

lǚxíngshè travel agency

gāozhōng contraction of gāoji

zhōngxué higher middle school

dúshū to study

chūzhōng contraction of chūjí

zhōngxué lower middle school

dōu both, all

shì to be

sānhǎo (literally 'three good') good all

round

xuésheng student

xìngfú happy, fortunate

de subordinating particle

jiāting family

zhè this

wǒde my

yě also

wǒmen we

nà that

bàba dad

māma mum

zhōngjiān middle, in between

tángwū living room

zhāng measure word for tables

fāngzhuōzi square table

zhuōzi table

shang on top of
zuòzhōng (console model) clock
jià measure word for radio set
shōuyīnjī radio receiver
duì pair
huāping vase
zhèr here
chī eat
fàn food
tánhuà talk, chat
dàikè entertain guests
jintiān today
xīngqīrì Sunday
wūli indoors
kàn look at, read
bào newspaper
huār flower(s)
ne grammatical particle
shū book(s)
bù, bu not, not so
èr two
zhùfáng dwelling-house
tóngzhì comrade
nǐ you
nǎr where?
ma question particle

jǐ how many?
shuí who? shuíde whose?
shénme what?
nǎibianr which side?
jiāshǔ family members, relatives
dà oldest (among classes of relatives)
dameimei oldest younger-sister
yǐjīng already
jiéhūn marry
le perfective particle
méi not (negates yóu)
gēge older brother
jiějie older sister
duō how? to what extent?
dà big, great
suishur age, number of years
wúshí fifty
suì year(s) of age
niánji age
sishiwǔ forty-five
zuò do
shì business, affairs
gōngren manual worker
duìle that's right
zhōngxuéshēng middle school students
shì that is so, yes

Notes

Part one

- 1 **dì yī kè: lesson one; (lit) the first lesson**
Cardinal numbers are changed into ordinal numbers simply by prefixing the syllable **dì**: thus *one* is **yī**, *first* is **dì yī**; *two* is **èr**, *second* is **dì èr**, and so on.
- 2 **Wǒ jiā My home**
a Normally *my* is **wǒ de**, but with family relationships and in other cases where the bond between the possessor and the possessed is close, the **de** is dropped.
b **jiā: home** This word embraces both the family and the family dwelling.
- 3 **Wǒ jiā zài Běijīng Mǎxiàn hútuōng. My home is in Maxian Lane in Peking.**
a **Zài** As a main verb **zài** has to do with location: *to be* (somewhere)

- b Note the word order in this sentence: addresses are given in descending order of the size of unit (province-city-street-number).
- 4 **Wǒ jiā shì píngfáng. My home is a single-storied house.**
a **shì: to be** **Shì** is used ordinarily between nouns or noun constructions, which are thus equated. It is not required with adjectives (e.g. "I am old") or with verbs (e.g. "I am eating").
b **píngfáng: a single-storied house** You notice there is no word for *a*. Chinese has no exact equivalent for either *a* or *the*, and no article is needed when one refers to a general class of things.
- 5 **Wǒ jiā yǒu sān jiān wūzi. My home has three rooms.**
jiān is a "measure word" (also called a "classifier"). These words are comparable to "head" of cattle or "stick" of rhubarb in English. They must be used when there is a number attached to the noun (as here), or a *this* or *that*. **Jiān** is a special measure for **wūzi: room**; when there is no special measure for a noun, the general one **ge** is used. **wūzi: rooms** with very few exceptions, there are no plural forms for nouns; so whether it is a case of one room or hundreds of rooms, the word is still **wūzi**.
- 6 **Wǒ jiā yǒu yí ge xiǎo yuànzi. My home has a small yard.**
a **yí ge: (lit) one Yí(ge)** is similar to the English *a*; it needs to be used when a thing is particularized, as with **xiǎo: small** here. The measure word used with **yí** may vary with the noun.
b **ge** This is the general measure word mentioned above. Special measures apply to nouns with a particular shape or function. They have to be learned with the noun, and cannot be guessed at.
- 7 **Yuànzi lì yǒu yí kē shíliushù. In the yard there is a pomegranate tree.**
a **lì: in, inside** This and other comparable place words do not function as prepositions, but FOLLOW the noun to which they refer; as such they should be called "postpositions", like the suffix "-ward" in "homeward". **Yuànzi lì: in the yard** is literally *the yard-inside*.
b **yǒu: there is/are** This is the same word as that for *have*. **Yǒu** does not have to be proprietorial, it may denote simple existence.
c **kē** This is a special measure word for trees (**shù**).
- 8 **Yǒu liǎng ke jiāzhútuō. There are two oleanders.**
liǎng: two There are two words for *two*; broadly speaking, **èr** is used for counting, **liǎng** for two of anything ("a couple").
- 9 **Shíliushù zài dōngbianr. The pomegranate tree is on the east side.**
a **shíliushù: THE pomegranate tree** Words which occur in the subject position are normally of definite reference, something we have already identified; hence they qualify for the definite article in English.
b **dōngbianr: the east side** The **r** ending is a feature of Peking dialect. In this combination the "n" is not sounded (listen to the **Èrhuàyuàn** section of your "sounds" recording).

- 10 **Dōngbianr hái yǒu sì pěn yuèjihuā.** *On the east side there are also four tubs of monthly roses.*
 a **hái:** *additionally* In Chinese all adverbs come before verbs, all adjectives come before nouns. Some monosyllabic adverbs, of which **hái** is one, must come immediately before the verb. You can never say **yǒu hái**, only **hái yǒu**.
 b **pěn:** *tub of* **Pěn** is a true measure word, used of whatever can be contained in a tub or bowl.
- 11 **Xībianr hái yǒu yìxiē cǎohuā.** *On the west side there are also some flowers.*
yìxiē: *some* Note that no measure word is required between **yìxiē** and the noun.
- 12 **Fùqīn, mǔqīn, dìdì, mèimei hé wǒ.** *Father, mother, younger brother, younger sister and I.*
 a The sign **,** is used in listing things together.
 b **dìdì, mèimei:** *younger brother, younger sister* Among brothers and sisters the distinction is made between older and younger.
- 13 **Wǒ fùqīn zài yìnshuāchǎng gōngzuò.** *My father works in a printing works.*
 a **zài:** *in, at* **Zài** may be used as a preposition to introduce the site of an activity; as such it can be translated by various prepositions of place in English. Places of work like **yìnshuāchǎng:** *printing works* do not need extra definition, such as by the addition of **lǐ:** *inside* (contrast **yuánzi lǐ:** *in the yard*).
 b **gōngzuò:** *works* This is the main verb in this sentence. **Zài yìnshuāchǎng**, being an adverbial expression of place, must precede it.
- 14 **Tāmen dōu shì sānhǎo xuésheng.** *They are both model students.*
 a **tāmen:** *they* **-men** is a pluralizing suffix for personal pronouns: **wǒ—wǒmen** (I—we) **nǐ—nǐmen** (you—you), **tā—tāmen** (he/she—they). Its use is otherwise severely limited.
 b **dōu:** *both* (if two), *all* (if more than two) Like **hái**, **dōu** is an adverb which must come immediately before the verb (or another similar adverb).
- 15 **Wǒ jiā shì yí ge xìngfú de jiāting.** *My home is a happy home (family).*
de **De** is a grammatical particle, that is, it has no meaning by itself. It marks relationships between words. In the formula **X de Y** it shows that **X** is describing **Y**; in other words, **Y** (a noun) is the main element, and the **X** expression (adjectival) says something about **Y**. In this example, the **de** shows that **xìngfú:** *happy* is describing **jiāting:** *home*.
- 16 **Zhè shì wǒ de wūzi.** *This is my room.*
 a **zhè:** *this* **Zhè** is only used as a pronoun, *this*, in the subject position.

- In a sentence such as “I don’t want this”, it would have the appropriate measure word with it.
- b **wǒ de:** *my* The **de** functions here as described above, but with persons it conveys the possessive aspect.
- 17 **Zhè yě shì dìdì hé mèimei de wūzi.** *This is also the room of my younger brother and sister.*
 a **yě:** *also* **Yě** is another adverb which must come immediately before the verb.
 b **dìdì:** (of) *my younger brother* This would normally be **dìdì de (wūzi):** *younger brother’s (room)*, but it shares the **de** in **mèimei de**. Where several adjectival expressions, each qualifying to be marked by **de**, follow in succession, usually only the final one retains the **de**.
- 18 **Zhè shì wǒmen sān ge rén de wūzi.** *This is the room of the three of us.*
Wǒmen: *we* and **sān ge rén:** *three people* are in apposition: *we three people*. Similarly, **tāmen liǎng ge rén:** *they two people—the two of them*.
- 19 **Tángwū lǐ yǒu yí zhāng fāngzhuōzi.** *In the living room there is a square table.* **Zhāng** is a special measure word for things with broad, flat surfaces, in this case **table (zhuōzi)**.
- 20 **Zhuōzi shang yǒu yí ge zuòzhōng, yǒu yí jià shōuyīnjī.** . . . *On the table there is a clock, there is a radio, . . .*
 a **shang:** *on top* Like **lǐ:** *inside*, **shang** is a place word which follows the thing it refers to (**zhuōzi:** *table*). These words are “bound” words, i.e. they only occur in combination with other words, making one unit with them; they are not independent grammatical units. For instance, in the sentence “On top there is a clock”, one cannot say **Shàng yǒu zuòzhōng**. To turn the bound form **shang** into a free form such as that sentence requires, a noun ending such as **bian** (as in **xibian:** *west side*) has to be supplied. **Shàngbian(r) yǒu yí ge zuòzhōng.**
- b **jià** This is a special measure word for certain machines and appliances—here, **radio (shōuyīnjī)**.
- 21 **Jintīān shì xīngqīrì.** *Today is Sunday.*
xīngqīrì: *Sunday* (lit: *week-day*) Days of the week start numbering from Monday, which is **xīngqīyī:** *week-one*; *Tuesday* is **xīngqīèr** (*week-two*), and so on down the week to Saturday.
- 22 **Bàba zài wūli kàn bào ne.** *Father (“Dad”) is indoors reading the paper.*
 a **wūli:** *in the room, indoors* Without the noun suffix **-zi**, **wū:** *room* ceases to be a “free” form, becoming instead a “bound” or combining form; hence **wūzi lǐ** is printed as two words, **wūli** as one word.
 b **ne** This is a particle which shows that the activity specified by the verb is still in progress: *is reading*. There are further ways of indicating the progressive aspect which we will discuss when we come to them.

- 23 Dìdì, mèimei dōu bú zài jiā. Younger brother and sister are both not at home.
 a This sentence could just as well have been rendered *Neither . . . are at home*. In Chinese there is no equivalent to *neither*; you always have to say *dōu . . . bú*: *both . . . not*.
 b *bù*: *not* *Bù* is a general negative for all verbs except *yǒu*: *have*, *there is/are*. The tone of *bù* is fourth, except before another word in the fourth tone, when it changes to second: *bù chī fàn, bú kàn shū*.

Part two

- 24 Wáng tóngzhì, nǐ jiā zài nǎr? Comrade Wang, where is your home?
 a Wáng tóngzhì: comrade Wang Titles always follow names, unlike the English practice.
 b zài nǎr: *is where?* Nǎr belongs to the class of words which we will call interrogative; these ask questions by themselves (as we shall see, questions are otherwise formed by ADDING elements). These words do not occasion any inversion of the word order, as in English. We state "he is in China", but ask "Where is he?", thus changing the position of the place word. The Chinese state *Tā zài wūzi li: He is indoors*, and ask, in the same order, *Tā zài nǎr? He is where?*
 25 Nǐ jiā shì píngfáng ma? Is your home a single-storied house?
 ma Ma is a particle which conveys an enquiring tone. It can be added to any statement to turn that statement into a question.
 26 Shì píngfáng. It is a single-storied house.
 Questions are most commonly answered by accepting or rejecting the key words in them, e.g. *Nǐ kàn bào ma? Do you read newspapers?*
Kàn: Yes, or Bú kàn: No.
 27 Nǐ jiā yǒu jǐ jiān wūzi? How many rooms has your home?
 jǐ: *how many?* Jǐ, like nǎr, is an interrogative word. It occasions no rearrangement of the word order: *yǒu sān kē shù: there are three trees; yǒu jǐ kē shù?: how many trees are there?* Jǐ is normally used only when small numbers (under 10) are involved, and it requires a measure word: so always *jǐ jiān wūzi*, not *jǐ wūzi*.
 28 Nèi jiān wūzi shì shuí de? Whose is that room?
 a nèi jiān wūzi: *that room* Note that nèi: *that* requires a measure word in order to combine with a noun. Nèi derives from the pronoun nà; nèi is the pronunciation preferred for the adjective.
 b shuí: *who?* Shuí is another interrogative word: *Tā shì shuí?: He is who?—Who is he?* Shuí de: *whose?* works in the same way. It need hardly be said that *Nèi jiān wūzi shì shuí de?* is short for *Nèi jiān wūzi shì shuí de wūzi?: That room is whose room?*

- 29 Zhōngjiān de wūzi shì shénme? What is the room in the middle?
 shénme?: *what?* Shénme (an interrogative word) can be used both as an adjective (*shénme shū: what book?*), and as a pronoun (*nǐ kàn shénme ne? what are you looking at?*).
 30 Nǐmen zài nǎr chī fàn? Where do you eat?
 chī fàn: *eat* Unless any particular food is specified, the verb *chī*: *eat* is supplied with the generalized object *fàn*: *food*, which would of course be redundant in English.
 31 Shì, yǒu yí ge xiǎo yuǎnzi. Yes, it has a small yard.
 shì This means *that is so*, rather than "yes", though naturalness leads one to prefer the latter rendering.
 32 Yǒu jǐ kē? How many (oleanders) are there?
 You see that measure words (in this case *kē*) may be used independently of their nouns, once the latter have been mentioned, just as "head" and "sticks" (to revert to our original comparison) may be used independently of "cattle" and "rhubarb".
 33 Shíliushù zài něibianr? On which side is the pomegranate tree?
 zài něibianr? On which side? Nǐ is an interrogative word which combines with a measure word, e.g. *něi kē shù? Which tree?*
 34 Jiāzhútáo ne? What about the oleanders?
 ne Another use of the particle *ne* is in follow-up questions, to save repetition of the form of words previously used; English equivalents include *what about . . .?* and *and the . . .?* The full form of this question would be *Jiāzhútáo zài něibianr? On which side are the oleanders?*, on the same pattern as the preceding one.
 35 Nǐ jiā li dōu yǒu shénme rén? What persons are there in your family?
 dōu is used here in the sense of *severally*, that is, it asks for separate enumeration of the various persons in the family.
 36 hái yǒu yí ge dà mèimei, yǐjīng jiéhūn le. there is also another older younger-sister, already married.
 le Le is the perfective particle; it indicates that the action denoted by the verb is regarded as completed. Le does not need to be used of all past actions, but it habitually accompanies *yǐjīng*: *already*. You will learn more about *le* later.
 37 Méi yǒu gēge, jiějie ma? You haven't (any) older brothers or sisters?
 méi: *not* negates the verb *yǒu*, not any others, which take *bù*.
 38 Shì, méi yǒu. That is so, I haven't.
 shì As we have noted, *shì* means *that is so*; it indicates that you agree with the way the question is put. In English one would naturally say "No, I have not", which is why one has to distinguish *shì* from "yes".
 39 Nǐ fùqin duō dà suishur? How old is your father?
 Duō: *how . . .?* is an interrogative word. *Duō dà?* is *How big?*; *duō*

dà suishur is *how big/great an age?*, hence *how old?* This particular form of words is used to enquire the age of adults.

40 Wǔshí suì. *Fifty years old.*

a wǔshí: *fifty* Among compound numbers, the tens are formed by a process of multiplication; 2×10 for 20, 3×10 for 30, and so on; the relationship between the 2 and 10, 3 and 10 etc. is implicit, the numbers are simply juxtaposed. So wǔshí is, broken down, five-ten, equals *fifty*. Units are just added on, so 51 is *five-ten-one*, wǔshíyī.

b No verb is needed in formulas for age, hence *My father is fifty-one* may be stated as Wǒ fùqin wǔshíyī suì.

41 Sìshíwǔ suì. *Forty-five years old.*

The elements of this number are $4 \times 10 + 5$, as explained above.

42 Bù, tāmen dōu shì zhōngxuéshēng. *No, they are both high school students.*

bù more precisely, bù means *not so*, the opposite of shì.

43 Zài jiā zuò shénme ne? *What is he doing at home?*

ne A third function of the particle ne is, when used in conjunction with an interrogative word (here shénme: *what?*), to soften the abruptness of the question. In this function it is what the Chinese call a "tone of voice" word.

44 Bù, tā méi kàn bào, *No, she isn't reading the paper.*

This illustrates a special use of the negative méi, where a progressive action is being denied. The question was Tā yě kàn bào ne ma?: *Is she also reading the paper?* (see N22b above). The negative of the progressive aspect is formed with méi, not bù, whatever the verb.

Lesson two The four seasons of Peking

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: Comrade Li Guodong works in a factory in Canton.

He is a model worker.

He has come to Peking on an assignment.

He came to my home today.

We haven't met for a long time.

On seeing him I was very pleased.

He too was very pleased.

It is spring now.

Spring is very warm.

The climate of Peking is very different from (that of) Canton.

He has come to Peking for the first time.

He is not well informed about the climate of Peking.

He asked me.

I told him in detail.

Peking's spring is warm, (but) unfortunately there is a lot of wind and little rain.

Spring blossoms are very plentiful.

Principally there are peach blossoms, apricot blossoms, and so on.

The peach blossoms are very pretty (and) the apricot blossoms are very pretty too.

The peach blossoms are very fragrant (and) the apricot blossoms are also very fragrant.

There is little rain in spring.

Summer is very hot, but humidity is low (little).

Peking's summer is hot, but not sultry.

At the hottest time the temperature rises to more than forty degrees centigrade:

In summer there is a lot of rain.

Rainfall is heaviest (most) at the time between spring and summer.

Autumn is cool.

Autumn is neither cold nor hot (but) very comfortable.

Autumn is the best season of the year in Peking.

There are lots of people who come to Peking in autumn for sight-seeing.

In winter it is cold, but it rarely snows.

In winter the people of Peking like to ice-skate.

The coldest time is January.

The temperature in January sometimes falls to twenty or so degrees below zero.
In Peking the average yearly temperature is eleven point nine degrees.

Two

Spring and summer

Li Guodong: It's been a long time since we met. How are you?
Wang Dawen: Fine, thanks. Are you busy in your work?
Li Guodong: Very busy; how are things with you?
Wang Dawen: I'm also very busy.
Li Guodong: Spring in Peking is really warm!
Wang Dawen: Yes, spring in Peking is very warm.
Li Guodong: The climate of Peking is very different from Canton's, isn't it?
Wang Dawen: Yes, very different.
Li Guodong: Is there a lot of wind in Peking in spring?
Wang Dawen: A lot.
Li Guodong: Is there a lot of rain too?
Wang Dawen: No, not much rain.
Li Guodong: What blossoms are there in Peking in spring?
Wang Dawen: Mainly there are peach blossoms, apricot blossoms, and so on.
Li Guodong: Is it hot in Peking in summer?
Wang Dawen: Very hot!
Li Guodong: How many degrees is it (are there) at the hottest time?
Wang Dawen: More than forty degrees centigrade, I would think.
Li Guodong: Is it sultry in Peking in summer?
Wang Dawen: It is hot, but not sultry.
Li Guodong: Is there a lot of rain in summer?
Wang Dawen: Yes, a lot.
Li Guodong: At what time is there most rainfall?
Wang Dawen: There is most rainfall at the time between spring and summer.

Autumn and winter

Li Guodong: What is autumn like?
Wang Dawen: Autumn is cool.
Li Guodong: Is autumn comfortable?
Wang Dawen: Autumn is very comfortable.
Li Guodong: Which season of the year in Peking is best?
Wang Dawen: Autumn is the best.
Li Guodong: When do most people come to Peking to sight-see?
Wang Dawen: Probably there are most in autumn, I would think.
Li Guodong: Is it cold in winter?
Wang Dawen: It is very cold in winter.
Li Guodong: Is there a lot of snow?
Wang Dawen: Very little.
Li Guodong: In Peking which month is coldest?
Wang Dawen: January is coldest.
Li Guodong: At the coldest time, how many degrees is it?
Wang Dawen: Probably twenty or so degrees below zero, I would think.

Li Guodong: What is the average yearly temperature in Peking?
Wang Dawen: It is eleven point nine degrees.

New words in this lesson

sìjì four seasons
Guǎngzhōu Canton
láodòng labour
mófàn model
chūchāidào be sent on business
lái come
dào to; to reach
hěn very
jiǔ a long time
jiàn see, meet
gāoxìng pleased
xiànzài now
chūntiān spring
nuǎnhuó warm
qìhòu climate
hé and, with
xiāngtóng alike
chūcì for the first time
xiángxi be well informed (about)
wèn ask
xiángxi de in detail
gàosu tell
kěxī unfortunately
fēng wind
duō much, many
yǔ rain
shǎo little, few, rarely
zhǔyào main(ly)
táohuā peach blossom
xínghuā apricot blossom
shěnméde and so on
hǎokàn good-looking, pretty
xiāng fragrant
yǔshuǐ rain(water)
xiàtiān summer
rè hot
dànshi but
shīqì humidity
mēnrè sultry
zuì most
shíhour time
qìwēn temperature
shēngdào rise to

Shè-shì centigrade
duō more (than)
dù degree
chūn spring
xià summer
zhì jiāo at the juncture of
yǔliàng rainfall
qiūtiān autumn
liángkuai cool
lěng cold
shūfu comfortable
yì nián whole year
zhī zhōng among, out of
jìjié season
yóulǎn sight-see
dōngtiān winter
xǐhuan like, enjoy
xuě snow
xià xuě to snow
liúbing ice-skate
yīyuè January
yǒushí sometimes
jiàngdào fall to
língxià below zero
èrshí lái twenty or so
quánnián whole year
píngjūn average
shíyī eleven
diǎn (decimal) point
hǎojiǔ a good long time
jiǔ nine
wa final particle
xièxie thank you
máng busy
zěnmeyàng? how are things? how's it
going?
zhēn real(ly)
ya final particle
ba final particle
nǎ yī which?
dàgài roughly, probably
jīyuè which month?
dūoshao how many?

2 Notes

Part one

1 **Lǐ Guódòng tóngzhì zài Guǎngzhōu de yí ge gōngchǎng lǐ gōngzuò.**

Comrade Li Guodong works in a factory in Canton.

The **zài** here governs **gōngchǎng**: **zài yí ge gōngchǎng lǐ**: *in a factory*. **Guǎngzhōu de** (note the adjective marker **de**) is telling us something about the factory—that it is a *Canton* factory. The whole phrase describes where Li works, and so comes before the verb **gōngzuò**: *works*.

2 **Tā shì láodòng mófàn.** *He is a model worker.*

Literally **láodòng mófàn** means *labour model (model of labour)*. Though grammatically speaking **láodòng** is modifying **mófàn** there is no linking **de**. Whether **de** is used depends on the degree of separability between the main word and the word(s) modifying it. If together they form, so to speak, a single idea there is no **de** (see below, N21).

3 **Tā shì chūchāidào Běijīng lái de.** *He has come to Peking on an assignment.*

a **chūchāidào** This consists of a verb **chūchāi**: *come on assignment*, plus the preposition **dào**: *to*, indicating destination.

b **shì . . . de** This construction is used to explain circumstances: not to say that an event took place (when **le** would be used), but to explain when, where, how etc. the event took place. Here the point is to tell how it has come about that Li is in Peking, and the reason is given in the word **chūchāi**: *it was (through coming) on an assignment that he came to Peking*. If the speaker had been anticipating the question WHEN Li came to Peking, he might have said **Tā shì chūntiān dào Běijīng lái de**: *It was in spring he came to Peking*.

4 **Tā jīntiān dào wǒ jiā lǐ lái le.** *He came to my home today.*

a **le** In contrast to the preceding sentence, this one merely states that an event took place, and so **le** is used to show that the action of coming was carried out. It should not be assumed, however, that **le** has to be used when an action has been completed, in the same way that a past tense is obligatory in English; it often depends on whether the speaker wants to emphasize the aspect of completion or not. In this sentence **le** is useful in marking the change of aspect from the introductory section, and to make plain that Wang is not still expecting his guest.

b **dào wǒ jiā lǐ lái**: lit. *to my home inside come* With the verb **lái**: *come* the expression which states the destination (or point of departure) comes before it; hence also in the previous sentence **dào Běijīng lái**: *come to Peking*.

5 **Wǒmen hěn jiǔ méi jiàn le.** *We haven't met for a long time.*

a **méi Méi** (or **méi yǒu**) denotes that a certain action has not been carried out: it is the negative counterpart to **le**: **tā lái le**: *he came*; **tā méi (yǒu) lái**: *he didn't come*. As such it is incompatible with the **le** (the “verb” **le**) which indicates that the action is over and done with.

b **le** This is not a “verb ending **le**” but a “sentence final particle **le**”, which serves to relate an action started in the past to the present situation, and conveys the sense of *up till now* or *as of now*. As an illustration, let us compare the two English sentences *It took me five weeks to build a house* and *It has taken me five weeks to build a house*; in the first one the activity finished at some unstated time in the past, in the second the implication is that the five weeks of activity end now—in which case a “sentence **le**” in Chinese is appropriate. In **hén jiǔ méi jiàn le** the **le** is similarly related to **hén jiǔ**—*it has been a long time (up till now)*.

6 **Jiàndào tā, wǒ hěn gāoxìng** *On seeing him I was very pleased.*

a **jiàndào tā** **Dào**, the full meaning of which is *to reach, to arrive at*, often occurs as the second element of verbs, to convey the fact that the goal of the first verb has been attained. This whole phrase, incomplete by itself, is a precondition for what follows, that is, the “seeing” has to take place for the emotion to be felt, and so may be understood as *having seen him* or *on seeing him*.

b **wǒ hěn gāoxìng** In English this has to be put in the past tense—*I was pleased*—but in Chinese it does not call for any such marker, as the state of being pleased is not being thought of as something that has a definite end.

c **gāoxìng** Like most common adjectives, **gāoxìng** incorporates the state of “being”: by itself it may mean *am pleased, is pleased, was pleased* etc. To give another example, *my yard is very small* is **wǒde yuànzi hěn xiǎo** (no **shì**). We will call these adjectives which have a verbal aspect “verbal adjectives”. In the absence of any other qualification, **hěn** (unstressed) is habitually used to back up verbal adjectives; if they stand alone they usually imply “comparatively” this or that.

7 **Xiànzài shì chūntiān.** *It is spring now.*

Note that *it* is rarely expressed in Chinese, either as subject or object.

8 **Běijīng de qìhòu hé Guǎngzhōu hěn bù xiāngtóng.** *The climate of Peking is very different from (that of) Canton.*

To say that two things are alike or unlike you use the formula “**A hé B xiāngtóng**” or “**A hé B bù xiāngtóng**”: *A and B are alike* or *A and B are different*.

9 **Běijīng de qìhòu, tā bù xiāngxì.** *He is not well informed about the climate of Peking.*

This is an example of the topic-comment construction, which is very common in Chinese. You first establish what you want to talk about (the climate of Peking), then add your comment (he is not well informed about it).

- 10 **Wǒ xiángxì de gāosu tā le.** *I told him in detail.*
xiángxì de De, written with the character for **dì**, as here, is an adverbial ending. For it to be used the adverb has to have more than one syllable. Being an adverb, **xiángxì de** must of course come before the verb **gāosu**: *told*.
- 11 **Běijīng de chūntiān nuǎnhuo, kěxī fēng duō yǔ shǎo.** *Peking's spring is warm, (but) unfortunately there is a lot of wind and little rain.*
 When a contrast is made, as here between **duō**: (to be) plentiful and **shǎo**: (to be) scarce, the verbal adjective is not qualified (by **hěn** for example).
- 12 **Chūntiān de huā hěn duō.** *Spring blossoms are very plentiful.*
 The usual way of saying that there is a lot of A or little of B is **A hěn duō** or **B hěn shǎo**, rather than **yǒu hěn duō A** or **yǒu hěn shǎo B**.
- 13 **Běijīng de xiàtiān rè shì rè, dànshi bù mēnrè.** *Peking's summer is hot, but not sultry.*
rè shì rè A word is repeated after **shì** in making concessions. **Rè shì rè** is to be understood as (as to its being) hot, (agreed) it is hot. Such concessions are usually followed by **dànshi**: but, or some similar word.
- 14 **Zuì rè de shíhòu, qìwēn shēngdào Shè-shì sìshí duō dù.** *At the hottest time, the temperature rises to more than forty degrees centigrade.*
 a **zuì**: most The superlative of all adjectives is formed by means of the prefix **zuì**. **Zuì rè** is therefore *most hot—hottest*.
 b **Shè-shì**: Centi grade Notice that the word order is the reverse of the English, the general category (Centigrade) coming before the particulars (40+ degrees).
 c **sìshí duō dù** Word for word this says *forty and more degrees*, that is, between forty and fifty. If it is a question of more than the unit, rather than the ten, then you say **sìshí dù duō**: *forty degrees and more*, i.e. between 40 and 41.
- 15 **Chūn xià zhī jiāo de shíhòu, yǔliàng zuì duō.** *Rainfall is heaviest (most) at the time between spring and summer.*
 a **zhī jiāo** Literally this means (at) the juncture of; it follows the two things which are adjacent (here **chūn** and **xià**). **Zhī** is the particle in Classical Chinese which corresponds to the modern **de**.
 b **de shíhòu**: at the time of This also always follows the event to which it refers. Grammatically **chūn xià zhī jiāo** is describing **shíhòu** (it says *what time*), so it comes before **shíhòu**, with **de** to link them. **De shíhòu** can in most cases be translated *when*: **tā lái de shíhòu**—*at the time he comes—when he comes*.

- 16 **Qiūtiān shì Běijīng yì nián zhī zhōng zuì hǎo de jìjié.** *Autumn is the best season of the year in Peking.*
 a **Yì nián** **Yì** has the sense here of *the whole*; compare **yì wūzi de rén**: *the whole roomful of people*. **Nián** is itself a measure word; you cannot add another measure to it, so you cannot say **yí ge nián**.
 b **zhī zhōng** Like all words which define time and place, **zhī zhōng**: *in the midst of, in the course of* comes after the unit to which it refers.
- 17 **Qiūtiān lái Běijīng yóulǎn de rén hěn duō.** *Lit. The people who come to Peking in autumn to sight-see are very numerous.*
 In this sentence all that precedes **rén** is describing **rén**, answering the question *what kind of people?* In English you have to make a separate relative clause (*the people who . . .*), but in Chinese the word order is the same as if a single adjective were describing **rén**.
lái Běijīng In addition to combining with **dào**: *to* (**dào Běijīng lái**), **lái** can take a direct object, as here.
- 18 **Dōngtiān lěng shì lěng, dànshi hěn shǎo xià xuě.** *In winter it IS cold, but it rarely snows.*
 a **hěn shǎo** When used before a verb **hěn shǎo** means *rarely*. Compare **tā hěn shǎo kàn bào**: *he (very) rarely reads the newspaper*.
 b **xià xuě** **Xià**: *come down, fall* is the verb used for precipitation—of snow, hail, rain (**xià yǔ**) etc.
- 19 **Zuì lěng de shíhòu shì yīyuè.** *The coldest time is January.*
yīyuè: January Like days of the week, months of the year have no special names: they are just counted, from **yīyuè** down to **shíèryuè**: December (12 month).
- 20 **yīyuè de qìwēn, yǒushí jiàngdào língxià èrshí lái dù.** *As to the January temperature, sometimes it drops to twenty degrees or so below zero.*
 a **yǒushí** This is a contraction of **yǒude shíhòu**: *some times*.
 b **èrshí lái** **lái** is attached to numbers to indicate approximation: *or so, or thereabouts* (more likely less).
- 21 **Běijīng quánnián píngjūn qìwēn shì shíyī-diǎn-jiǔ dù.** *Lit. Peking's whole-year average temperature is 11.9 degrees.*
 Notice that there is no **de** here linking the noun **qìwēn** and the words which are modifying it. This is because the two are not easily separable. To give an example of the reverse case, **hěn xiāng de huā** may be interpreted as *very fragrant flowers* or *flowers which are very fragrant*, but **píngjūn qìwēn** is not so easily separated as *temperature which is average*.

Part two

- 22 **Hǎojiǔ méi jiàn le.** *We haven't met for a long time.*
hǎojiǔ When used to modify an adjective or adverb, **hǎo** is like **hěn**,

- only somewhat more colourful; compare the English *a good long time*.
- 23 **Nǐ hǎo wa?** *How are you?*
wa This is a variant of **a**, brought about by the long vowel sound **ao** before it. It is another “tone of voice” word, here conveying a certain heartiness or liveliness of manner.
- 24 **Nǐ gōngzuò máng ma?** *Are you busy in your work?*
 Wang is asking Li if he is busy (**máng**) in a particular way—work-wise, so **gōngzuò** comes before **máng**.
- 25 **Hěn máng, nǐ zěnmeyàng?** *Very busy; how are things with you?*
zěnmeyàng This is best taken as a fixed phrase, meaning *how are things* or *what's it like*? If a subject is stated, it comes first: **tiānqi zěnmeyàng?**: *what's the weather like?*
- 26 **Běijīng de chūntiān zhēn nuǎnhuo ya!** *Spring in Peking is really warm!*
ya Like **wa**, **ya** is a variant of **a**. Most commonly it follows the shorter, sharper vowel sounds, like **i** in **qi**. It may follow **uo** too.
- 27 **Duile, Běijīng chūntiān hěn nuǎnhuo.** *Yes, spring in Peking is very warm.*
 Here Wang drops the **de** between **Běijīng** and **chūntiān** used by Li in the previous sentence. The meaning is not changed, but the grammatical relationship changes to (*with regard to*) *Peking, spring* . . .
- 28 **Běijīng de qíhòu hé Guǎngzhōu hěn bùtóng ba.** *Peking's climate is very different from Canton's, I suppose.*
 a **hěn bùtóng**: lit. *very not-alike* **Bù** is often used in word formation like *un-* or *dis-* in English, which explains why **hěn** can be used before it. Contrast **bù hěn gāoxìng**: *not very pleased* and **Hěn bù gāoxìng**: *very not-pleased (displeased)*. **Tóng** is the “combining form” of **xiāngtóng**: it can be used in combination with **bù**, but not on its own. **Xiāngtóng**, being the “free form”, can be used on its own, or with **bù**, but not in certain combinations like **tóngzhì**: *comrade* (literally *like-minded*).
 b **ba** This is a particle which indicates presumed agreement or seeks confirmation. It gives the flavour of *I suppose* or *isn't that so?* or *I would think to a statement*. It also goes with suggestions, which naturally look forward to agreement also.
- 29 **Běijīng chūntiān dōu yǒu shénme huār?** *What blossoms are there in Peking in spring?*
dōu Is asking for the several kinds of blossom to be enumerated. (L1, N35)
- 30 **Běijīng xiàtiān rè bu rè?** *Is it hot in Peking in summer?*
rè bu rè Apart from **by** the use of **ma**, questions can be formed by presenting affirmative and negative alternatives, in this case **rè/bu rè**: *hot/not hot*? This kind of question can only be answered by selecting

- one of the alternatives, **rè** or **bu rè** (with amplification if desired), NOT by **shì** or **bú shì**.
- 31 **Běijīng yínián zhī zhōng nǎ yí jì zuì hǎo wa?** *Which season of the year in Peking is best?*
 a **nǎ yí jì** **Nǎ yí** is the same as **něi**, which is probably an amalgamation of the two words. For **něibiānr**: *which side* in L1, **nǎ yí biānr** could have been used.
 b **Jì**: *season* Used by itself is a measure word, hence **yí jì, sì jì**; the “free form” **jìjié** is not a measure word, so **yí ge jìjié**.
- 32 **Běijīng jǐ yuè zuì lěng a?** *In Peking which month is coldest?*
jǐ yuè As the names of the months are counted, so the question *which month of the year?* is asked in numerical terms with **jǐ**: *how many?* The same applies to *which day of the week?*—**xīngqī jǐ?**
- 33 **Zuì lěng de shíhòu yǒu duōshǎo dù?** *What is the temperature at the coldest time?*
duōshǎo This word is used to ask *how many?* when one is expecting a high number (over ten) as an answer, or when one does not know what answer to expect.

Lesson three

The travel service

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: I start work at eight o'clock in the morning.
The travel service is not far from my house.
I go to work on my bicycle every day.
I'm very busy at the service, but it's very interesting.
I finish work at half past five in the afternoon.

There are many comrades in our service.
Everyone gets along together very well.
Comrade Sun Yulan is from Shanghai, but she speaks Mandarin very well.
She writes both fast and beautifully.
She comes very early every day.
She works both enthusiastically and earnestly.

She can speak English, and French, as well.
She speaks English very fluently.
But her French is not too fluent.
Recently she has been studying Japanese, [though] her level is still very low.
She can't speak Russian, and can't speak German, either.
Comrade Zhang Yi speaks both Russian and German very well.

Now it is the noon break time, from twelve o'clock in the morning until two o'clock in the afternoon.
Some comrades are reading newspapers or reading magazines.
Some comrades are smoking.
Some are making phone calls.
Some go home for lunch, and take a midday nap.
I am chatting with Comrade Sun, and Comrade Zhang.
We drink tea while we chat.

Two

Asking the time

Wang Dawen: Zhang, what's the time now?
Zhang Yi: Half past twelve.
Wang Dawen: Is your watch accurate?
Zhang Yi: It's a little fast.
Wang Dawen: Comrade Sun, (by) your watch what's the time now?
Sun Yulan: Twelve twenty-eight.

Wang Dawen: Your watch is very accurate, isn't it?
Sun Yulan: No, mine's a little slow.
Zhang Yi: Wang, what about your watch?
Wang Dawen: I forgot to wind it up, (so) it's stopped.
Sun Yulan: Comrade Wang, what time did you come today?
Wang Dawen: A quarter past eight, and you?
Sun Yulan: Five to eight.
Wang Dawen: Zhang, did you come very early?
Zhang Yi: Not too early, at five past eight.
Wang Dawen: You both came very early!

Comrade Sun, is your house far from here?
Sun Yulan: Not too far.
Wang Dawen: Do you come every day on foot, or by bicycle?
Sun Yulan: I come by bus.
Wang Dawen: How long does it take to get here?
Sun Yulan: Fifteen minutes.
Wang Dawen: Zhang, your house must be far from here?
Zhang Yi: A little far.
Wang Dawen: How long does it take to get here?
Zhang Yi: It takes an hour.
Wang Dawen: What time do you get up in the morning?
Zhang Yi: I have to get up at six o'clock.
Wang Dawen: What time do you go to bed at night?
Zhang Yi: I go to bed at about ten o'clock.
Wang Dawen: How many hours do you sleep every day?
Zhang Yi: Roughly eight hours.
Wang Dawen: Comrade Sun, what time do you eat dinner?
Sun Yulan: It is not definite, (but) about half past seven.

A chat

Wang Dawen: Do you cook dinner, or does your husband?
Sun Yulan: Sometimes I cook it, sometimes my husband does.
Wang Dawen: What do you do after dinner?
Sun Yulan: I study Japanese by myself.
Wang Dawen: How is your studying coming along?
Sun Yulan: Not well, my progress is very slow.
Wang Dawen: Zhang, what about you?
Zhang Yi: Sometimes I read the newspaper, and sometimes I turn on the radio, and listen to music or to news programmes.
Wang Dawen: What do you do on Sundays?
Zhang Yi: Sometimes I go to the cinema, sometimes I go for a walk in the park.
Wang Dawen: Tomorrow is the fifth, isn't it?
Zhang Yi: That's right.
Wang Dawen: Tomorrow there are some American friends coming, aren't there?
Zhang Yi: Yes.
Wang Dawen: What day of the week is the fifteenth?
Sun Yulan: Today is the fourth, Monday, so the fifteenth is Friday.
Wang Dawen: On Friday I will be going with the foreign visitors to visit a factory.
Sun Yulan: Are there any foreign visitors coming on Saturday?
Wang Dawen: I don't know yet.
Zhang Yi: Oh, it's almost two o'clock.

Sun Yulan: It will soon be time to get to work.

Wang Dawen: Let's begin working.

New words in this lesson

shàngwǔ morning
bā eight
diǎn hour of the clock
shàngbān go to work; start work
lí (separated) from
yuǎn far
měitiān every day
qí ride
zìxíngchē bicycle
qù go and
shèli short for *lǚxíngshè lí*: in the travel service
yǒu yìsi be interesting
xiàwǔ afternoon
wǔ five
bàn half
xiàbān finish work
dàjiā everybody
chǔ get along together
-de sign for adverbial complement
pǔtōnghuà "common language":

Mandarin
zì word; Chinese character
yòu ~ yòu ~ both ~ and ~
kuài quick(ly), fast
piàoliang pretty, attractive
měitiān every day
zǎo early
rèxīn enthusiastic
rènzhen earnest
Yīngwén English (language)
Fǎwén French (language)
liúli fluent
tài too
zuìjīn recently
zài engaged in, in the process of
xuéxí study, learn
Rìwén Japanese (language)
shuǐpíng standard, level
hái still
dī low
Éwén Russian (language)

Déwén German (language)
zhōngwǔ noon
xiūxi rest
shíjiān time
cōng from
shí'èr twelve
yǒude some
huò or
zázhì magazine
chōu (to) smoke
yān tobacco, cigarettes
diànhuà telephone
dǎ diànhuà make a telephone call
huíjiā return home
wǔfàn lunch
shuì sleep
shǎngjiào midday nap, siesta
xiántán chat, talk idly
yībānr ~ yībānr ~ on the one hand ~
on the other ~
lǎo old; familiar form of address
zhōng clock
biǎo watch
zhǔn accurate
kuài fast (of time piece)
yídiǎnr a little
èrshíbā twenty-eight
fēn minute
màn slow
wàng forget
shàngxián wind up
tíng stop
kè quarter of an hour
qián before
guò past
zǒu walk, go
zǒuzhe on foot
-zhe progressive suffix (like "-ing")
háishi or
gōnggòng public
qìchē motor vehicle
gōnggòng qìchē bus

dào to
yào take (of time)
shíwǔ fifteen
děi need, take (of time)
zhōngtóu hour
zǎoshang morning
qǐlai get up
liù six
jiù then; adverb signifying promptness
děi must, have to
wǎnshang evening, night
xiǎoshí hour
wǎnfán evening meal
bù yíding not fixed or definite
zuò make, do
àiren spouse
hòu after
zìjī oneself, -self; by oneself
xíng be O.K., all right
jìnbù progress
dǎkāi turn on (a set)
yīnyuè music
xīnwén news
jiémù programme

diànyǐng film
guàng take a stroll round
gōngyuán park
míngtiān tomorrow
hào day (of the month)
Měiguó America(n)
shì de that is so
xīngqī week
xīngqī jǐ which day of the week?
xīngqīyī Monday
xīngqīwǔ Friday
yào will, be going to
péi accompany
wàibīn foreign visitor
cānguān visit (as tourist); look round
xīngqīliù Saturday
zhīdào know
O exclamation betokening surprise, doubt, etc.
kuài ~ le on the point of, will soon be
bàngōng do business, work
zánmen we
kāishǐ begin
ba particle conveying note of suggestion

Notes

Part one

- 1 Wǒ shàngwǔ bā diǎn qù shàngbān. I start work at eight o'clock in the morning.
- a shàngwǔ bā diǎn Clock time is measured in diǎn zhōng: hours (points) of the clock, often shortened to diǎn; bā diǎn is therefore eight o'clock. As usual, the larger unit comes before the smaller, so eight o'clock in the morning (8 a.m.) is shàngwǔ bā diǎn.
- b qù shàngbān: lit. go and start (my) shift.
- 2 Lǚxíngshè lí wǒ jiā bù yuǎn. The travel service is not far from my house.
Distance from is expressed in terms of lí: separated from, followed by whatever the distance is. The formula is: A lí B + distance; in that order this sentence reads: The travel service separated from my house not far.
- 3 Xiàwǔ wǔ diǎn bàn xiàbān. I finish work at half past five in the afternoon.
bàn: half Used in conjunction with whole numbers (so many and a

half), **bàn** comes after the measure word (here **diǎn**). *A year and a half* is **yì nián bàn**. Used on its own (*half a*), it comes before the measure: **bàn nián**: *half a year*.

- 4 **Dàjiā dòu chǔde hěn hǎo.** *Everyone gets along together very well.* Here we have an adverbial expression (**hěn hǎo**) coming AFTER the verb (**chǔ**). To distinguish this construction from the adverb which comes in the normal position before the verb (as in **Wǒ xiángxide gào su tā le**) we will call it an “adverbial complement”. Within certain limits, Chinese word order is subject to variation according to which word(s) one wants to direct attention to. In **wǒ xiángxide gào su tā le**, the adverb **xiángxide** only provides additional information about the telling; the sentence could well stand on its own without it. In **Dàjiā dòu chǔde hěn hǎo** the point, and only point, of the sentence is to say HOW everyone gets along together. The verb is only a “trigger” word; it is the resulting state or level of attainment which is the focus of interest. Notice that the **de** which introduces the adverbial complement is written differently from the adjectival **de** and the adverbial **de**.
- 5 **dànshi tā shuō pǔtōnghuà shuōde hěn hǎo.** *but she speaks Mandarin very well.* Here we have an adverbial complement plus a direct object. The problem is that the object cannot intervene between the verb and the complement—you cannot say **tā shuō pǔtōnghuà de hěn hǎo**. The solution adopted here is to use the verb twice: once to dispose of the object—**shuō pǔtōnghuà**—and again to combine with the adverbial complement—**shuōde hěn hǎo**. The whole amounts to: (*as to*) *speaking Mandarin, (she) speaks very well.*
- 6 **Tā xiě zì xiěde yòu kuài yòu piàoliang.** *She writes both fast and beautifully.*
- a **xiě zì**: *writes characters (words)* In English there is no need to supply an object for *writes*: it goes without saying that one will be writing words. In Chinese, however, there are a few activities which are always described in verb-object terms, at least on first mention. **Xiě zì** is one such verb-object combination, **chī fàn**: *eat food* is another.
- b **yòu . . . yòu . . .** This is equivalent to *both . . . and . . .*, linking either verbs or adjectives (adverbs), but not nouns—because **yòu** is an adverb.
- 7 **Tā zuò shì yòu rèxīn yòu rènzhēn.** *She is both enthusiastic and earnest in her work.* In this sentence **zuò shì** is specifying in what respect Miss Sun is enthusiastic and earnest: *She (in) her work is . . .* Syntactically this sentence is the same as **Nǐ gōngzuò máng ma?**

- 8 **Yīngwén, tā shuōde hěn liúli.** *English she speaks very fluently.* This sentence illustrates how in a sentence which contains an adverbial complement (**shuōde hěn liúli**), the logical object (**Yīngwén**) can be disposed of in advance, as a topic. By placing the object in this prominent position the effect is to emphasize it, and this emphasis is reflected in the translation.
- 9 **Zuìjìn tā zài xuéxí Rìwén.** *Recently she has been studying Japanese.* **zài** We have met **zài** before governing expressions of place. When its reference is to an activity, it lends that activity a continuous aspect: *she has been ENGAGED IN studying Japanese.*
- 10 **Zhāng Yì tóngzhì Éwén, Déwén dōu shuōde hěn hǎo.** *Comrade Zhang Yi speaks both Russian and German very well.* **dōu** Remember that **dōu** must come immediately before the verb (or another similar adverb like **hěn**), and that it has to RESUME the several objects in question: *Russian and German both*. So even if there were not an adverbial complement in this sentence, the object still must come before the verb, e.g. **Tā Éwén, Déwén dōu huì shuō**: *She can speak both Russian and German.*
- 11 **Xiànzài shì zhōngwǔ xiūxi shíjiān, shì cóng shàngwǔ shí'èr diǎn dào xiàwǔ-liǎng diǎn.** *It is now the midday rest period, from 12 noon to 2 p.m.* This sentence, by means of compression makes use of **zhōngwǔ xiūxi shíjiān** in two ways: it ends the first half of it, by stating what time it is now, and, without needing to be repeated, it begins the second half as its subject: *Now is the midday rest period; (the midday rest period) is from 12 noon to 2 p.m.* **shàngwǔ shí'èr diǎn** “Twelve a.m.” is incorrect in English, but allowable in Chinese.
- 12 **Yǒude tóngzhì zài kàn bào huò kàn zázhi.** *Some comrades are reading newspapers or reading magazines.*
- a **Yǒude** This means *some*, i.e. a certain number out of the totality. It is only used in the subject position, never in the object position (e.g. *I bought SOME tomatoes*).
- b **zài** This is the same **zài** as that explained in N9; these people are currently ENGAGED IN the various pursuits mentioned.
- 13 **shuì shǎngjiào.** *have a midday nap.* *To sleep* is expressed as **shuì jiào**: *to sleep a sleep (nap)*—a verb-object combination (N6a). **Jiào** is here qualified by **shǎng**: *midday*, making *sleep a midday nap*.
- 14 **Wǒmen yìbiānr hē chá, yìbiānr xiántán.** *We drink tea while we chat.* **yìbiānr . . . yìbiānr . . .** This combination is used when two activities are carried on in tandem: *on the one hand . . . on the other hand . . .*

15 Wèn shíjiān. Asking the time.

shíjiān Though shíjiān and shíhou both mean *time*, and are sometimes interchangeable, shíjiān tends to be used more for the general concept and for a period of time, shíhou for a point in time.

16 Lǎo Zhāng, xiànzài jǐ diǎn zhōng? Zhang, what's the time now?

a Lǎo Zhāng Lǎo: *old* is a form of address among familiars, whether the person is actually old or not.

b jǐ diǎn zhōng This is the invariable formula for asking clock time. Compare jǐ yuè: *what month is it?*

17 Shí'èr diǎn bàn. Half past twelve.

Fractions of hours past the hour, whether halves, quarters or minutes may be simply added to the specified hour without any connecting word.

18 Kuài yìdiǎnr. (It's) a little fast.

Used after adjectives yìdiǎnr indicates a slight degree above the norm. Kuài yìdiǎnr is *fast by a little—a little fast*.

19 Sūn tóngzhì, nǐ de biǎo xiànzài jǐ diǎn? Comrade Sun, what time is it now by your watch?

This sentence illustrates the loose relationship in Chinese between the “subject” of a sentence and the rest of the sentence (the predicate). The “subject” needs neither to be the “actor” performing the action, nor to be in equational relationship with the rest of the sentence (through the verb “to be”). The “subject” may only be something or someone about which or whom a statement is made or a question asked, the statement or question being complete in itself. In this case xiànzài jǐ diǎn: *what time is it?* is a complete question just connected by juxtaposition to the “subject” nǐ de biǎo: *your watch*. In English you must say *What time does your watch say?* or *What time is it by your watch?*, but neither of the two words in capitals is present in the Chinese.

20 Nǐ de biǎo hěn zhǔn, shì bu shì? Your watch is very accurate, isn't it?

shì bu shì: lit. *is it so/not so?* When this is appended to a statement to make a question the speaker expects his supposition to be confirmed, though in this case he is disappointed.

21 Lǎo Wáng, nǐ de biǎo ne? Wang, what about your watch?

ne This is the *ne* which stands in for the completion of a question (L1, N38)

22 Wáng tóngzhì, nǐ jīntiān jǐ diǎn zhōng lái de? Comrade Wang, what time did you come today?

de This *de* belongs to the shì . . . de construction described in L2, N3b, employed to bring out attendant circumstances. That Wang

came is already known; the interest is in *WHAT TIME* he came. The shì may be left out, but not the *de*.

23 Bā diǎn qián wǔ fēn. Five minutes to eight.

qián: *before* Minutes *before* or *to* the hour may be expressed in this way, lit. *Before eight o'clock five minutes*.

24 Bú tài zǎo, bā diǎn guò wǔ fēn. Not too early, at five past eight.

guò: *past* may be used of minutes past the hour, but normally only when the number is a single syllable. Notice that guò was not used in shí'èr diǎn èrshíbā fēn: *twelve twenty-eight*.

25 Nǐ měitiān zǒuzhe lái, háishi qí zìxíngchē lái? Do you come on foot every day, or by bicycle?

a zǒuzhe Literally this means *walking*, but is best taken as the equivalent of *on foot*. Like qí zìxíngchē: *riding a bicycle*, zǒuzhe is an adverbial expression specifying the manner of coming, and so precedes the verb lái. Among adverbs, remember, those of time (měitiān) normally come before those of manner.

b háishi: *or* This is to be distinguished from the other word for *or*, huò, which you met in the sentence Yǒude tóngzhì zài kàn bào, huò kàn zázhi. Háishi is used in questions to present alternative propositions, from which the other person is to select one. In this case of course the questioner miscalculates, as neither of the alternatives is correct.

26 Wǒ zuò gōnggòng qìchē lái. I come by bus.

zuò: (*travel*) *by* Zuò literally means *sit*, therefore its application is limited to conveyances in which one sits (e.g. car, boat, plane). For horses and bicycles you use qí: *sit astride, ride*.

27 Dào zhèr yào duōshao shíjiān? How long does it take to get here?

a dào is being used as a full verb here, *reach* or *get to*.

b yào The basic meaning of yào is *want*, but the idiom yào . . . shíjiān corresponds to the English *take (so much) time*. Děi, in the next question, is interchangeable with yào for this purpose.

28 Liù diǎn zhōng jiù děi qīlai. I have to get up at six o'clock.

jiù This word is not accounted for in the translation because it only indicates an attitude. Used after time expressions it indicates that the speaker regards the time as soon or early. The implication here therefore is *I have to get up AS EARLY AS SIX o'clock*.

29 Dàgài bá ge xiǎoshí. Roughly eight hours.

xiǎoshí This word can either be treated as a measure word (like nián), when it does not take ge, or as a noun (like zhōngtóu), when it does take ge.

30 Wǎnfàn shì nǐ zuò ne, háishi nǐ àiren zuò ne? Do you cook the dinner, or does your husband?

a Wǎnfàn Logically wǎnfàn is the object of zuò (*make, cook*), but placed at the beginning of the sentence it acts as a topic.

- b **shì** Introducing the first alternative (*is it you who makes it?*), **shì** balances the **háishi** which introduces the second alternative (*is it your husband who makes it?*). **Shì** can always pair with **háishi** in this way: Wang could have asked previously, **Nǐ měitiān SHÌ zǒuzhe lái HÁISHI qí zìxíngchē lái?** See N25b.
- c **ne** This particle, which often accompanies interrogative words (L1, N43), also habitually combines with **shì** . . . **háishi** . . .
- 31 **Yǒushí wǒ zuò, yǒushí wǒ àiren zuò.** *Sometimes I cook it, sometimes my husband cooks it.*
Yǒushí is a contraction of **yǒude shíhou**: *there are times, sometimes.*
- 32 **Wǎnfàn hòu nǐ dōu zuò shénme ya?** *What do you do after dinner?*
hòu Since it belongs to that group of words which mark relative positions in terms of time and place, **hòu** comes after the event to which it refers, as you will expect by now. Its longer form is **yìhòu**.
- 33 **Xuéde zěnmeyàng le?** *How is your studying coming along?*
 We have here an adverbial complement, marked by **de**, which has to do with the level reached in studying. It is impossible to match the combination *You study—what's it like now?* in English.
le This is the sentence **le**, having the implication *now, by now.*
- 34 **Míngtiān wǔ hào, shì bu shì?** *Tomorrow is the fifth isn't it?*
hào This word means *number*, and is used to designate days of the month. "The fifth" in any other order of succession is **dìwǔ**, as in **dìwǔ kè**: *the fifth lesson*. There is no need for **shì**: *is in Míngtiān wǔ hào*, though it may be used. Compare **Wǒ wǔshí suì**: *I am fifty years old.*
 To recapitulate on questions of time:
What month of the year? is **jǐ yuè?**
Which day of the month? is **jǐ hào?**
Which day of the week? is **xīngqī jǐ?**
What time of day? is **jǐ diǎn zhōng?**
- 35 **Shì bu shì míngtiān yǒu jǐ ge Měiguó péngyou lái?** *Tomorrow there are some American friends coming, aren't there?*
 a **Shì bu shì**: *is it so (that)* Notice that you can use this question device at the beginning of a sentence as well as at the end.
 b **yǒu jǐ ge** The interrogative **jǐ**, and all other interrogative words, can be used in an affirmative way, when they acquire an indefinite sense. The two aspects of **jǐ** are *how many?* (a low number) and *a few, some*. Here are some other interrogative words with their corresponding indefinite senses:
shuí? *who? someone or other, anyone.*
nǎr? *where? somewhere or other, anywhere.*
shénme? *what? something or other, anything.*
 c **yǒu** As a general rule, nouns in the subject position have a definite

reference, corresponding to *the* in English. **Xuéshēng lái le** means *THE student has come*. Nouns of indefinite reference (with *a, some, etc.*) in the subject position are introduced by **yǒu**: *there is/are*. So it is said here **Yǒu jǐ ge péngyou lái**: *there are some friends coming, some friends are coming.*

- 36 **Jìntiān sì hào xīngqīyī.** *Today is the fourth, Monday.*
 As we have seen, it is quite normal to do without **shì**: *is* in a sentence such as **Jìntiān sì hào**: *Today is the fourth*. The same applies to **Jìntiān xīngqīyī**: *today is Monday*. Here are two such sentences run together: *Today is the fourth, (is) Monday.*
- 37 **Xīngqīwǔ wǒ yào péi wàibīn cānguān gōngchǎng.** *On Friday I will be going with (some) foreign visitors to visit a factory.*
yào The basic meaning of **yào** is *want*, but like the English word *will*, which has the same root, it also has to do with projection into the future. As such it can be translated by *will, shall* or *going to*, but it is not used nearly as frequently as those signs of the future tense are in English.
- 38 **Ò, kuài liǎng diǎn le.** *Oh, it's almost two o'clock.*
kuài **Kuài** most often means *quick*, but it occurs here in the secondary sense of *almost, on the point of*, when some action or time is imminent. Such cases always involve progression, so **kuài** is linked with a sentence **le**, which implies (*by*) *now*.
- 39 **Zánmen kāishǐ bàngōng ba.** *Let's begin working.*
 a **zánmen**: *we* Differs from **wǒmen** in that it associates only the speaker and the person(s) he is addressing; **wǒmen**, on the other hand, may exclude the person(s) addressed. e.g. **Nǐmen shì Shànghǎirén, wǒmen shì Běijīngrén, zánmen dōu shì Zhōngguó rén**: *You are from Shanghai, we (exclusive) are from Peking; we (inclusive) are all Chinese.*
 b **ba** Conveys a tone of suggestion—*let's*. See L2, N28b.

Lesson four

The evening meal

Translation

One

Wang Huiying: Yesterday I had a terrible headache.
 Today I asked for a day's leave.
 After resting for a day, it's much better.
 Tomorrow I can go and attend school.
 I am lying in bed.
 My second elder brother is revising his lessons.
 Mother is preparing the evening meal.
 Father and eldest brother haven't returned yet.
 They are probably very busy.

I put on my clothes, got out of bed, and walked into the yard.
 A whiff of fragrance came to my nose.
 What a nice smell! (very fragrant)
 Was it stewed meat?
 Perhaps it was fried fish.
 I went into the kitchen.
 Mother saw me come in, and gave a smile.
 Mother asked me if my head was still aching or not.
 I said it was already better.
 Father and eldest brother came back together.
 The food was ready as well.
 Thereupon I wiped the table.
 Second elder brother laid out the chopsticks and bowls.
 Mother carried in the stewed meat and pickled vegetables.
 Right after she next brought in mantou and congee.
 We sat down, and began to eat.
 They were all very concerned about my illness, and all asked me if
 it was better now or not.
 We chatted as we ate.
 Our talk was very interesting.
 The evening meal too is a very happy time in my home.

Two

Stewed meat

Mother: You have got up now. Is your head not aching now?
Wang Huiying: Mm, it's not aching now.
Mother: Will you be able to go to school tomorrow?
Wang Huiying: Yes. Mum, is today's dinner stewed meat?
Mother: That's right. You weren't feeling well!

Wang Huiying: Thanks, Mum. I'm extremely fond of (eating) stewed meat.
Mother: What is your second elder brother doing?
Wang Huiying: He's revising his lessons.
Mother: You must both be hungry by now. Your Father and eldest brother
 will be back soon, I should think.
Wang Huiying: Ah, Father and eldest brother have come back together!
Father: Today, just by chance, we met at the end of the alley.
Wang Dawen: I thought you would have been back long ago.
Father: No, today there was a meeting, (so) I came back rather late.
Mother: Huiying, give the table a wipe. Move the chairs over too, and get
 ready to eat.
Wang Huiying: All right.
Wang Guiwen: I'll lay the bowls and chopsticks.
Wang Huiying: Father! Eldest brother! It's time to eat.
Father: I'll just change my clothes then I'll come.
Wang Dawen: I'll just wash my hands and then come.

Very appetizing

Father: The stewed meat today is really tasty!
Mother: There wasn't enough time; it's not stewed very tender.
Wang Dawen: No, Mum, it's very tender, extremely tasty.
Mother: Is that so? Have some more, all of you.
Father: Huiying, you must eat some more, you know. It was for you
 mother stewed the meat!
Wang Huiying: I have eaten too much, I can't eat any more.
Mother: Come on, I'll fill another bowl of congee for you.
Wang Huiying: I'm full.
Wang Guiwen: Mum, let me have another bowl.
Mother: There's plenty of congee. Dawen, do you want any?
Wang Dawen: I've had enough.
Mother: Have you all finished eating?
Wang Guiwen: We've all finished eating.
Wang Huiying: In that case, let's clear away the chopsticks, bowls, and whatnot.

New words in this lesson

zuótiān yesterday
 tóu head
 téng ache
 lihai severely, terribly
 qǐng ask for
 tiān day (measure)
 jià leave, time off work
 kěyǐ can
 shàngxué attend classes, go to school
 chuáng bed
 tǎng lie
 èrgē second elder brother
 wēnxi revise, review

gōngkè lesson
 māma mother, mum
 zhǔnbèi prepare
 wǎnfàn evening meal
 bàba father, dad
 dàgē eldest brother
 huilai come back
 chuānshang put on (clothes)
 yīfu clothes
 xià get off, descend from
 gǔ whiff (measure)
 xiāngwèir scent, fragrance
 pūjin assail

bízi nose
 xiāng fragrant
 dùnròu stewed meat
 yěxǔ perhaps
 jiānyú fried fish
 zǒujìn walk into
 chúfáng kitchen
 kànjian see
 xiào smile, laugh
 xiàolexiào gave a smile
 hái still
 yíkuàir together
 déle ready
 yúshì thereupon
 cā wipe
 bǎi lay out
 kuàizi chopsticks
 wǎn bowl
 duān carry in front of one (like a tray)
 duānlai carry over (to one)
 xiáncài pickled vegetables
 jiēzhe right after, in close succession
 yòu again, next
 ná take up
 nálai bring
 mántou a sort of steamed roll
 xifàn rice gruel, congee
 zuòxialai sit down
 kaishǐ begin
 guānxīn be concerned about
 bìng illness
 biān ~ biān ~ one the one hand ~ on
 the other ~
 tán chat, converse
 yǒu yisi interesting
 kuàilè happy, cheerful
 qǐlai get up
 n mm (assenting noise)
 shūfu comfortable
 ma final particle
 xièxie thank you
 zuì extremely
 ài love, be fond of

gǎn do
 è (be) hungry
 qiǎo by chance, coincidentally
 hútòngkǒu end (mouth) of alley
 yùjian meet
 yíwéi think
 nín you
 zǎo long since
 kāihui hold meeting
 wǎn late
 bǎ preposition introducing object
 yǐzi chair
 bān move, shift
 bānguolai move across, over
 zhīdaole understood; very well
 huàn change
 jiù then
 xǐ wash
 shǒu hands
 zhèige this
 hǎochī tasty
 kě indeed
 zhēn really
 gòu enough
 dùn stew
 làn tender, soft
 jíle in the extreme
 duō more
 děi have to
 wèi on account of
 chībúxiàqù cannot eat any more
 lái come on
 zài again
 gěi for
 chéng fill
 chībǎo eat one's fill
 lái give, let have
 yǒudeshì be plentiful
 yào want
 chīhǎo finish eating
 nàme in that case
 chèxiaqu clear away

Notes

Part one

- 1 **Zuótiān wǒ tóu téngde lihai.** Yesterday my head ached terribly.
 a **Wǒ tóu téng:** my head ached The "subject" (wǒ) is only loosely

related to the predicate (**tóu téng**)—see L3, N19. Literally this reads: *I—head ached*. The predicate is itself made up of subject (**tóu**) and predicate (**téng**).

- b **lihai** features here as an adverbial complement of degree, marked by the **de** linking it to the verb **téng**: *hurt to a terrible extent*.
 2 **Jíntiān wǒ qǐng le yì tiān jià.** Today I asked for a day's leave.
 a **qǐng le** A verb **le** is obligatory when a verb referring to a completed action has a quantified object (here *ONE DAY'S leave*).
 b **yì tiān** **Tiān** is a measure word, and may modify an object like any other measure word. **Yì tiān jià** is no different grammatically from **sì pǐn huā**: *four pots of flowers*.
 3 **Xiūxile yì tiān, hǎo duō le.** After resting for a day, it's much better.
 a **Xiūxile yì tiān** The absence of a final **le** indicates that there is to be a follow-up to this utterance. **Wǒ xiūxile yì tiān le** would mean *I have now rested for a day* (complete utterance).
 b **yì tiān** "Time how long" expressions, i.e. those which say how long an activity lasts, come AFTER the verb.
 c **hǎo duō le**: lit. *better by a lot* **Duō le** is the opposite of **yìdiǎnr** (e.g. **hǎo yìdiǎnr**); used after an adjective it implies a comparison.
 4 **Míngtiān kěyǐ qù shàngxué.** Tomorrow I can go and attend school.
kěyǐ: *can* **Kěyǐ** is used when permission is given or circumstances allow. Distinguish **huì**: *can*, in the sense of "know how to".
 5 **Wǒ zài chuángshang tǎngzhe.** I am lying in (lit. on) my bed.
tǎngzhe **-zhe** is equivalent to the progressive ending **-ing** in English. It characterizes a continuous state. It may, where the verb is appropriate, combine with the more active **zài** (*in the process of, engaged in*), which is used in the next two sentences. The **zài** in this sentence merely introduces the location of the "lying".
 6 **Èrgē zài wēnxí gōngkè.** Second elder brother is revising his lessons.
Èrgē Siblings commonly refer to each other in terms of relationships in preference to personal names.
 7 **Bàba hé dàgē hái méi huilai.** Father and eldest brother haven't returned yet.
hái méi **Hái** here means *still*; **hái méi** then is *still not* or *not yet*. The opposite of **hái méi huilai** is **yǐjīng huilaile**: *already returned*.
 8 **Wǒ chuānshang yīfu, xiàle chuáng, zǒudào yuànzǐ lǐ qù.** I put on my clothes, got off the bed, and went into the yard.
 a **chuānshang**: *put on* This is what is known as a "resultative" verb, that is, it is composed of two elements, the first of which initiates and characterizes the action, the second of which states the result. So **chuān** is *wear* or *don*, and **shang** signals completion of the dressing activity—the clothes are *on*.

- b **qù** **Qù** at the end of a clause indicates direction away from the speaker (like the German *hin*). For direction towards the speaker **lái** is used.
- 9 **Yì gǔ xiāngwèir pūjìn bízi li.** *A whiff of fragrance came to my nose.*
pūjìn This also is a resultative verb: the scent *assails* (**pū**) and as a result *enters* (**jìn**) into the nose (**bízi li**).
- 10 **Wǒ zǒujìn chúfáng qu.** *I went into the kitchen.*
zǒujinqu Consists of a verb of motion (**zǒu**: *go, walk*), plus a compound directional complement (**jinqu**: *enter go*). When such verbs take an object (here **chúfáng**) it usually comes between the second and third elements.
- 11 **Xiàolexiào.** *gave a smile.*
Reduplication of verbs (**xiàoxiao**, **kànkàn** etc.) makes the action a brief one. The effect is similar to “give a (smile)” or “take a (look)” in English. If the action is over, **le** splits the pair.
- 12 **Māma wèn wǒ tóu hái téng bu.** *Mother asked me if my head was still aching or not.*
Indirect questions do not involve any change of phrasing in Chinese. The question part is put in exactly the same terms as the original direct question would have been. It is like using a direct quote in English: *Mother asked me: “Is (your) head still aching?”*.
bu: short for **bu téng**. This is an alternative choice question: **tóu hái téng/bu téng?**: *head still aching/not aching?* The **ma?** form of question is not used in indirect questions.
- 13 **Wǒ shuō yǐjīng hǎo le.** *I said it was already better.*
hǎo le The sentence **le** informs us what the situation is NOW, so **hǎo le** means *all right now*, i.e. *it is better*.
- 14 **Māma duānlaile dùnròu hé xiáncài.** *Mother carried in the stewed meat and pickled vegetables.*
duānlaile: *carried in* **Duānlai** consists of a verb (**duān**: *carry*) and a simple directional complement (**lái**: *come*, i.e. *towards me*). As a rule these elements are split when an object is present: **duān dùnròu hé xiáncài lái**. But if the action is completed and the position of the object is changed by the action, the object may come after the verb and complement: **duānlaile dùnròu hé xiáncài**.
- 15 **Jiēzhe yòu nálaile mántou hé xifàn.** *Right after she brought in mantou and congee.*
yòu **Yòu** has two common meanings. One is *again* (repetition of an action); the other is *next* (one action following another). Both normally refer to past actions. **Yòu**: *next and jiēzhe* reinforce each other: *right after* (or: *in close succession*) . . . *next* . . . In this sentence there is a flavour of *again* to **yòu**, too, as the mother’s two actions are similar.

- 16 **dōu wèn wǒ bìng hǎo le méiyǒu.** *(they) all ask me if my illness has got better or not.*
This is an alternative choice question with a perfective aspect: *has your illness got better/not (got better)?* Compare **Tā lái le méiyǒu?** *Has he come or not?*
- 17 **Wǒmen biān chī biān tán.** *We chatted as we ate.*
Biān Is a contraction of **yìbiānr**: *on the one hand* (L3, N14)
- 18 **Wǒmen tánde hěn yǒu yìsi.** *We have an interesting talk.*
Though it would be unidiomatic to translate it as such, the core of this sentence is an adverbial complement: *We converse (to the point of it being) very interesting*. This does not necessarily imply a culmination: the verb gives rise to a state (of interestingness) which continues along with the action of the verb.

Part two

- 19 **Míngtiān néng shàngxué ma?** *Will you be able to go to school tomorrow?*
néng: *can* Ideally **néng** denotes capability: *have the ability to*; it overlaps, however, with **kěyǐ**: *allowed to, circumstances allow*.
- 20 **Nǐ bù shūfu ma!** *You weren’t well!*
ma This is a “tone of voice” word. It conveys a note of impatience, the attitude being “Do I have to tell you?”. Note that it is written differently from the question particle **ma**.
- 21 **Nǐ èrgē gān shénme ne?** *What is your second elder brother doing?*
gān is a more colloquial and lively alternative to **zuò**: *do*.
- 22 **Tā wēnxí gōngkè ne.** *He’s revising his lessons.*
ne This is the progressive particle: *is revising*. See L1, N22a.
- 23 **Nǐ bàba hé nǐ dàgē yě kuài huilai le ba.** *Your father and eldest brother will be back soon as well.*
kuài: *on the point of* See L3, N38.
- 24 **Jīntiān qiǎode hěn.** *Today just by chance.*
qiǎode hěn **Hěn**: *very* normally comes before the adjective/adverb. When the positions are reversed (**-de hěn**), the effect is to stress the degree—**qiǎode hěn**: *very* coincidentally. Compare **hǎode hěn**: *very good indeed*.
- 25 **Wǒ yǐwéi nín zǎo huilaile ne.** *I thought you would have been back long ago.*
a **yǐwéi**: *think* This word has the connotation of “mistakenly”. The English expression “I was under the impression” has the same flavour.
b **nín** Is the respectful form of **nǐ**: *you*.

- c **zǎo** Has here the sense of *long since* rather than *early*.
 d **ne** This is a new use of the particle **ne**, to convey a tone of surprise.
- 26 **Bù, jīntiān kāihuì.** *No, today there was a meeting.*
kāihuì: *hold a meeting* This is a verb-object construction which does not require a subject: It is in fact common in Chinese not to specify the subject or agent, or indeed voice (active or passive). The non-committal English passive best reflects this lack of specificity: *a meeting was held*.
- 27 **Huīyīng, nǐ bǎ zhuōzi cāyicā.** *Huīyīng, give the table a wipe.*
 a **bǎ** **Bǎ** is used to dispose of an object before the verb. Originally **bǎ** meant *take hold of*, and though it can no longer be used on its own in this way, it may be helpful to keep the fact in mind, and think of this sentence literally as *take the table and give it a rub*. The verb has to have a complement, or be reduplicated (as here) for **bǎ** to be used. The object has to be a definite one, and there has to be a positive sense of “disposal” in the action, which excludes such verbs as “know”, “see”, “welcome”, etc. As an alternative to the **bǎ** construction, the object may figure as “topic”, as in the next sentence: **Yīzi yě bānguolai:** *move the chairs over (this way) too*.
 b **cāyicā** Reduplication of verbs may occur with **yì**: *one* in the middle: *rub a rub, give a rub*. Similarly **xiàoyixiào:** *give a smile*. Notice that **yì** is unstressed.
- 28 **Zhīdaole.** *All right.*
 This is a formula by which instructions are acknowledged. **Zhīdao** is *know*, so the phrase might be understood as *Got it!*.
- 29 **Chī fàn le.** *It's time to eat.*
 The **le** indicates that a new situation has developed: *eat now—it's time to eat*.
- 30 **Wǒ huànhuan yīfu jiù lái.** *I'll just change my clothes then come.*
 a **huànhuan** When a single-syllable word is reduplicated without any middle element like **yì** or **le**, the second syllable loses its tone. Compare **cāca, kànkān**.
 b **jiù:** *then* **Jiù** introduces the culmination of a sequence of actions when the preliminaries satisfy the minimum requirements for the last action to take place. The implication is: “I just need to change my clothes, then I'll come”.
- 31 **Jīntiān de zhèige dùnròu kě zhēn hǎochí!** *Today's stewed meat is really tasty!*
kě No exact meaning can be put on **kě** in this sentence. It is simply a stress word which lends extra force to an utterance. It can usually be accounted for by “indeed” or “really”, but there is already a word for “really” here (**zhēn**).

- 32 **Bù, mā, hěn làn, hǎochí jīle.** *No, Mum, it's very tender, extremely tasty.*
jīle: *in the extreme* **Jīle** can be appended to any adjective, e.g. **Hǎo jīle:** *good in the extreme—excellent*.
- 33 **Shì ma, nǐmen duō chí ciǎnr ba.** *Is that so? Have some more.*
duō + verb + diǎnr (yidiǎnr) equals (verb) *a little more*. Compare **duō wēnxí (yì)diǎnr:** *revise a little more*.
- 34 **Mā wèi nǐ dùn de ròu wa.** *Mother stewed the meat for you!*
 a **Wèi** means *because of, on account of, for the sake of*. Here it introduces an adverbial phrase which precedes the verb **dùn:** *stew*.
 b **dùn de ròu** The **de** is again part of the **shì . . . de** construction (L2, N3b), with the **shì** omitted. If the **shì** is put back in, this would read **Mā shì wèi nǐ dùn de ròu:** *It was on your account that mother stewed the meat*. When the verb takes an object in this construction, the concluding **de** is as a rule put before the object (here **ròu**). Compare **Wǒ shì zuótiān cā de zhuōzi:** *It was yesterday I wiped the table*.
- 35 **Wǒ chīde tài duō le, chībúxiàqù le.** *I have eaten too much, I can't eat any more.*
chībúxiàqù **Chīxiàqù** is a resultative verb: *eat-go down—finish eating* (the food). Resultative verbs can be turned into “potential” verbs by the insertion of **bù** or **dé** between the verb and the complement; so **chīdèxiàqù** means *CAN finish eating*, and **chībúxiàqù** means *CANNOT finish eating*. Compare **bānguolai:** *move over*; **bāndeguòlái:** *can move over*; **bānbúguòlái:** *cannot move over*. This form of the verb offers an alternative to the use of the auxiliaries **néng** and **kěyǐ**, though oddly enough it may combine with them.
- 36 **Lái, wǒ zài gěi nǐ chéng wǎn xīfàn ba.** *Come on, I'll fill another bowl of congee for you.*
 a **zài:** *again* **Zài** is restricted in this meaning to the present and the future. For the past **yòu** is used—**wǒ yòu gěi tā chéngle wǎn fàn:** *I again filled a bowl of rice for him*. “Again fill” amounts of course to “fill another”.
 b **gěi** **Gěi** as a full verb means *give*; as a preposition it means *for*.
 c **wǎn** Equals **yì wǎn:** *one (a) bowl*. **Yì** is often unarticulated in normal speech.
- 37 **Mā, zài gěi wǒ lái yì wǎn.** *Mum, let me have another bowl.*
lái This is the same **lái** which means *come*, only it is used causatively: *to make come or bring, or let have*. It is very frequently used in the context of food and drink.
- 38 **Wǒ gòu le.** *I've had enough.*
 Again the “subject” **wǒ** is only loosely connected with the predicate **gòu le**. This does not mean “I am enough now” but *I—enough now*, i.e. *I have had enough now*.

39 Nǐmen dōu chīhǎole ma? Have you all finished eating?

hǎo Hǎo (lit: good or well) is used as the second element of resultative verbs to denote satisfactory completion of the action. Compare **Wǒ kuàizi, wǎn dōu bǎihǎole**: I have finished laying out all the chopsticks and bowls.

Dì wǔ kè

Lesson five

Zài Běihǎi gōngyuán

At Beihai Park

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: Today I'm going for a stroll in Beihai Park with younger brother and younger sister.

Beihai Park is a famous park in Peking.

Beihai Park is very big, (and) moreover is very beautiful.

In the park there are very many valuable buildings.

For example, the Jiulongbi (nine dragon wall) is a case in point.

The Baita (White Tower) is a notable building too.

(If you) stand on the platform of the Baita, you can see the whole city of Peking.

The park for the most part is water (-area).

In spring, summer and autumn you can row boats; in winter you can skate.

Now it is the beginning of summer.

Everywhere you can smell the scent of acacia blossom.

I have heard it said you can also eat acacia blossom.

In the park there were lots of young men and women rowing boats. Younger brother and younger sister wanted me to teach them to row.

They didn't know how to row.

They had never learned to row.

I first rowed to show them.

Afterwards I taught them how to row.

Younger brother is bold and he learned very quickly.

Younger brother not only could row, but also rowed very well.

He could go forward freely, and also go backward freely.

Younger sister could only row forward, she could not go backward.

Two

Going to the park

Wang Guiwen: Eldest brother, we'll go for a stroll in Beihai Park today, all right?

Wang Dawen: All right. Huiying, are you going?

Wang Huiying: Of course I'm going.

Wang Guiwen: You can't go, can you?

Wang Huiying: How's that?

Wang Guiwen: You haven't finished today's homework yet.

Wang Huiying: How do you know I haven't finished?

Wang Guiwen: You said so yourself just now!

Wang Huiying: I'll do it when I get back.

- Wang Guiwen: Will you be able to finish it?
 Wang Huiying: There is only a little left. How could I not be able to finish it?
 Wang Dawen: Then let's go together. Have a word with mother.
 Wang Huiying: Mother! We're going with eldest brother for a stroll in Beihai Park.
 Mother: What time are you coming back?
 Wang Dawen: Before supper we'll be back for sure.
 Mother: That won't do, you must come back earlier!
 Wang Dawen: In that case what time would it be all right to come back?
 Mother: Can you get back before five o'clock?
 Wang Dawen: We can.
 Mother: Very well, off you go then.

Rowing a boat

- Wang Huiying: Eldest brother, take a sniff; what is that smell, so fragrant?
 Wang Dawen: I can't smell it.
 Wang Huiying: Your nose isn't doing its job! Take another sniff carefully, and see.
 Wang Guiwen: Mm, I smell it now. It seems to be the smell of acacia blossom.
 Wang Huiying: Look, the acacia blossom on that tree is in full bloom.
 Wang Dawen: Yes, indeed. [It's true]
 Wang Guiwen: Let's go over to the White Tower and take a look.
 Wang Huiying: Look, so many people are rowing boats there.
 Wang Guiwen: Rowing is actually great fun, (but) unfortunately I don't know how to.
 Wang Huiying: I don't know how either. Eldest brother, you teach us.
 Wang Dawen: All right, we'll go and hire a boat.
 Wang Dawen: First I'll row to show you. You row this way, have you got it? Guiwen, you have a try first.
 Wang Guiwen: To look at it is very easy, but when you come to row it's very difficult.
 Wang Dawen: You can't learn at one go, take it gradually.
 Wang Guiwen: Ah, I've got the knack now. The boat can go forward.
 Wang Dawen: Huiying, you have a go at learning.
 Wang Huiying: How is it I can't get any strength into it?
 Wang Dawen: You have to bend over.
 Wang Huiying: I don't know how to turn.
 Wang Dawen: You stick one oar in the water without moving it, row strongly with the other, then you can turn.
 Wang Huiying: It's true (It really works).
 Wang Dawen: That's about it, it's getting late as well. Mother is waiting at home, let's go back.

New words in this lesson

guàng stroll, stroll in
 Bèihǎi gōngyuán Beihai Park
 yǒumíng famous

érgiě moreover, and also
 měilì beautiful
 xǔduō very many

jiàzhí value
 yǒu jiàzhí valuable
 jiànzhù building, construction
 pírú for example
 Jiǔlóngbǐ Nine Dragon Wall
 Báitǎ White Tower
 zhùmíng notable, celebrated
 zhàn to stand
 tái zuò platform
 kàndào see (look + reach)
 quánhéng whole city
 dàbùfen for the most part
 shuǐmiàn water surface or area
 chūn spring
 xià summer
 qiū autumn
 huá row
 chuán boat
 chūxià early summer
 dào chù everywhere
 nénggòu able to (= néng)
 wēndào smell (sniff + reach)
 yánghuáihuā acacia blossom
 tīngshuō hear tell
 qīngnián young
 nán-nǚ men and women
 jiāogēi teach to
 xué learn
 -guo verb suffix
 xiān first
 ránhòu afterwards
 zěnmē how; how is it that?
 dǎnzi gall; courage
 xuéhuì learn, master (learn + know how to)
 bú dàn not only
 bú dàn ... érgiě ... not only ... but also
 zìyóu free(ly)
 qiánjìn advance
 hòutui retreat
 zhǐ only
 wàng towards
 wàng qián forwards
 wàng hòu backwards
 tuì retreat
 dāngrán of course
 zěnmē? How's that? How do you make that out?

kèwài zuò yè homework
 zuò wán complete (do + finish)
 zhīdào know
 gāngcái just now
 zìjǐ (one)self
 zài and then
 shèngxià leave, leave over
 nàme in that case
 yì shēng a sound
 wényiwén take a sniff
 wèir a smell
 zhème so, thus
 wénbújiàn unable to smell (sniff + not + perceive)
 guānshi see to business, be efficient
 hǎohǎo de carefully
 hǎoxiàng apparently
 kāimǎnle opened fully; in full bloom
 zhēnde truly; it's true, yes indeed.
 dào after all, actually
 tǐng very
 zū rent, hire
 zhī measure word for boat
 zhèyàng in this way
 míngbai be clear; understand
 shìshi have a try
 róngyi easy
 huáqilai begin to row
 nán difficult
 yíxiàzi at one go
 màn mǎn de slowly; gradually
 lái do
 ái ah (exclamation)
 dǒngde understand
 qiàoménr knack, secret
 shǐbúshàng unable to use
 jīnr strength
 wān yāo bend (the waist)
 wānxiāqu bend over
 guǎiwānr turn corner, turn bend
 chàbùduō about, about right.
 zhī measure word for an oar
 jiǎng oar
 chā stick, insert
 dòng move
 yòngli use force; strenuously.

Part one

- 1 Jìntiān wǒ hé dìdì, mèimei qù guàng Běihǎi gōngyuán. *Today I'm going for a stroll in the Beihai Park with my younger brother and younger sister.*
guàng: stroll is a transitive verb in Chinese, that is, it takes a direct object (in this case, the park); stroll in the park is therefore not zài gōngyuán lǐ guàng but guàng gōngyuán. Guàng includes the idea of looking around.
- 2 Pìrú Jiǔlóngbì jiù shì. *For example, the Jiulongbi is a case in point.*
pìrú . . . jiù shì This had best be learned as a formula, for example . . . is a case in point. Jiù shì may mean several things; the meaning relevant here is *is precisely so, is the very one meant*.
- 3 Gōngyuán lǐ yǒu hěn duō qīngnián nán-nǚ zài huá chuán. *In the park there were lots of young men and women rowing boats.*
a We have here a "pivotal" construction which has often to be rendered by a relative clause in English. Qīngnián nán-nǚ belongs to two separate clauses and acts as a "pivot" between them: gōngyuán lǐ yǒu hěn duō qīngnián nán-nǚ/qīngnián nán-nǚ zài huá chuán. Because of the progressive aspect of the second verb ("rowing"), the English sentence can mirror the Chinese one in this case, but for another example of the "pivotal" construction, Yǒu hěn duō rén bu huì huá chuán, the use of *who* would be called for: *There are lots of people who can't row.*
b huá chuán is a verb-object construction; in English there is no need to supply the object "boat" for the verb "row", but in Chinese the object helps to identify the verb.
- 4 Dìdì mèimei yào wǒ jiāogěi tāmen huá chuán. *Younger brother and younger sister wanted me to teach them to row.*
jiāogěi Gěi as the SECOND element in verbs means *to* (contrast gěi: *for*, L4, N36b).
jiāogěi tāmen is then *teach to them* (rowing).
- 5 Tāmen méi xuéguo huá chuán. *They had never learned to row.*
-guo -guo is a verbal suffix, sometimes called the experiential suffix, because it points to things ever having been done in one's experience: wǒ chīguo mántou means *I have eaten mantou* (at some time in the past). The negative méi—guo of course means *not ever—never*.
- 6 Wǒ xiān huágěi tāmen kàn. *I first rowed for them to see.*
Though it is printed together with huá, gěi actually belongs to the following linguistic unit, gěi tāmen kàn: *for them to see* (to show them). Compare wǒ xiě gěi nǐ kàn *I'll write (it) for you to see*.

- 7 Dìdì dǎnzi dà, hěn kuài jiù xuéhuile. *Younger brother is bold, and he learned very quickly.*
- a dǎnzi dà: bold is itself made up of a subject and predicate: courage (dǎnzi) is big (dà); compare L4, N1a.
- b jiù This is the jiù which carries the flavour of sooner than expected; see L3, N28.
- 8 Mèimei zhǐ huì wàng qián huá, *Younger sister could only row forward,*
huì If you compare this sentence with the previous one you will see how néng (physical ability) and huì (learned ability) may overlap.

Part two

- 9 Dàgē, jìntiān wǒmen qù guàng Běihǎi gōngyuán hǎo ma? *Eldest brother, we'll go for a stroll in the Beihai Park today, all right?*
hǎo ma: *all right?* In Chinese you always have to put your proposal first and then ask if it is "all right". There is no equivalent to the Introductory "Is it all right to . . ." in English.
- 10 Dāngrán qù le. *Of course I'm going.*
le This is a new use of the sentence particle le, to be distinguished from the perfective aspect; it accompanies emphatic assertions or categorical statements, and as such is compatible with such adverbs as dāngrán: *of course*; yíding: *definitely*, and tài: *too*.
- 11 Gāngcái nǐ zìjǐ shuō de ma! *You said so yourself just now!*
de This de is used in a similar way to the (shì) . . . de for explaining attendant circumstances, only this time it is the central fact which is being explained. This de carries the implication, "that is the fact of the matter", "that is the situation". We will call it the "situational" de.
- 12 huílai zài zuò Lit. *I'll come back and then do it.*
zài Rather than *again*, zài means *and then* here. It has a particular application in circumstances of deferral, when some action is postponed till later or till something else has been done. Huiying is indeed proposing that she leave her homework till she returns.
- 13 Zuòdewán ma? *Will you be able to finish it?*
This is the "can" form of the resultative verb zuòwán: *do + finish = finish*; potential forms are zuòdewán: *can finish* and zuòbùwán: *cannot finish*.
- 14 Zěnme huì zuòbùwán ne? *How could I not be able to finish?*
huì In addition to acquired ability, (know how to), huì covers abstract possibility, when it translates variously as *could, might, would, will (likely)*. Zěnme huì asks, rhetorically, *How could (it be)?*
- 15 Gēn mā shuō yì shēng. *Have a word with mother.*

Yì shēngr **Yì shēngr** (a measure word) literally means *a sound*.
Shuō yì shēngr (*say a sound*) is an idiom equivalent to *have a word*.

- 16 **Nà bù xíng a, děi zǎo diǎnr huílai!** *That won't do, (you) must come back earlier!*

a **nà**: *that* **Nà** is summing up all that Dawen has said. Remember when “that” refers to a specific noun (= that one), a measure word has to be used, e.g. **nà ge (nèi ge)**.

b **zǎo diǎnr** (= **zǎo yì diǎnr**) is comparative: *early by a little—rather earlier*.

- 17 **Nàme jǐ diǎn zhōng huílai hǎo ne?** *In that case what time would it be all right to return?*

hǎo: *all right* Or more positively, *best*. This word may be used in three different situations. One we have met before: **Wǒmen qù guàng gōngyuán hǎo ma?**—where it is simply appended to a proposal. Another is affirmative: **wǒmen wǔ diǎn zhōng huílai hǎo**: *it would be best to come back at five o'clock*. The third is in questions containing interrogative words, like this one: *what time shall we come back for it to be all right?*

- 18 **Wǔ diǎn yǐqián huídelái huíbùlái?** *Can you get back before five o'clock?*

a **yǐqián**: *before* Remember **yǐqián** (like **yǐhòu**: *after*) comes AFTER the time referred to.

b **huídelái huíbùlái** This is an alternative choice type of question, with the verb in the potential form: *can return/cannot return?* As an alternative, **néng** could be used: **néng bu néng huílai?**

- 19 **Zài hǎohāor de wényiwén kàn.** *lit. Again carefully take a sniff and see.*

Like the English word *see*, **kàn** is not limited to plain visual perception, but extends to *see what happens*. A reduplicated verb plus **kàn**: *do something and see* is a common construction.

- 20 **Hǎoxiàng shì yánghuáihuā wèir.** *It seems like the smell of acacia blossoms.*

Hǎoxiàng is being used as an adverb: *seemingly, apparently*; but it is often convenient to translate it verbally: *it seems that, it seems to be, etc.*

- 21 **Nimen kàn, nèi kē yánghuáihuā dōu kāimǎnle.** *lit. Look, (on) that one the acacia blossom is in full bloom.*

kē in this sentence is not modifying **yánghuáihuā** (the blossom), but an acacia TREE (that one).

- 22 **Zánmen dào Báitǎ nàr qù kànkàn ba.** *Let's go over to the White Tower and take a look.*

Báitǎ nàr: *lit. the White Tower there* I.e. *over there where the White Tower is*.

Nàr (and **zhèr**) may be used with persons as well as fixed objects:
tā nàr: *there where he is—his place*; **wǒ zhèr**: *my place*.

- 23 **Huá chuán dào tǐng yǒu yìsi,** *Rowing is actually very good fun (lit. very interesting),*

a **dào** **Dào** occurs in the general context of “not as expected” or “not previously realized”. It may be rendered as “after all”, “actually”, “in fact”, among other words.

b **tǐng** **Tǐng** is similar to **hěn** *very*, only it is not used unemphatically, as **hěn** often is.

- 24 **Kànzhe tǐng róngyi, kěshi huáqilai tǐng nán.** *To look at it is very easy, but when you come to row it's very difficult.*

a **kànzhe**: *looking* has the idiomatic sense of “to look at . . .”, “to all appearances”.

b **huáqilai** As the second element of resultative verbs, **qilai** normally means *to start*, e.g. **Tāmen tánqì huà laile**: *They have started to chat*. It has another aspect however, which is *to embark upon, come to (do something)*, which applies here; the actual experience is contrasted with the contemplation of it.

- 25 **Yíxiàzi shì xuébúhui de, mǎnmǎnr de lái.** *It cannot be learned all at once, take it gradually.*

a **Yíxiàzi**: *at one go/stroke*. **Xià** is a general measure word for brief actions, e.g. **kàn yí xià**: *look once*; **cā liǎng xià**: *wipe twice*.

b **de** This is the “situational” **de**: “the fact of the matter is . . .”

c **mǎnmǎnr de**: *gradually* Some adverbs may be reduplicated with a slight change of meaning, and a change of tone. The tone of the second element changes to first. **Hǎohāor de** means *carefully* as well as *well*; **mǎnmǎnr de** means *gradually* as well as *slowly*. In reduplicated form these adverbs only occur before the verb, not as adverbial complements.

d **lái** This may be called a “proverb”, since it stands in for more specific verbs, like *do* in English; in this particular phrase, *take it* is more natural than *do*.

- 26 **Wǒ zěnmé shǐbúshàng jìn a?** *How is it I can't get any strength into it?*

shǐbúshàng jìn The basic lexical unit here is **shǐ jìn**: *use strength*.

The addition of the complement **shàng**: (lit.) *on* to the verb **shǐ** supplies the sense of “bring to bear” or “put to use”. The resultative verb **shǐshàng** is split by **bu**, making it potential, and negative: *cannot bring to bear, cannot put to use*.

- 27 **Nǐ děi wānxia yāo qu** *You have to bend over.*

Here the object **yāo**: *waist* splits the directional complement **xiaqu** of the verb **wānxiaqu**: *bend down*. “Bend down your waist” is just the idiom for *bend forward*.

28 Chàbuduō le, shíjiān yě bù zǎo le. *That's about it, it's getting late as well.*

shíjiān yě bù zǎo le Literally this means *the time is not early now*;
if it is no longer early, then it is getting late.

Lesson six

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: The weather this morning was very good, but now it has suddenly clouded over.

The clouds are getting more and more numerous.

In the office it is getting darker and darker.

The wind has started blowing.

The leaves on the trees are making a rustling sound.

Just now the cicadas were still calling, but now they aren't making even a sound.

Suddenly a streak of light flashes in the sky.

Following on, there sounds the roar of thunder.

Ah! The rain will soon be here.

Sure enough, heavy rain starts to come swishing down.

Because it is very dark in the office, (therefore) we put the lights on.

The comrades still go on working as before, but I am very anxious inside.

Because I want to go and meet a foreign visitor.

We made an appointment to meet at three p.m.

Now it is already two o'clock.

The rain has got progressively heavier.

How can I go out in such heavy rain?

I didn't bring my umbrella.

What can be done about this!

If it doesn't stop at all, then all I can do is telephone him and change the time.

The sound of thunder has gradually lessened.

The sound of the rain has lessened too.

After a while the rain has stopped, and the wind has ceased.

The clouds have gradually dispersed.

The sky is clear now.

The sun has come out.

In the east has appeared a rainbow.

It's like a seven-coloured bridge of red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo and violet.

How beautiful a bridge it is!

We run out to take a look.

At this time the cicadas begin to call again.

The wind blows lightly on my face.

I feel extremely refreshed and comfortable.

Oh, I must go in all haste to the foreign visitor's.

A storm

Lightning

- Wang Dawen: The sky has clouded over.
 Sun Yulan: By the look of it it is going to rain.
 Wang Dawen: Perhaps it won't.
 Sun Yulan: Look, the clouds are building up.
 Wang Dawen: Zhang, it's getting dark indoors, please turn the light on.
 Zhang Yi: All right.
 Sun Yulan: The wind outside seems to be very strong.
 Zhang Yi: You're not joking, the branches of the trees are swaying all the time.
 Wang Dawen: Just now the cicadas were still calling, how is it they are not calling any more?
 Zhang Yi: How can you expect them to call in such a strong wind?
 Sun Yulan: The lightning has begun to flash!
 Wang Dawen: There should be thunder right after.
 Sun Yulan: Listen, rumble rumble, it's really frightening!
 Zhang Yi: Are you afraid of thunder?
 Sun Yulan: I'm not only afraid of thunder, I'm also afraid of lightning.
 Wang Dawen: The sound of thunder is getting nearer and nearer.
 Sun Yulan: This is sure to be a thunderstorm.
 Wang Dawen: While we have been talking it's begun to rain.
 Zhang Yi: Very big raindrops!
 Wang Dawen: Zhang; do you like rain?
 Zhang Yi: I like rain which buckets down like this, but I don't care for that drizzly kind of rain.
 Sun Yulan: I like drizzle.
 Zhang Yi: Why?
 Sun Yulan: Because when it drizzles, there is no need to put up an umbrella, and what's more, drizzle is very poetic.
 Zhang Yi: You really are a poet.
 Wang Dawen: I have heard that at home if Comrade Sun doesn't read fiction, she reads history.
 Zhang Yi: What you say is wrong, if she doesn't read fiction she reads poetry.
 Wang Dawen: Sorry, I was wrong.
 Sun Yulan: No such thing; stop making fun of me.

After the storm

- Zhang Yi: The rain is falling heavier and heavier, you can't make out the houses outside any more.
 Wang Dawen: If heavy rain like this fell for two days on end it would be really awful!
 Zhang Yi: No need to say two days, even if it fell for one day, the streets would turn into rivers.
 Sun Yulan: Don't talk silly.
 Wang Dawen: Oh dear, I have another appointment today.
 Zhang Yi: An appointment for when?
 Wang Dawen: At three I need to go and meet a foreign visitor (but) in such heavy rain I really can't go out.
 Sun Yulan: I think it will stop in a moment.
 Wang Dawen: If it keeps on without stopping what can I do?

- Zhang Yi: In that case it would be all right if you telephoned him.
 Sun Yulan: That's right, as long as you make a call and get in touch it will be all right.
 Wang Dawen: Yes, that's the only way.
 Zhang Yi: Ah, the rain has stopped.
 Sun Yulan: Look, a rainbow has come out in the east!
 Wang Dawen: How pretty!
 Zhang Yi: Let's go out and have a look.
 Wang Dawen: I'll go and meet the foreign visitor now, I can still make it. I'm off.

New words in this lesson

fēngyǔ wind-and-rain, storm
 tiānqì weather
 hūrán suddenly
 yínshànglái cloud over
 yúncái cloud
 yuè ~ yuè ~ the more ~ the more ~
 yuè lái yuè ~ more and more ~
 bàngōngshì office
 hēi black, dark
 guā blow
 shù yè tree leaves
 sàsà rustling sound
 xiǎng (to) sound
 chán cicada
 hái still
 jiào call, sing (of birds, insects etc.)
 láizhe indicator for recent time
 tiānshàng in the sky
 shǎn flash
 dào a measure word for long narrow things
 liàngguāng bright light
 gēnzhe following after, thereupon
 léishēng the sound of thunder
 guōrán indeed, as predicted
 dàyǔ heavy rain
 huāhuā sound of rain, drumming noise
 yīnwei because
 àn dark
 suǒyǐ therefore
 diàndēng electric light
 dǎkāi turn on (light)
 zhàojiù as before
 kě = kěshì but

xīn heart
 xīn lǐ in the heart, inside
 zháojí anxious, agitated
 wèi polite measure word for people
 yuēhǎo make an appointment
 jiànmiàn meet
 yuèfā progressively, more and more
 chūqu go out
 dài to bring (with one)
 sǎn umbrella
 rúguǒ if
 lǎo always, lasting(ly), constant(ly)
 zhǐhǎo can only
 gǎi change
 jiànjiān gradually
 yǔshēng sound of rain
 yíhuìr a while
 bù yíhuìr a short while, hardly a moment
 zhù stop
 xī die away
 sǎn disperse, scatter
 qíng clear, blue (of sky)
 tàiyang sun
 chūlai come out
 jiàng rainbow
 xiàng like, be like
 zuò measure word for bridge
 hóng red
 chéng orange
 huáng yellow
 lǜ green
 lán blue
 qíng indigo
 zǐ violet

Lightning

- Wang Dawen: The sky has clouded over.
 Sun Yulan: By the look of it it is going to rain.
 Wang Dawen: Perhaps it won't.
 Sun Yulan: Look, the clouds are building up.
 Wang Dawen: Zhang, it's getting dark indoors, please turn the light on.
 Zhang Yi: All right.
 Sun Yulan: The wind outside seems to be very strong.
 Zhang Yi: You're not joking, the branches of the trees are swaying all the time.
 Wang Dawen: Just now the cicadas were still calling, how is it they are not calling any more?
 Zhang Yi: How can you expect them to call in such a strong wind?
 Sun Yulan: The lightning has begun to flash!
 Wang Dawen: There should be thunder right after.
 Sun Yulan: Listen, rumble rumble, it's really frightening!
 Zhang Yi: Are you afraid of thunder?
 Sun Yulan: I'm not only afraid of thunder, I'm also afraid of lightning.
 Wang Dawen: The sound of thunder is getting nearer and nearer.
 Sun Yulan: This is sure to be a thunderstorm.
 Wang Dawen: While we have been talking it's begun to rain.
 Zhang Yi: Very big raindrops!
 Wang Dawen: Zhang; do you like rain?
 Zhang Yi: I like rain which buckets down like this, but I don't care for that drizzly kind of rain.
 Sun Yulan: I like drizzle.
 Zhang Yi: Why?
 Sun Yulan: Because when it drizzles, there is no need to put up an umbrella, and what's more, drizzle is very poetic.
 Zhang Yi: You really are a poet.
 Wang Dawen: I have heard that at home if Comrade Sun doesn't read fiction, she reads history.
 Zhang Yi: What you say is wrong, if she doesn't read fiction she reads poetry.
 Wang Dawen: Sorry, I was wrong.
 Sun Yulan: No such thing; stop making fun of me.

After the storm

- Zhang Yi: The rain is falling heavier and heavier, you can't make out the houses outside any more.
 Wang Dawen: If heavy rain like this fell for two days on end it would be really awful!
 Zhang Yi: No need to say two days, even if it fell for one day, the streets would turn into rivers.
 Sun Yulan: Don't talk silly.
 Wang Dawen: Oh dear, I have another appointment today.
 Zhang Yi: An appointment for when?
 Wang Dawen: At three I need to go and meet a foreign visitor (but) in such heavy rain I really can't go out.
 Sun Yulan: I think it will stop in a moment.
 Wang Dawen: If it keeps on without stopping what can I do?

- Zhang Yi: In that case it would be all right if you telephoned him.
 Sun Yulan: That's right, as long as you make a call and get in touch it will be all right.
 Wang Dawen: Yes, that's the only way.
 Zhang Yi: Ah, the rain has stopped.
 Sun Yulan: Look, a rainbow has come out in the east!
 Wang Dawen: How pretty!
 Zhang Yi: Let's go out and have a look.
 Wang Dawen: I'll go and meet the foreign visitor now, I can still make it. I'm off.

New words in this lesson

fēngyǔ wind-and-rain, storm
 tiānqì weather
 hūrán suddenly
 yínshànglái cloud over
 yúncái cloud
 yuè ~ yuè ~ the more ~ the more ~
 yuè lái yuè ~ more and more ~
 bàngōngshì office
 hēi black, dark
 guā blow
 shù yè tree leaves
 sàsà rustling sound
 xiǎng (to) sound
 chán cicada
 hái still
 jiào call, sing (of birds, insects etc.)
 láizhe indicator for recent time
 tiānshàng in the sky
 shǎn flash
 dào a measure word for long narrow things
 liàngguāng bright light
 gēnzhe following after, thereupon
 léishēng the sound of thunder
 guōrán indeed, as predicted
 dàyǔ heavy rain
 huāhuā sound of rain, drumming noise
 yīnwei because
 àn dark
 suǒyǐ therefore
 diàndēng electric light
 dǎkāi turn on (light)
 zhàojiù as before
 kě = kěshì but

xīn heart
 xīn li in the heart, inside
 zháojí anxious, agitated
 wèi polite measure word for people
 yuēhǎo make an appointment
 jiànmiàn meet
 yuèfā progressively, more and more
 chūqu go out
 dài to bring (with one)
 sǎn umbrella
 rúguǒ if
 lǎo always, lasting(ly), constant(ly)
 zhǐhǎo can only
 gǎi change
 jiànjiān gradually
 yǔshēng sound of rain
 yíhuìr a while
 bù yíhuìr a short while, hardly a moment
 zhù stop
 xī die away
 sǎn disperse, scatter
 qíng clear, blue (of sky)
 tàiyang sun
 chūlai come out
 jiàng rainbow
 xiàng like, be like
 zuò measure word for bridge
 hóng red
 chéng orange
 huáng yellow
 lǜ green
 lán blue
 qīng indigo
 zǐ violet

cǎi colour
 qiáo bridge
 duōme how (exclamation)
 pǎo run
 pǎochuqu run out (run + go out)
 zhè shí at this time
 qīngqīng light(ly)
 chuī blow
 liǎn face
 juéde feel
 fēicháng exceptionally
 liángshuǎng refreshing, refreshed
 gǎnkuài in haste
 dǎshǎn flash (of lightning)
 yàng appearance
 kàn yàng by the look of it
 huì will (of possibility)
 hēiqilai get dark
 wàimian outside
 kěbu you're telling me.
 shùzhī tree branches
 zhí all the time, all along
 yáohuang wave, sway
 gāi should
 dǎléi to thunder
 hōnglōng rumbling sound
 xià scare, frighten
 xià rén frightening
 pà to fear
 jìn near
 léiyǔ thunder storm
 yǔdiǎnr raindrops
 zhǒng sort, kind
 qīngpén dàyǔ torrential rain
 máomaoyǔ drizzle
 wèishénme why?
 búyòng no need to
 dǎ sǎn put up umbrella
 fùyǒu have abundantly, be rich in
 shīyì poetic feeling

shīrén poet
 xiǎoshuō fiction
 lìshǐ history
 duì correct
 shīcí poetry
 duibuqǐ sorry
 shuōcuò make a blunder (say + be wrong)
 méi yǒu de huà no such thing, nonsense
 bié don't
 ná take
 kāiwánxiào make fun, have a joke
 zhī hòu after
 fángwū houses
 kànbùqīng unable to see clearly
 yàoshi if
 yīlián in succession, one after another
 bùdéliǎo be terrible, awful
 búyòng shuō no need to say, let alone
 jiùshi even if
 jiēshang on the streets
 biànchéng become
 hé river
 xiǎshuō talk silly
 āiya oh dear
 yuēhui appointment
 wǒ kàn in my view
 de huà marker for conditional
 bàn manage, see to, deal with
 zěnmē bàn? what can be done?
 nà (= nàme) in that case
 zhǐyào if only, as long as
 liánluò get in touch
 yí xià a time (measure word for actions)
 zhǐyǒu only one course, only thing to do
 láidejǐ have time to; manage to

Notes

Part one

- 1 Yúncái yuè lái yuè duō. Clouds are more and more numerous.
 "More and more ~" is expressed as yuè lái yuè ~; the word lái signifies time progressing, hence the idea is "the more time goes on,

the more ~". Very often the mounting progression involves the interaction of two things, when lái is not needed, e.g. Wǒ yuè kàn yuè xīhuān: the more I look at it, the more I like it.

- 2 Guāqī fēng laile. The wind has started blowing.
 The key word here is guā fēng: there blows a wind (parallel to xià yǔ: there falls some rain—it is raining). The verb complement qilai adds the sense of "start" (L5, N24b), making guāqilai: to start to blow. The grammatical object fēng: wind splits the complement: guāqī fēng lai.
- 3 Shù yè sà sà de xiǎng. The tree leaves make a rustling noise.
 sà sà de This is an onomatopoeic adverb, i.e. it simply imitates the sound sa-sa of the leaves in the wind. Literally this sentence reads The tree leaves sound (xiǎng) sasa-ly.
- 4 Gāngcái chán hái jiào láizhe. Just now the cicadas were still calling.
 láizhe This word occurs at the end of a clause to convey the flavour of the recent past: some action has just been going on (for some time) or has not long been over. Láizhe combines naturally with a time word like gāngcái: just now, though the timescale is not limited to the "just now".
- 5 kěshi xiànzài yì shēng yě bú jiào le. But now they aren't making even a sound.
 yì shēng yě bú jiào le: (lit.) one sound still do not call now The formula: does/did not even—(verb)—a—(object) is expressed in Chinese: yì (measure) yě bu/méi—(verb). Other examples: yí ge rén yě méi yǒu: There isn't even one person there; wǒ yì wǎn fàn yě bù chī: I'm not even eating one bowl of rice.
- 6 Hūrán tiānshàng shǎnqǐ yí dào liàngguāng. Suddenly in the sky there flashed a streak of light.
 shǎnqǐ: flashed As the second element in this resultative verb, qǐ means "arise"; the same applies in xiǎngqǐ: sound in the next sentence. It would be superfluous to find a word for qǐ in English, but it is necessary to convey the sense of a new development in the Chinese.
- 7 Gēnzhe jiù xiǎngqǐ léishēng. Following on there sounded/arose the sound of thunder.
 jiù this is the jiù which indicates that something ensues promptly
- 8 Yǔ jiù yào lái le. The rain will soon have come.
 jiù yào ... le is a formula for "on the point of". It is comparable to kuài ... le (L3, N38).
- 9 Guǒrán, dàyǔ huāhuā de xiàqilai. Sure enough, heavy rain begins to fall with a drumming noise.
 a guǒrán: sure enough This word is used when things turn out just as expected or predicted.

- b **huāhuā de** This is another onomatopoeic word, describing the sound of heavy rain.
- 10 **Yīnwei bàngōngshì lǐ hěn àn, suǒyǐ bǎ diàndēng dǎkāile.** *Because it is very dark in the office, we turn the lights on.*
Yīnwei . . . , suǒyǐ . . . is a matching pair, *because . . . therefore . . .*. “Because” usually introduces the second clause in English, but the opposite is the case in Chinese.
- 11 **Tóngzhimen hái zhàojiù gōngzuò, kě wǒ xīn lǐ hěn zháojǐ** *The comrades still work as before, but I am anxious inside.*
kě This *ke* is short for **kěshi**: *but* (the conjunction). It has to be distinguished from the adverb **kě**, used for stress (L4, N31), which must come immediately before the verb or another similar adverb.
- 12 **Zhè kě zěnmē hǎo ne!** *What can be done about this!*
 Literally this sentence reads, *How could this be all right?* The **kě** is used for stress.
- 13 **Rúguǒ lǎo bù tíng, nàme wǒ zhǐhǎo gěi tā dǎ diànhuà gǎi shíjiān le.** *If it doesn't stop, then the only thing I can do is telephone him and change the time.*
 a **lǎo bù tíng**: lit. *always not stop* i.e. go on without stopping.
 b **zhǐhǎo**: lit. *only all right* This expression, followed by some suggested course of action, is equivalent to *can only, the only course is, etc.*
 c **gěi tā dǎ diànhuà**: *telephone to him* We have seen that **gěi** before the verb normally means *for*; it is a matter of habit, however, that **gěi** introducing the recipient of some actions comes before the verb. The verbs concerned are common verb-object combinations like **dǎ diànhuà** or **xiě xìn** (*write a letter*).
- 14 **Bù yíhuìr, yǔ zhù le.** *In a little while, the rain stopped.*
bù yíhuìr derives from **yíhuìr**: *a short time, while*; **bù yíhuìr** means *not (as much as) a while, i.e. very quickly*.
- 15 **Xiàng yí zuò . . . qiáo.** *(It) is like a bridge.*
Xiàng is a verb meaning *to resemble, be like*. Like **hǎoxiàng** it may also function as an adverb.
- 16 **Duōme měilì de yí zuò qiáo a!** *How beautiful a bridge! (How beautiful that bridge is!)*
duōme: *how* **Duōme** is used in exclamations, and less commonly in questions.

Part two

- 17 **Lǎo Zhāng, zhè wūlǐ hēiqílaile.** *Zhang, it's getting dark in the room, zhè wūlǐ* We would expect a measure word to intervene between **zhè**: *this* and the noun it governs, but in colloquial speech the measure word is sometimes omitted. **Zhè rén**, for instance, may be said in place of **zhèi ge rén**: *this person*.

- 18 **Wàimian de fēng hǎoxiàng hěn dà.** *The wind outside seems to be very strong.*
Wàimian: outside. The suffix **-mian** transforms “bound” place words like **lǐ**, **wài** etc., into “free” forms.
- 19 **Kěbu, shùzhī zhī yáohuāng.** *Quite right, the tree branches are waving all the time.*
kěbu This term signifies enthusiastic agreement; *you've said it, you're not joking, you're quite right*, all would do as equivalents. **Kě** functions in this expression in a sense no longer current, so it is best learned simply as an idiom. **Kěbushì ma** means the same thing.
- 20 **Zhème dà de fēng hái jiào shénme ya?** *In such a strong wind what would they be calling for?*
hái jiào shénme ya? **Hái . . . a? (ya?)** is a device for a rhetorical question, in which the assertion of the other person is derided: “you still expect”, “you still say . . . ? (implying the idea is ridiculous). This construction is reinforced by another form of rhetorical question which incorporates **shénme**: *what?*, giving the effect of *what for?* *what's the idea?* For instance, **Wèn shénme?** might mean *What's the idea of asking?* (there's no need), as well as *What are you asking about?* So **jiào shénme** in this sentence means *what's the sense in calling?* Both these forms of rhetorical question can be used independently.
- 21 **Shuōzhe shuōzhe xiàqílaile.** *As we have been talking it has started to fall.*
 Literally this says *Talking, talking, it has started to rain*, that is, we have been talking and talking, and (unnoticed) it has started to rain.
- 22 **Xiàng zhèi zhōng qīngpén dàyǔ** *Torrential rain of this kind*
Xiàng: *like* Can take a direct object, as here: *like this kind of . . .*
- 23 **Tīngshuō Sūn tóngzhì zài jiā bú shì kàn xiǎoshuōr, jiù shì kàn lìshǐ.** *I hear that at home if Comrade Sun doesn't read fiction, she reads history.*
bú shì X, jiù shì Y is *if not X, then Y*; that is, there are only these two alternatives.
- 24 **Nǐ shuō de bú duì,** *What you say is wrong,*
shuō de is a noun construction: *that which you say*. It may be understood as short for **nǐ shuō de huà**: *the words which you say*. Note that this **de** is the adjectival marker.
- 25 **Tā bú shì kàn xiǎoshuōr, shì kàn shící.** *If she doesn't read fiction, she reads poetry.*
 By **bú shì . . . , shì . . .** here is meant the same as **bú shì . . . , jiù shì . . .** above, namely, *if not the one, then it must be the other*. Otherwise, though, **bú shì X, shì Y** may mean simply *It is not X but Y*.

- 26 **nǐmen bié ná wǒ kāiwánxiào le** *don't make fun of me.*
 a **bié** is a contraction of **bú yào**: *do not* (negative imperative).
 b **ná**: lit. *take*—*Don't take me to make fun*
 c **le** **Le** is very often used in commands; it seems to be its emphatic function which is called upon in such cases, rather than its perfective.
- 27 **Fēngyǔ zhī hòu** *After the wind-and-rain*
zhī hòu: *after* is written style Chinese. Spoken style is **yǐhòu**.
- 28 **Búyòng shuō xià liǎng tiān, jiùshì xià yì tiān, jiěshàng yě yào biànchéng hé le ba** *No need to say fall for two days, even if it falls for one day, it still will become a river on the streets*
 a **búyòng shuō**: *no need to say* In more idiomatic English is *let alone*.
 b **jiùshì . . . yě . . .** This construction is the counterpart to *even if . . . yet . . .*
- 29 **Rúguǒ lǎo bú zhù de huà zěnme bàn?** *If it keeps on without stopping what can I do?*
de huà This may be regarded as an end-marker for a conditional clause; **rúguǒ**: *if* marks the beginning of the conditional clause, **de huà** marks its end; it has no definable meaning. **Rúguǒ** may be used without **de huà**, but equally **de huà** may be used without **rúguǒ** (or any other explicit beginning-marker).
- 30 **Duì, zhǐyào dǎ ge diànhuà liánluò yí xiàr jiù xíng le.** *Yes, as long as you telephone and get in touch it will be all right.*
 a **zhǐyào . . . jiù . . .** These form a matching pair. **Zhǐyào**: *if only*, as *long as* introduces the condition, **jiù** then introduces the consequence.
 b **yíxiàr**: *once* **xià** is the measure word for brief actions which we met in the expression **yíxiàzi**: *at one go* (L5, N25a).
- 31 **Shì, yě zhǐ yǒu zhènmē bàn.** *That's so, there is only this way for it.*
yě It is difficult to put a precise meaning on **yě** in this sentence. It stands for an attitude, which is one of acceptance of the facts (usually not very welcome); the tone is one of resignation, of reluctant acknowledgement, or of concession.

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: Yesterday it rained heavily, and the wind also blew hard.
 The flowers in the yard were blown down by the wind.
 The branches of the pomegranate tree were broken by the wind.
 Two tubs of all season rose bushes were also blown over by the wind.
 On Sunday Mother wants to wash the clothes, and wants to mend the clothes and socks for us.
 Younger sister helps Mother clean the rooms.

Mother wants to get younger brother to clear up the yard.
 But younger brother is still sleeping.
 Mother tells me to go and wake him up.
 Younger brother wants to go out and play.
 Mother doesn't let him go out to play.
 He must finish sweeping the yard before he is allowed to go out to play.

The rooms have been swept.
 Father went out after eating breakfast.
 Father likes to do taijiquan.
 He also enjoys playing chess.
 On Sunday mornings he often goes to the park to practise taijiquan.
 And he, also, often goes to the teahouse to play chess.

Inside the teahouse there are chessboards and chessmen, and a television set, too.
 There one can savour tea, as one has a chat.
 And one can drink tea while playing chess.
 The teahouse is generally open from eleven in the morning.
 You can both drink tea and play chess for only a small fee.
 The guests in the teahouse are mostly old people.

It's already after one o'clock now.
 Father hasn't returned for lunch yet.
 Mother sends me to fetch him.
 I know that he won't be willing to return at once.
 He wants me to wait for him a while.
 I watch them play chess, finally neither one wins or loses, it is a draw.

We leave the teahouse.
 Father says that he won two games, and lost one.
 Father seems to be very pleased with himself.

Two

The day after the storm

Wang Dawen: That storm last night really wasn't small!
 Mother: You're dead right!
 Go to the yard, and take a look.
 Wang Dawen: Oh dear, the flowers have all been blown down.
 Mother: The branches of the pomegranate tree have been broken off, too.
 Wang Dawen: Ah, the all season roses have been blown over, too.
 Mother: Tell Guiwen to clear up the yard.
 Wang Dawen: He hasn't got up yet.
 Mother: Why isn't he up yet?
 Wang Dawen: Today is Sunday!
 Mother: Tell Huiying to go and wake him up.
 Wang Dawen: No, I'll go.

Wang Dawen: Guiwen!
 It's past eight already, and you're still sleeping?
 Wang Guiwen: I've been awake a long time.
 Wang Dawen: If you're awake, how is it you still don't get up?
 Wang Guiwen: I'm lying reading a novel.
 Wang Dawen: Get up quickly, Mother told me to come and call you.
 Wang Guiwen: Call me to do what?
 Wang Dawen: To get you to clear up the yard.
 Wang Guiwen: All right, I'll get up right away.

Mother: You're up, then.
 Go and clear up the yard!
 Wang Guiwen: I have to go out.
 Mother: Go out when you've finished clearing up.
 Wang Guiwen: Can't I clear up when I come back?
 Mother: That won't do, if you don't finish clearing up, you are not allowed to go out.
 Wang Guiwen: I see.
 Mother: It's after one o'clock.
 Why isn't your father back yet?
 Wang Dawen: He's probably playing chess in the teahouse again.
 Mother: You eat first.
 No need to wait for him.
 Wang Dawen: I'm not very hungry, let's wait a bit more.
 Mother: Then go and look for him, will you?
 Wang Dawen: All right, I'll go.

At the teahouse

Wang Dawen: I guessed you'd be here.
 I was right after all.
 Father: Did Mother have you come and call me?

Wang Dawen: That's right, Mother tells you to return, and have lunch.
 Father: This game will be finished soon.
 Wait a moment.
 Wang Dawen: What's the state of play?
 Old man: Look, I've only got one soldier left.
 Father: You have swept away all my pieces, I've only got one horse left.
 There are no moves to be made.
 Father: It's a tie.
 Old man: Let's stop, as you have to go back.
 Father: All right, we'll play again another day.
 Old man: I'll be waiting for you here next Sunday.
 Father: All right, I'll definitely come.
 Old man: Dawen, let's go back.
 Wang Dawen: Well, good-bye, sir.
 Old man: Good-bye.

Wang Dawen: Father, how does that old man play?
 Father: We're both about the same.
 Today we played four games.
 I won two, lost one.
 One was a draw.
 Ha ha. . .

New words in this lesson

xīngqīrì Sunday
 bèi by; sign of the passive
 shìliúshù-zhī pomegranate tree
 branches
 chuīduàn break off (blow + break)
 chuīdǎo blow over (blow + overturn)
 fēngbǔ mend (clothes)
 yīwà clothes and socks
 bāng help
 dǎsǎo sweep
 xiǎng intend
 jiào tell
 shíduo tidy up
 ràng make, tell, have, let
 jiàoqilai rouse, wake up
 wánr play, amuse oneself
 bixū must
 bixū yào must
 sǎo sweep
 -wán finish
 cái only then
 zhǔn allow, be allowed

zǎofàn breakfast
 taijíquán form of exercise, shadow
 boxing
 xià play (chess)
 xiàngqí chess
 dǎ taijiquan do taijiquan
 cháng often
 liàn practise
 cháguǎnr teahouse
 qí same as xiàngqí: chess
 qípán chess board
 qízǐr chess pieces
 diànshìjī television set
 nǎi there
 pǐn taste, savour
 liáotiānr chat, gossip
 kāi open
 lián . . . dài including both . . . and . . .
 yìdiǎn an amount
 fèiyòng fee, expense
 dàdǒu for the most part
 lǎoniánrén old people

jiào call, summon
 kěn be willing to
 lìkè immediately
 jiéguǒ in the end
 fēn separate into
 shèng-bài victory and defeat; winner and loser
 píng even; draw (in game)
 yíng win
 pán game (of chess)
 shū lose
 déyì pleased with oneself
 shìde sign of comparison
 dì èr tiān the following day
 géi sign of passive
 xīngqītiān Sunday (= xīngqīrì)
 dōu already
 zǎojiù long since
 xīng wake up
 zhè jiù right away
 tàng measure word for journey
 huìr a while (= yí huìr)
 zhǎolai fetch (look for + come)
 cāi guess

Notes

Part one

- 1 Yuànzi lì de huā bèi fēng chuīhuàile. *The flowers in the yard have been blown down by the wind.*
- a bèi Bèi is a sign of the passive. If an agent is mentioned, it introduces it: **bèi fēng**: *by the wind*. If no agent is mentioned it indicates that the subject is being acted upon: **huā bèi chuīhuàile**: *the flowers have been blown down*.
- b chuīhuàile: *blown down* Huài as the second element of resultative verbs does not literally mean *down*, but *broken* or *ruined*, unfortunately *blow* does not combine with either of these to form an acceptable English word.
- 2 Yuèjihuā yě bèi fēng chuīdǎole liǎng pén. *Two tubs of all season roses were also blown over by the wind.*
 It is possible to express a relationship between the whole and its parts by means of **bèi**, for which there is no equivalent in English. This sentence reads *The all season roses suffered (bèi) the wind to blow*

cuò wrong
 wán finish
 xíngshì state of play
 lǎodàye old gentleman
 jiù only
 xiǎozú soldier (lit. small soldier)
 zǐr chess piece
 jiào by (in passive construction)
 chígūāng "eaten up" (eat + all gone)
 shèngxià leave behind
 pǐ measure word for horse
 mǎ horse
 méi qí le deadlock (in a game of chess)
 suànle call it a day
 gāi should
 gāitiān another day
 xià next
 ǐ grunt of acknowledgement to person
 liǎ two
 chàbudoū about the same game
 héjú drawn game
 hā hā sound of chuckle

over two tubs; the whole is in the subject position, the relevant part is in the object position after the verb. It would be possible to say **Yǒu liǎng pén yuèjihuā bèi fēng chuīdǎole**: *There were two tubs of all season roses blown over by the wind*, but this phrasing does not indicate that the two were part of a greater number, as the original sentence does.

- 3 Māma ràng wǒ qù bǎ tā jiàoqilai. *Mother tells me to go and wake him up.*
ràng Ràng essentially means *cause*, hence may appear in the guises of *let, make, tell, have, ask*. **Jiào**: *tell*, in the preceding sentence, overlaps with **ràng**. However, **jiào** in **jiàoqilai** means *call*; *call + get up (qilai)* means *rouse* (from bed).
- 4 Bìxū yào sǎowán yuànzi cái zhǔn chūqu wánr. *He has to finish sweeping the yard before he is allowed to go out to play.*
cái: *then (and only then)* is opposite in feeling to **jiù**: *then*; **jiù** follows on a sufficient condition, **cái** follows on a necessary condition. In this example, the yard MUST be swept, and ONLY THEN can he go out. For **jiù** see L4, N30b.
- 5 Bàba xīhuan dǎ tàijíquán. *Father likes to do taijiquan.* (Chinese shadow boxing).
tàijíquán is a form of exercise: it is a complex series of movements ultimately based on combat postures.
- 6 Lián hē chá dài xià qí, . . . *Including both drinking tea and playing chess, . . .*
lián ~ dài ~: *including both ~ and ~*. Another example: **Lián Zhōngguó rén dài wàiguó rén zhǐ yǒu shí ge rén**: *Including both Chinese and foreigners, there were only ten people.*
- 7 Bàba hǎoxiàng hěn déyì shìde. *Father seems to be very pleased with himself.*
shìde Shìde only performs a grammatical function as an end-marker for a comparison. The initial marker for the comparison is **hǎoxiàng**: *seems, as if*. As in the case of **rúguǒ . . . de huà** (*if*), **hǎoxiàng** and **shìde** may be used in conjunction or independently.

Part two

- 8 Fēngyǔ hòu dì èr tiān *The (next) day after the storm*
dì èr tiān means (*on*) *the second day*, that is, the day following an event.
- 9 shuǐ shuō bú shì ne *You're dead right! (You're telling me!)*
 This idiomatic expression means literally: *Who says not so? i.e. Who would deny it?*

- 7 10 **Āiya, huār dōu gěi chuīhuàile.** *Oh dear, the flowers have all been blown down.*
gěi **Gěi** is an alternative to **bèi** in the passive construction; it may either introduce the agent, or simply indicate that the action is being “suffered”.
- 11 **Nǐ jiào Guīwén bǎ yuánzi gěi shíduoshíduo.** *You tell Guiwen to clear up the yard.*
gěi This **gěi** is different from the one just described. When it has a definable function, it indicates that a person’s interests are involved, either to their advantage or disadvantage. At other times, however, it just seems to be a signal for the main verb which always immediately follows it. It occurs in **bǎ** constructions, and in passive constructions along with preposition and agent. **Gěi** in both these usages can be omitted without materially altering the meaning of a sentence.
- 12 **Dōu bā diǎn duō le, nǐ hái shuì ne?** *It’s already past (more than) eight o’clock, and you’re still sleeping?*
dōu **Dōu** here means not *all*, but *all of*, that is, *as much as*, or in connection with time, *already*.
- 13 **Tǎngzhe kàn xiǎoshuōr ne.** *I’m lying reading a novel.*
The progressive aspect (-**zhe**) is frequently used when one action is carried on concurrently with another—*reading a novel WHILE lying down*. Another example: **chīzhe fàn kàn bào**: *read a newspaper while eating*.
- 14 **Hǎo, wǒ zhè jiù qǐlái.** *All right, I’ll get up right away.*
zhè jiù **Zhè** has the special sense of *this moment* here, and the **jiù** emphasizes the aspect of promptness.
- 15 **Wǒ děi chūqu yí tàng.** *I have to go out on a little trip.*
yí tàng **Tàng** is a measure word for a journey, short or long. It may only involve popping out for a minute.
- 16 **Shíduowánle zài chūqu.** *Go out when you’ve finished clearing up.*
zài This is the **zài** which marks postponement—*leave going out until you have finished clearing up* (see L5, N12).
- 17 **Bù xíng, bù shíduowán, bù zhǔn chūqu.** *That won’t do, if you don’t finish clearing up, you are not allowed to go out.*
Conditional clauses are often not marked in Chinese (by **rúguǒ** or another “if” word). Sometimes it is balance which indicates the conditional relationship: (*if*) *not*, (*then*) *not*.
- 18 **Hái bù zěnmē è, zài děng huìr ba.** *(I) am still not particularly hungry, let’s wait a little longer.*
zěnmē This is an example of the indefinite use of an interrogative word (see L3, N35b). If **zěnmē?** means *in what way?*, **bù zěnmē** means *not in any special way*, i.e. *not particularly, not very*.
- 19 **Nǐ mā ràng nǐ lái jiào wǒ de?** *Your mother had you come and call me?*

- de This is the situational **de**—the implication being, “does that explain what you are doing here?”
- 20 **Nǐ kàn, wǒ jiù shèngle yí ge xiǎozú le.** *Look, I’ve only got one soldier left.*
jiù **Jiù** followed by a number means *only, merely*.
- 21 **Wǒ de zǐ yě dōu jiào nín gěi chīguāngle.** *My pieces also have all been “eaten” up by you.*
a jiào **Jiào** is yet another word which can introduce the agent in a passive construction, in addition to **bèi** and **gěi**. Unlike those other two, however, it cannot function without an agent.
b gěi This is the “interest” indicator (see N11); this time the father is regretting that the action is to his disadvantage.
- 22 **Wǒmen liǎ dōu chàbuduō.** *We two are both about the same.*
Liǎ is equivalent to **liǎng ge**: *two, a pair*. **Wǒmen liǎ** means *then the pair of us*.
Liǎ is applied more to people than things.

Lesson eight

Father's birthday

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: Today is Father's birthday.
 I hurried home as soon as I finished work.
 Mother said that this evening we would wrap jiaozi.
 We don't often eat jiaozi on ordinary days.
 Because they are very troublesome when you come to make them.
 When there are guests coming, at the New Year or at annual
 festivals, or when we have something to celebrate, only then do we
 wrap jiaozi.

Mother came back today as soon as her work was finished.
 Father is very busy at work, and hasn't come back yet.
 The stuffing has been mixed.
 The dough has been kneaded.
 They are only waiting to be wrapped.
 Mother teaches younger sister how to wrap them.
 Because younger sister has never wrapped jiaozi before.
 This is the first time she has wrapped.
 I also help with the wrapping.
 I can wrap them better than younger sister.

But I can't wrap them as well as Mother.
 At first I wrapped them faster than younger sister.
 Afterwards, younger sister wrapped as fast as I.
 But still not as fast as Mother.

Altogether we wrapped more than three hundred.
 We had just finished wrapping when Father returned.
 Mother immediately took them away to boil.
 The pot is not very big, we can only boil forty or fifty at one time.
 We boiled four or five times, before we finished boiling.

Father and Mother eat least of all.
 I eat more than younger sister.
 But I don't eat as much as younger brother.
 Younger brother has the biggest appetite and eats the most.

We offer Father our congratulations.
 We wish him health, and a happy birthday.
 Father is very happy.
 From today, Father is fifty-one years old.

Two

Wrapping jiaozi

Wang Dawen: Mother, you're back already, are you?
Mother: Um, today I've come back a little earlier than usual.
Wang Dawen: Hasn't Father come back yet?
Mother: Not yet.
Wang Dawen: Isn't it Father's birthday today?
Mother: Yes, but after work he still has a meeting, and will make a report,
 so he can't come back early.
Wang Dawen: Didn't you say we would wrap jiaozi this evening?
Mother: Yes, I've already mixed the inside stuffing.
Wang Dawen: And the dough?
Mother: It's all been kneaded, and it's just waiting to be wrapped.
Wang Dawen: I will help with the wrapping.
Mother: All right, but first heat up the stove a little bit, it's cold today.
Wang Dawen: Fine.
Mother: What is Huiying doing in her room?
 Go and tell her to come.
Wang Dawen: Tell her to come to do what?
Mother: I'll show her how to wrap jiaozi.
 She has never wrapped them before.
Wang Dawen: Good, I'll go and call her.
Wang Huiying: Isn't it more difficult to roll out the dough than to wrap the inside
 stuffing?
Mother: Much more difficult.
Wang Dawen: I've practised two or three times, but it didn't work, I can never
 roll out the dough properly, either it comes out too thin or too
 thick.
Wang Huiying: Mother, I've never practised even once, let me try, too.

Celebrating the birthday

Wang Dawen: Mother, Father is back.
Mother: You came back just at the right moment, we've just finished
 wrapping.
 Is it cold outside?
Father: A little cold.
Mother: Go and get warm by the stove.
 I'll go and boil the jiaozi.
Father: I say, today there's wine, too!
Wang Dawen: Mother wants to give you a birthday celebration today.
Father: That's very kind of you all.
Mother: Come on, let me serve you.
Father: Thank you, you drink a cup, too.
Mother: Dawen, you drink with your Father, too.
Wang Dawen: Father, I wish you a happy birthday!
Father: Thank you.
Wang Dawen: Father, how long have you been working in your present factory?
Father: Let me think . . . I've worked at the present factory for seventeen
 years.
 I worked for ten years in the factory before this one.

Wang Dawen: Father is still young, and can work for another ten years!
 Father: Of course.
 I'll work as long as I live.

New words in this lesson

shēngrì birthday	jiànkāng health, healthy
jímáng hurriedly	cóng . . . qǐ starting from
bāo wrap	mǎn full, fulfil
jiǎozi savoury filling wrapped in thin pastry "skin", like ravioli	bǐjiào comparatively
píngri customarily, ordinarily	zuò make
máfan bothersome	bàogào report
guònián celebrate New Year	lúzi stove
guòjié celebrate seasonal festival	nòngwàng make high, hot
shénme any	gǎo do
xìshì matter for celebration or rejoicing	gǎn roll (pastry)
yìhòu after	pír "skins", wrapping
xiànzi filling	xiànr filling (= xiànzi)
bàn mix	liànxí practise
miàn flour	báo thin
huó knead	hòu thick
dì yí cì first time	zhèng hǎo just right, just at right moment
bǐ compared with	yǒudiǎnr somewhat
zuìchū at first	kǎo roast; warm oneself
hòulái afterwards	huò exclamation of surprise
yíyàng equal(ly), the same	jiǔ wine, spirits
yìgòng altogether	guò celebrate, hold celebration
bǎi hundred	zhēnshang fill up, pour (a cup etc.)
gāng just now	zhōngr small cup
zhǔ boil	péi accompany
guō pot	zhù wish
yí cì at one time	xiǎng think
néngchī of large appetite ("can eat")	niánqīng young
dào xǐ offer congratulations	huó live
zhùhè wish (offer good wishes for)	lǎo old

Notes

Part one

- 1 Yīnwei zuòqilai tài máfan Because they are too much of a nuisance to make
 zuòqilai -qilai does not simply signal commencement, but the TACKLING of a task: when you come to make them (see L5 N24b).

- 2 . . . huò yǒu shénme xǐshì de shíhou or when there is some celebration
 shénme Is an interrogative word being used in an indefinite sense:
 what → some (or other).

- 3 Jiù děngzhe bāo le. They are only waiting to be wrapped now.

a jiù This illustrates a further range of meanings for jiù: simply, just, only.

b bāo Chinese verbs are mostly uncommitted as to voice: they may be used actively or passively. Jiǎozi jiù děngzhe bāo le means The jiaozi are just waiting TO BE WRAPPED.

Wǒmen jiù děngzhe bāo jiǎozi le means We are just waiting TO WRAP the jiaozi now.

Explicit markers for passive actions (such as bèi, gěi etc.) are not all that common.

- 4 Wǒ bǐ mèimei bāode hǎo. I wrap better than younger sister.

There is no special comparative form for adjectives and adverbs. Comparisons are made through the use of a preposition, bǐ, which means compared with. The simple comparison A is —er than B is expressed A bǐ B —; e.g. wǒ bǐ tā máng: I am busier than he. When the comparison involves a verb and adverb, the formula is illustrated in the sentence above, wǒ bǐ mèimei bāode hǎo, that is, A bǐ B (verb) de (adverb). The word order is variable in the second case, however: one can say wǒ bāode bǐ mèimei hǎo.

- 5 dànshi méi yǒu māma bāode hǎo. but I don't wrap as well as Mother. Negative comparisons may be formed with méi yǒu. To repeat the examples above, I am not as busy as he is wǒ méi yǒu tā máng; and I do not wrap as well as younger sister is either wǒ méi yǒu mèimei bāode hǎo or wǒ bāode méi yǒu mèimei hǎo.

- 6 Hòulái mèimei hé wǒ bāode yíyàng kuài le. Afterwards younger sister wrapped as fast as I.

Equal comparisons use yíyàng: equally. Literally this sentence reads Afterwards younger sister with me wrapped equally fast. Using the same construction with a simple adjective one gets Tā hé wǒ yíyàng máng: He is as busy as I. Gēn is an alternative to hé.

- 7 Wǒmen gāng bāowán, bàba jiù huilaile. We had just finished wrapping when father returned.

gāng in a first clause, followed by jiù in the second, indicates an immediate succession of events, the second following as soon as the first is done.

- 8 Guō bù hǎn dà, yí cì zhǐ néng zhǔ sì-wǔshí ge. The pot is not very big, we can only boil forty or fifty at one time.

sì-wǔshí ge Rough numbers are formed by just joining contiguous numbers: sān-sì ge: three or four; sì-wǔshí ge: four or five tens = forty or fifty.

- 9 **cóng jīntiān qǐ** *from today*
Lit. *from today starting* Any time-word which makes sense may occur between the brackets **cóng . . . qǐ**: *as from*
- 10 **Bàba mǎn wǔshíyī suì le.** *Father is now fully fifty-one years old.*
mǎn As a verb **mǎn** has the meaning *fulfil*; the father has *fulfilled* *fifty-one* years of life.

Part two

- 11 **N, jīntiān huílaide bǐjiào zǎo yìdiǎnr.** *Um, today I've come back a little earlier than usual.* Literally this reads *come back comparatively early by a little*. It is an example of redundancy in language. It would have been sufficient to say either **huílaide bǐjiào zǎo** or **huílaide zǎo yìdiǎnr**—since **zǎo yìdiǎnr** is already comparative: *earlier*. However, this type of mutual reinforcement is common in Chinese.
- 12 **Hǎo, nǐ xiān bǎ lúzi nòngwǎng diǎnr,** *All right, first heat up the stove a bit,*
nòngwǎng **nòng** is an all-purpose activating word, to *make*.
Nòngwǎng is *make hot* or *make bright*.
- 13 **Huīyīng zài wūzi lì gǎo shénme ne?** *What is Huiying doing in her room?*
gǎo **gǎo** is another very general word, meaning *do, busy oneself with*, as well as other things.
- 14 **Nánde duō** *A lot more difficult*
—**de duō** is an alternative to —**duōle**; so both **nánde duō** and **nán duōle** mean *a lot more difficult*. Obviously, these are in opposition to **nán yìdiǎnr**: *a little more difficult*.
- 15 **Wǒ liànxíguo liǎng-sān cì, bù xíng, lǎo gǎnbùhǎo.** *I've practised two or three times, it didn't work, I was always unable to roll it properly.*
gǎnbùhǎo: *unable to roll well* This is the potential form of **gǎnhǎo**: *roll properly*. It is to be distinguished from the adverbial complement **gǎnde bù hǎo**: *roll badly*.
- 16 **Mā, wǒ yí cì yě méi liànxíguo,** *Mother, I've never practised even once,*
yí ~ yě bú/méi ~ This construction for *not even ~ one ~* we have met before in the phrase **yì shēng yě bú jiào le**: *not even calling one sound* (L6, N5). **Dōu** can be substituted for **yě**.
- 17 **Yǒudiǎnr lěng** *Somewhat cold*
yǒudiǎnr **Yǒudiǎnr lěng** is to be distinguished from **lěng yìdiǎnr**. The latter is comparative: *colder than the norm or something else specified*. The former (**yǒudiǎnr**) is limited to what one finds disagreeable: *somewhat* has the same connotation in English.
- 18 **Wǒ shì huódào lǎo gàndào lǎo** *I'll work as long as I live*
Literally this sentence reads, *I am "live till old, work till old"*, that is, "With me it is a case of keeping working when I am old".

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: Our neighbours on the east are the Zhao family. The Zhao family only consists of three persons, the husband and wife and a two-year-old daughter. The husband is a bus driver. The wife is a saleswoman in a department store. They are both enthusiastic and earnest with regard to their work. They have never taken time off work, nor been late; they do not take time off work unless they themselves fall ill. When they go to work each day they take their child to a nursery. After they return home after work, they go and fetch the child. Whoever gets home first goes to fetch the child. The nursery is not far from their home. They tell me the facilities at the nursery are very good. There (inside) there are lots of little friends and toys. They learn to sing (songs) together, and play games; moreover the attendants are all both extremely gentle and very thorough in their care; therefore, even though Dad and Mum are not at their side, the children still do not feel lonely. The children in the nursery are very obedient: whatever the attendants say, the children comply with it. However they are told to behave, they behave in that way.

The fittings and layout of Comrade Zhao's house are about the same as ours.

As soon as you enter the room, (you see) a stove burning in the middle.

Facing the entrance against the wall there is a rectangular table. On the table there is a clock and a radio; placed there as well are a thermos flask and teapot and teacups.

Facing one on the wall hangs a picture of Chairman Mao. Beneath the picture hang two or three picture frames.

The picture frames are filled with photos of relatives and friends.

On the right, close up against the wall there is a bed.

On the bed is piled neatly folded bedding.

On the left, next to the wall, there is a wardrobe.

In the morning when I go to work I often bump into Comrade Zhao and his wife.

This morning as I came out of the door, the two of them were just coming out too, carrying their child.

We chatted as we walked.

Going to work

Wang Dawen: Good morning!

Zhao Ziqiang: Good morning!

Mrs. Zhao: Good morning!

Wang Dawen: It's pretty cold today!

Zhao Ziqiang: You've said it; by the look of it it might snow.

Mrs. Zhao: If it's going to snow, I hope there'll be a big fall.

Wang Dawen: I remember that last year at New Year there was a heavy fall of snow; I wonder what it will be like this year?

Zhao Ziqiang: Ah, quite true, it will soon be New Year.

Mrs. Zhao: What date is New Year this year?

Wang Dawen: The third of February.

Zhao Ziqiang: Today is already the thirtieth of January, there aren't many days (to go) now.

Mrs. Zhao: What do you plan to do over the New Year?

Wang Dawen: I plan to go for a stroll around the Qianmen. And you?

Zhao Ziqiang: We haven't decided yet.

Wang Dawen: Xiao Lan's face is as red as an apple, really nice! Hey, Xiao Lan, are you cold?

Mrs. Zhao: Say hello to uncle, uncle asked you a question! How come you don't speak?

Wang Dawen: Is uncle frightening?

Mrs. Zhao: No, this child is shy.

Age to marry

Wang Dawen: Are you going to the nursery now?

Zhao Ziqiang: That's right.

Wang Dawen: When she is parted from her Dad and Mum, doesn't she cry?

Mrs. Zhao: The first two days it didn't work very well, she kept on crying. Now, not only does she not cry, but as soon as she hears she is going to the nursery, she gets terribly excited.

Wang Dawen: Why is that?

Mrs. Zhao: There are so many little friends there, there are both a lot of toys and the attendants are gentle too; she's better off than in her own home.

Zhao Ziqiang: In short, you can still work with an easy mind when you have children. So, in my view, Comrade Wang, you should get married too.

Wang Dawen: I'm only twenty-six, it's early yet.

Mrs. Zhao: It's not early any more.

Wang Dawen: In China now, doesn't the average man marry at thirty, and the woman at twenty-five?

Zhao Ziqiang: That's the way it is, but if you already have an intended, it doesn't mean you can't get married.

Wang Dawen: I know, but I haven't an intended yet.

Mrs. Zhao: If you don't make up your mind to look, how could you (be able to) find one?

Wang Dawen: From what you say, in future I'll have to start looking more urgently.

Mrs. Zhao: Here we are at the bus stop.

Wang Dawen: In that case we'll go our different ways.

Zhao Ziqiang: If you have time, please drop in at our home.

Wang Dawen: Thank you, one of these days I'll certainly come and impose upon you.

New words in this lesson

dōnglín neighbour to the east

kǒu a measure word for people as members of a family

fū-qī husband and wife

nǚ'ér daughter

zhàngfu husband

sījī driver

qīzi wife

bǎihuò gōngsī department store

shòuhuòyuán sales assistant

duì towards; with regard to

cónglái all along; from the beginning

xiēgōng stop work, take time off work

chídào arrive late

chúfēi ~ cái ~ unless ~ not ~

shēng bìng fall ill

háizi child

sòng accompany, take (to)

tuō'èrsuǒ nursery

lǐng receive, take charge of

línghuīlai fetch (receive back)

shuí ~ shuí ~ whoever ~ whoever ~

shèbèi facilities, equipment

límian inside

xiǎopéngyou little friends (= children)

wánjù toy

yìqǐ together (= yíkuàir)

xuéxí study; learn

chàng sing

gē song

yóuxì games, recreation

bǎomǔ nursery attendant

wēnhé gentle

zhàoliào look after, take care of

zhōudào thorough

shēnpáng at one's side

jìnló lonely

tīnghuà obey; obedient

tīng listen to; heed

shénme ~ shénme whatever ~ whatever

zěnmē ~ zěnmē however ~ however

bǎishè fittings, ornaments

bùzhi layout, décor

chábuduō about the same

wūmén door of room

zhōngyāng middle, centre

shēng light (stove); burn

zhèngmiàn the right side; side of room facing the door

kào next to

qiáng wall

cháng long

fāngzhuō rectangular table

fàng put, place

nuǎnshuǐpíng thermos flask

cháhú teapot

cháwǎn tea-bowls

guà hang

zhāng measure word for picture

Máo zhǔxí Chairman Mao

xiàng portrait

xiàmian beneath

jìngkuàng picture frame

xiāng inset, inlay, put in (frame)

qīnqi relative(s)

xiàngpiàn photograph

yòumiàn (on) the right

jīn close

tiēzhe up against

duī pile up, heap

dié fold

zhěngqí neat, tidy

bèirù bedding

zuǒmian (on) the left side

yīchú wardrobe

pèngjian meet, bump into

chūménr go out (the door)

bào hold in the arms

ménr door

nǐmen zǎo good morning to you

gòu enough; considerably
kěnéng possibly; might
cháng measure word for snow etc: a fall, spell
dàxuě heavy snow
jìde remember
qùnián last year
Chūnjié Spring Festival; New Year of lunar calendar
dǎsuàn intend
Qiánmén central district of Peking
juéding decide
xiǎo little, young
Lán proper name
píngguǒ apple
kě'ài lovable; nice
wèi hey
shūshu uncle
shuōhuà speak
kěpà frightening
rènshēng shy
niánlíng age
shàng to
líkāi leave, part from
kū cry

tóu first (in a series)
yī ~ jiù ~ as soon as ~ then ~
yào will; going to
wányìr plaything, toy
hái still more, even more
zǒng'éryánzhī to sum up, in short
ānxīn with peace of mind
cái only
Zhōngguó China
yìbān average; in general
nánzǐ men
nǚzǐ women
nàyàng that way
búguò but, however
duìxiàng intended, partner
shàngxīn put one's mind to
zhǎodào find (look for + reach)
zhème shuō from what (you) say
yǐhòu in the future
jiājīn more urgently
dào reach, arrive at
qìchēzhàn bus stop
liǎngbiàn split up; go own way
gōngfú spare time
dǎjiǎo disturb

Notes

Part one

- 1 **Tāmen duì gōngzuò yòu rèxīn yòu rènzhēn.** *They are both enthusiastic and earnest with regard to their work.*
yòu ~ yòu ~: both ~ and ~ At its simplest this linked pair of adverbs joins verbal adjectives as in this example, but they may join diverse kinds of verbal constructions, such as occur later in this lesson.
- 2 **chúfēi shì zìjǐ shēng bìng, cái xiēgōng . . .** *Only if they themselves fall ill do they take time off work.*
chúfēi . . . , cái . . . This construction may be rendered in two different ways: *only if . . . (only then) do/will . . .*; or, *unless . . . , do/will not . . .* **Chúfēi** can either mean *necessarily*, or *if not*; hence it can combine with **cái** (*necessarily . . . only then . . .*), or with **bù** (*if not . . . not . . .*). Both combinations amount to the same thing, despite the apparent contradiction. Another example: **Chúfēi nǐ qù qǐng tā, tā bú huì lái**: *unless you go and invite him, he will not come*; or: *Only if*

you go and invite him will he come. **Chúfēi nǐ qù qǐng tā, tā bú huì lái** means the same thing: *If you don't go and invite him, he will not come.*

- 3 **shuí xiān huíjiā, shuí jiù qù lǐng hái.** *Whoever comes back home first, whoever it is goes to fetch the child.*
shuí . . . shuí . . . Interrogative words used in matching pairs are both indefinite and all-inclusive. Some examples: **Shuí yào, gěi shuí:** *Whoever wants it, give it to whoever it is*; **Nǐ shàng nǎr qù, wǒ shàng nǎr qù:** *Wherever you go, I will go wherever it is.*
- 4 **. . . suǒyǐ jiùshì bàba, māma bú zài shēnpáng, háizi yě bù juéde jì mò.** *So even if Dad and Mum are not by their side, the children are still not lonely.*
jiùshì . . . , yě . . . : even if . . . still . . . See L6, N28b. As **yě** is an adverb, it must come immediately before the verb or another similar adverb (in this case, **bù**).
- 5 **. . . bǎomǔ shuō shénme, hái zìmen jiù tīng shénme.** *whatever the nursery attendants say, the children heed whatever it is.*
a **hái zìmen:** *children* The plural suffix **-men** is only applied to persons, and then makes collective nouns, which are incompatible with specific numbers; one can only say **liǎng ge hái zi**, not **liǎng ge hái zìmen**.
b **tīng** The basic meaning of **tīng** is *listen to*, but by extension it may take on the force of *heed, comply with, obey*.
- 6 **Zhào tóngzhì jiā lǐ de bǎishè, bùzhī hé wǒ jiā chàbudo.** *The fittings and layout of Comrade Zhao's home are about the same as our home.*
hé . . . chàbudo is parallel to **hé . . . yíyàng**: *the same as*; **chàbudo** indicates an only approximate likeness.
- 7 **Yí jìn wūmén, zhōngyāng shēngzhe yí ge lúzi.** *As soon as one enters the room, one sees a stove burning in the middle.*
a **Yí:** *once* When **yí** precedes a verb, it sets up the expectation that the action of the verb will immediately produce a result or lead to a discovery. As an example of result, **Tā yì shuō, dàjiā dōu xiào le** means *As soon as he said it, everyone laughed*. With "discoveries", one has to supply in English some such word as *see, find, or realize*; for instance, **Ménwài yǒu rén jiào wǒ, chūqu yí kàn, shì yí ge lǎoniánrén:** *Outside (the door) someone was calling me; when I went out and took a look, (I found) it was an old person.*
b **shēngzhe:** *burning* **Shēng lúzi** means *light a stove*; more literally, **shēngzhe yí ge lúzi** means *there is alight a stove*. The progressive suffix **-zhe** may apply to a situation where the initial action is over but the result remains: the stove was lit and it is still alight. Similarly, in the sentence to follow **Zhuōzi shàng fàngzhe yí ge nuǎnshuǐpíng:** *On the table is placed a thermos flask*, the flask was placed (**fàng**) and is still placed (**fàngzhe**). In this usage the object concerned follows the verb.

Note also that the place word does not have **zài** before it, as grammatically it is the subject of the sentence.

- 8 **Jǐngkuàng lǐ xiāngmǎnle qīnqī hé péngyou de xiàngpiàn.** *The picture frames are filled with photos of relatives and friends.*
xiāngmǎnle The precise meaning of **xiāng** is *inlay* or *inset*, so **xiāngmǎn**, a resultative verb, means *inset with the result that they are full (mǎn)*—which is too cumbersome to render exactly into English. Resultative verbs take the suffix **-le** rather than **-zhe** even when describing a permanent state.
- 9 **Yòumian jīn tiēzhe qiáng yǒu yì zhāng chuáng.** *On the right, close up against the wall there is a bed.*
jīn tiēzhe **Tiēzhe** is a preposition, literally “sticking to”, i.e. *touching* or *up against*. It is modified here by **jīn**: *tight*(ly) or *close*(ly). **Tiēzhe** is nearly synonymous with **kào** or **kàozhe**: *next to* (lit. *leaning against*).
- 10 **Chuáng shang duīzhe diéde zhěngzhengqíqí de bèirù.** *On the bed is piled neatly folded bedding.*
zhěngzhengqíqí When adjectives of two syllables are reduplicated for lively effect the pattern is AABB, as opposed to two-syllable verbs, for which the pattern is ABAB (e.g. **wēnxíwēnxí**). The stress in these reduplicated adjectives tends to be on the last syllable, while the second syllable may lose its stress. In this sentence **zhěngzhengqíqí** is of course being used as an adverbial complement, describing **dié**: *folded*.
- 11 **... wǒ cháng pèngjian Zhào tóngzhì fū-qī.** *I often bump into Comrade Zhao and his wife.*
Zhào tóngzhì fū-qī: lit. *Comrade Zhao husband and wife*. **Fū-qī** is grammatically in apposition to **Zhào tóngzhì**, but includes the wife who is ASSOCIATED with Comrade Zhao. Similarly one can say **Zhào tóngzhì tāmen**: *Comrade Zhao and those with him*.

Part two

- 12 **Jìntiān gòu lěng de!** *It's pretty cold today!*
gòu —de From its basic meaning of *enough*, **gòu** derives a secondary meaning of *considerably* when combined with a descriptive term, which takes a **de**. **Gòu lěng de** could be construed as *cold enough for anybody*.
- 13 **Yào xià, xià cháng dàxuě cái hǎo ne!** *If it snows, I hope it will snow heavily.*
 a **yào**: *if* **yào** or **yàoshi** is synonymous with **rúguǒ**: *if*.
 b **cháng** is a measure word used for weather phenomena: *a spell* (of

rain, snow, fog, etc.). It also applies to other things, such as performances and battles.

- c **cái hǎo ne**: lit. *only then will it be all right*. This expression is used of propositions which are devoutly to be wished for.
- 14 **... bù zhīdào jīnnián zěnmeyàng?** *I wonder what it will be like this year?*
bù zhīdào: lit. *I don't know* This phrase is speculative, corresponding to the English *I wonder*. Note that the second syllable of **zhīdào** acquires a full tone when combined with **bu**.
- 15 **... , méi yǒu jǐ tiān le.** *there aren't many days to go now.*
 The interrogative word **jǐ**: *how many?* used in a negative context means (not) *that many*. Compare: **Tuō'ěrsuǒ lì yǒu duōshao hái zi?**: *How many children are there in the nursery?* **Méi yǒu duōshao**: *There aren't that many*. (Remember **jǐ** requires a measure word, **duōshao** does not.)
- 16 **Xiǎo Lán de liǎn hóngde xiàng píngguǒ,** *Xiao Lan's face is as red as an apple,*
 a **Xiǎo**: *little* This prefix is used familiarly of children and young people.
 b **Hóngde xiàng píngguǒ** This is an adverbial complement of degree: *red (to the extent of being) like an apple*.
- 17 **Jiào shūshu,** *Say hello to uncle,*
 Parents encourage children to address male friends of the parents' generation as “uncle”. **Jiào shūshu** literally means *Call uncle* i.e. greet Dawen as uncle.
- 18 **Nǐmen xiànzài shì shàng tuō'ěrsuǒ qù ma?** *You are going to the nursery now?*
 a **shàng**: *to* **shàng** may be used interchangeably with **dào** in the construction **shàng (dào) ... qù**: *go to ...*, but outside this construction it has different properties from **dào**. As an independent verb, for example, **shàng** means *go to*, whereas **dào** means *arrive*.
 b **shì** **Shì** is not grammatically necessary in this sentence: **Nǐmen shàng tuō'ěrsuǒ qù ma?** is a perfectly good sentence. When **shì** is added in these circumstances it gives the predicate a nominal cast: “it is the case that”, or in questions, “is it the case that?”. The same effect is produced in the **shì ... , haishi ...** construction: *is it the case that ... , or is it the case that ... ?*
- 19 **Nàli yǒudeshì xiǎopéngyou** *There are little friends in plenty there*
yǒudeshì We met this idiom in L4:—**Xifàn yǒudeshì**: *There is congee in plenty*. You can see the position of **yǒudeshì** is variable: both **yǒudeshì xiǎopéngyou** and **xiǎopéngyou yǒudeshì** are possible.
- 20 **... bǐ zài zìjǐ jiā lǐ hái shūfu ne.** *even more at ease than in her own home.*

hái hái is used in comparisons in the sense of *still more*. This sentence reads: *compared with (bǐ) in her own home still more comfortable*. Naturally the implication is that it is already comfortable for her in her own home.

- 21 **Zǒng'éryánzhī, yǒu hái'zi yě kěyǐ ānxīn gōngzuò.** *In short, even if you have children, you can still work with an easy mind.*
This is a conditional sentence without an initial marker. The **yě** in the second half suggests a corresponding **jiùshì**: *even if* for the first clause: **jiùshì yǒu hái'zi, yě kěyǐ ānxīn gōngzuò.** (See L6, N28b.) In itself, **yě** harks back to its basic meaning of *also*. It implies that there are alternatives open, that other possibilities might “also” be valid. For instance, **Zhèyàng zuò yě hǎo**: *It's all right to do it like this* concedes that there might be other ways, but this way is all right, “too”.
- 22 **Xiànzài Zhōngguó yìbān nánzǐ bú shì sānshí suì, nǚzǐ bú shì èrshiwǔ suì cái jiéhūn ma?** *In China now, doesn't the average man only marry at thirty and the woman at twenty-five?*
This sentence will be clearer if divided into two: **yìbān nánzǐ bú shì sānshí suì cái jiéhūn ma?** *Is it not that the average man only marries at the age of thirty?* and **yìbān nǚzǐ bú shì èrshiwǔ suì cái jiéhūn ma?** *Is it not that the average woman only marries at the age of twenty-five?*
Bú shì . . . ma? *Is it not that . . . ?* or *Is it not the case that . . . ?*
- 23 . . . **yě bú shì bù kěyǐ jiéhūn de** *it still is not the case that you can't marry*
a **bú shì bù kěyǐ**: *it is not that you cannot* Double negatives, amounting to an affirmative, are well favoured in Chinese.
b **de** This is the situational **de**: “that is the fact of the matter”.
- 24 **Zhème shuō, yǐhòu wǒ děi jiājīn qù zhǎo le.** *From what you say, in future I must now search more urgently.*
a **jiājīn**: *more urgently* **Jiā**: *add* is prefixed to some adjectives/adverbs in the sense of *increasingly*.
b **qù** The addition of the word **qù**: *go and* indicates a positive or active participation in the business of the following verb.
- 25 **Xièxie, gàitiān yíding qù dǎjiǎo.** *Thanks, I'll certainly impose on you some day.*
dǎjiǎo means *disturb, put to trouble*. In polite conversation it is an apologetic way of saying *call on*.

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: The Spring Festival this year is the third of February.
The Spring Festival is “the New Year of the lunar calendar” of the past.
In order to celebrate the Spring Festival, government offices and factories all take three days off.
The Spring Festival is extremely lively.
The New Year of the present calendar is a holiday only on New Year's Day, what's more, it isn't particularly lively.

When the Spring Festival comes, most households paste good luck posters on the walls of the rooms, and stick paper cutouts on the window; some households also put new year's greetings on the door.
On the streets, in the shops, everything is full of the colours of the Spring Festival.

There probably isn't one child who doesn't like the Spring Festival.
At the Spring Festival you can hear the sound of setting off firecrackers everywhere.
At the Spring Festival, the Qianmen and Wangfujing Avenue and other such places are especially lively.
This year at the Spring Festival, we went to the Qianmen for a stroll.

When the Spring Festival comes, the stores have got in various goods for the New Year, of which hawthorn berries on strings and melted sugar-coated fruits on sticks especially attract people's attention.

In addition to these, there are also pinwheels, tops, kites, masks, decorated spears, and suchlike toys which children like.
The children are dressed neatly and prettily, and are pulled this way and that way in the crowd of people led by their parents or grandparents.

Today is the Spring Festival.
I went with younger brother and younger sister to the Qianmen for a stroll.
There we bought lots of things to eat, to use, and to play with.

The Chinese New Year has come

- Mother: Dawen, go and sweep the yard.
 Wang Huiying: Mother, I'll paste paper cutouts on the windows.
 Mother: First, wipe the windows clean, then stick them on.
 Wang Huiying: I see.
 Wang Guiwen: What shall I do?
 Mother: Put these two good luck posters on the wall.
 Wang Guiwen: Shall I use glue to stick them on?
 Mother: There are some drawing pins over there, use drawing pins to pin them up.
 Wang Dawen: Where has Father gone?
 Mother: He has gone to take part in the Spring Festival celebratory meeting in the Labouring People's Cultural Palace.
 Wang Dawen: If there is no more to do, I would like to go to the Qianmen for a stroll.
 Wang Huiying: Eldest brother, I'll go, too.
 Wang Dawen: Guiwen, what about you?
 Wang Guiwen: Of course I'll go.
 Wang Huiying: Mother, come with us, too.
 Mother: No, I don't want to go.
 Wang Dawen: Since Mother doesn't want to go, don't make Mother go.
 Wang Guiwen: Then, let's be off.
 Wang Huiying: Just a moment, I'm going to change into new clothes.
 Wang Dawen: Hurry up.
 Wang Huiying: I'll be finished changing in a moment.
 Mother: It's especially cold outside today, you mustn't forget to put on your overcoats and wear your scarves; if you don't you will catch cold.
 Wang Huiying: I will do.
 Mother: Eat some jiaozi before you go.
 Wang Dawen: I'm not hungry, I'll eat some when I come back.
 Mother: All right, but come back early! This evening, we are still going to see a film.
 Wang Dawen: Very well.

At the Qianmen

- Wang Dawen: What a lot of people!
 Wang Guiwen: There seem to be even more than last year.
 Wang Huiying: It's like this every year.
 Wang Dawen: What do you want to buy?
 Wang Guiwen: I want to buy some firecrackers to take home and let off.
 Wang Huiying: I want to buy some sugar-coated fruits. Eldest brother, how about you?
 Wang Dawen: I haven't decided yet.
 Wang Guiwen: Just look, how beautifully those lanterns are made!
 Wang Dawen: That's right, I'll buy a New Year's lantern to take home.
 Wang Huiying: That crowd of children gathered round over there, what are they watching?
 Wang Guiwen: Let's go, too, and have a look.
 Wang Dawen: It's the kite seller, as it turns out.

- Wang Huiying: Look, the eyes of that butterfly and goldfish can even move!
 Wang Guiwen: I want to buy one. Hey, Comrade, please give me a butterfly kite, will you?
 Kite Dealer: Sure, do you need kite string?
 Wang Guiwen: We have some at home, so I don't need any. Eldest brother, aren't you buying one?
 Wang Dawen: I don't want one.
 Wang Guiwen: There's a pinwheel seller over there.
 Wang Dawen: Hey, this is really fun. I'll buy one.
 Wang Huiying: Eldest brother, what are you going to do with a pinwheel?
 Wang Dawen: When I get back I will give it to Xiao Lan next door.
 Wang Guiwen: Eldest brother, it's getting late. Let's go home.
 Wang Dawen: That's right, Mother is waiting at home for us to go and see a film.

New words in this lesson

rì day (more formal style for hào)
 guòqù past
 yīnlì lunar calendar
 yīnlì nián New Year in the lunar calendar
 wèile in order to
 huāndù celebrate
 jǐguān government office
 fàngjià have a holiday
 rènao jolly, bustling, boisterous
 xīnnián New Year
 zhǐshì (it is) only
 Yuándàn first day of new year
 bù zěnmē not particularly
 tiē stick (on)
 niánhuà paintings for New Year with symbols of good luck
 chuāngshàng on the window(s)
 chuānghuā paper decorations for windows
 chūnlián matching scrolls inscribed with felicitous sentiments for festival
 shāngdiàn shop
 chōngmǎn fill up (fill + full)
 sècǎi colour
 tīngjian hear (listen + perceive)
 biānpào string of firecrackers
 fàng let off (fireworks)
 shēngyīn sound
 Wángfǔjīng dàjiē Wangfujing Avenue (central shopping district)

děng and similar
 dēng chù and similar places
 tèbié especially
 tiān add; get in (additional goods etc.)
 gè various
 niánhuò goods for New Year
 yǐn rén zhù mù attract people's attention
 chuān thread or string together
 -chéng (as second element in resultative verbs) so as to make
 chuàn a string
 shānzhā hawberries
 zhī measure word for long narrow things: a stick (of)
 táng húlu sugared fruits on a stick
 chùle ~ yǐwài apart from
 zhèxiē these; these things
 fēngchē spinwheel; windmill
 kōngzhú spinning top (suspended from string) (a kind of toy made of bamboo)
 fēngzheng kite
 miànjù mask
 huāqiāng decorated spears
 dǎbàn dress up
 yóu by
 fù-mǔ parents (father and mother)
 zǔfù-mǔ grandparents
 lǐng lead
 rénqún crowd of people

jǐ crowd, jostle, press, squeeze, throng
 lái qù backwards and forwards
 mǎi buy
 yòng use
 dōngxi things
 xiān ~ zài ~ first ~ then ~
 bōli glass
 gānjīng clean
 tiēzài stick onto
 jiàngu glue
 túdīng drawing pin
 èn press
 ènshang affix
 Láodòng rénmin wénhuàgōng
 Labouring People's Cultural Palace
 cānjiā take part in
 liánhuānhuì social get-together
 shì business
 jìrán since
 yuànyì (be) willing to
 jiàn measure word for article of
 clothing
 xīn new
 dàyī overcoat
 wéi wear (scarf etc.); put round

wéijīn scarf
 bùrán otherwise
 gǎnmào catch a cold
 hái even (more)
 měinián every year
 nàxiē those
 niándēng New Year lanterns
 duō how (exclamation)
 duì that's right (= duìle)
 zhǎn measure word for lamp, lantern
 dàihuìqu take back (with one)
 wéi surround; stand around
 qún crowd (of)
 yuánlái it turns out that; in fact it ...
 mài sell
 húdié butterfly
 jīnyú goldfish
 hái even
 yǎnjīng eye
 xiàn string, line
 āi exclamation to draw attention
 hǎowánr amusing, diverting
 gànma what for?
 sònggěi give to (as a present)
 gébi next door

Notes

Part one

- 1 Chūnjié jiù shì guòqù de "yīnlì nián". *The Spring Festival is the "Lunar calendar (New) Year" of the past.*
- a jiù shì: is precisely The addition of jiù emphasizes the aspect of equivalence between two things.
- b yīnlì nián: lunar calendar (new) year Traditionally the major festival of the year in China has always been the New Year according to the old lunar calendar. It continues to be so, but the term Chūnjié: Spring Festival is now preferred for it. New Year (Xīnnián) now designates the first day of the year according to the solar calendar (Jan. 1st.).
- 2 Wèile huāndù Chūnjié, jǐguān gōngchǎng dōu fàng sān tiān jià. *In order to celebrate the Spring Festival, government offices and factories all have three days holiday.*
- a wèile: in order to Introducing a subordinate clause, wèile means for the purpose of. Introducing a noun or noun construction it means on

account of. In both cases it normally occurs at the beginning of a sentence.

- b fàng sān tiān jià: take three days holiday Fàngjià is a verb-object construction: have a holiday. The phrase expressing the duration of the action usually comes between the verb and the object, with the option of de as a link word: fàng sān tiān de jià; it may, however, come after the verb and object: fàngjià sān tiān.
- 3 Xīnnián zhǐshì Yuándàn fàngjià, érqǐě bù zěnme rènáo. *At New Year it is only on New Year's Day one has a holiday, what's more it's not particularly boisterous.*
- a zhǐshì: only Since zhǐ: only is an adverb, it must modify a verb, therefore one cannot say Xīnnián zhǐ Yuándàn fàngjià, but must instead supply the verb shì, to make zhǐshì: it is only ... (that) ...
- b bù zěnme: not particularly By itself, you recall, zěnme means in what way?; in negative constructions (bù zěnme) it becomes not in any (particular) way.
- 4 ... chuāngshang tiē chuānghuā; yě yǒude jiāting zài mén shang tiē chūnlián *stick paper cutouts on the windows; there are also some households which stick spring greetings on the door.*
 chuāngshang Shang is a postpositional place word like li: inside. The reason why it is printed together with chuāng but separate from mén is that chuāng is a combining form—it cannot be used independently—whereas mén is a free form. The free form for window is chuānghù.
- 5 Dàgài méi yǒu yí ge háizi bù xǐhuan Chūnjié de ba. *Probably there is no child who doesn't like the Spring Festival.*
- a méi yǒu ~ bù xǐhuan ... This is a pivotal construction, the object of yǒu (i.e. yí ge háizi) also functioning as the subject of bù xǐhuan. Note the double negative again.
- b de This de is similar to but slightly different from the "situational" de. It is not necessary grammatically, but when used it gives a statement the air of undoubted fact—from the speaker's point of view.
- 6 Dào le Chūnjié shāngdiàn lǐ tiānle gè zhǒng niánhuò. *By Spring Festival, in the shops they had got in all kinds of goods for the New Year.*
- a Dào le Chūnjié: lit. having got to the Spring Festival, hence by (the time of) ...
- b tiānle: lit. there had been added This verb is used impersonally, like fàngzhe in the parallel construction zhuōzi shang fàngzhe nuǎnshuǐpíng: on the table there is placed a thermos flask. This pattern is employed when the intention is to tell of the existence or appearance of a person or thing at a certain place or time. As an example of the

latter case: **Zuótiān wǎnshàng lái le yí ge péngyou:** *Yesterday evening there came a friend.*

- 7 ... **tèbié yǐn rén zhùyì de shì chuānchéng yí chuànchuàn de shānzhā, yì zhīzhī de táng húlu.** ... *what especially attracts people's attention is hawberries threaded into strings, and sugared fruits threaded onto sticks.*
- a **yí chuànchuàn:** *one string after another* (also **yí chuàn yí chuàn**) Measure words are reduplicated to give the sense of "innumerable". The expression in English parallel to **yí chuànchuàn** is *string after string* or *strings and strings*. **chuānchéng yí chuànchuàn de shānzhā** is a noun phrase, consisting of **shānzhā:** *hawberries*, described as **chuānchéng yí chuànchuàn:** *threaded to become string after string.*
- b **yì zhīzhī de táng húlu** This noun phrase is dependent like the previous one on the verb **chuānchéng:** **chuānchéng yì zhīzhī de táng húlu:** *sugared fruits threaded to become stick and sticks.*
- 8 **Chúle zhèxiē yíwài, hái yǒu hái zìmen xǐhuan de fēngchē** etc. *Apart from these, there are also pinwheels ... which children like.* **chúle ~ yíwài:** *apart from* This construction consists of an initial marker, **chúle:** *apart from*, and an end marker, **yíwài:** *besides*, which may embrace anything from a single word, as here, to a whole clause. Both **chúle** and **yíwài** may be used without the other to the same effect. The following clause normally contains some supporting word like **hái:** *additionally* or **yě:** *also*.
- 9 ... **yóu fù-mǔ huò zǔfù-mǔ lǐngzhe zài rénqún lǐ jīlái jǐqù** ... *being led by parents or grandparents, throng here and there in the crowd of people.*
- a **yóu:** *by* **Yóu** introduces the agent of an action, but the agent does not SUBJECT the "patient" to an action as in passive constructions using **bèi, jiào** etc. The situation is rather one of the agent taking the lead and the "patient" cooperating.
- b **jīlái jǐqù:** *throng this way and that* In the pattern **X-lái X-qù**, where **X** is a verb reiterated, **-lái** and **-qù** means *backwards and forwards, this way and that*.

Part two

- 10 **Mā, wǒ lái tiē chuānghuā.** *Mother, I'll paste the paper cutouts (for the window).*
lái Again this **lái** indicates active intention to engage in the business of the verb.
- 11 **Xiān bǎ bōli cāngānjīng zài tiē** *First wipe the glass clean then stick (them on)*
xiān ~ zài ~: *first ~ then ~* This construction is used when something is to be delayed until something else is done first.

Grammatically it is parallel to **xiān ~ ránhòu ~:** *first ~ then afterwards ~* which we met in L5.

- 12 **Nǐ bǎ zhè liǎng zhāng niánhuà tiēzài qiángshàng ba.** *You stick these two New Year paintings on the wall.*
tiēzài: *stick on.* **zài** follows a verb as a verb-complement when it designates the place where the action terminates—the "target" rather than the "location".
- 13 **Yòng jiàngu tiē ma?** (*Should I use glue to stick them?*)
yòng: *use* This is the chief "instrumental" preposition, or auxiliary verb. It usually translates conveniently as *with:* **yòng jiàngu tiē:** *stick with glue;* **yòng qiānbǐ xiě:** *write with a pencil.*
- 14 **Jírán mā bú yuànyì qù, jiù bié jiào mā qù le.** *Since mother is unwilling to go, then don't make mother go.*
Jírán ... , jiù ... : *since ... , then ...* This is another pair of markers for joining clauses. The second clause follows as a consequence of the first.
- 15 **Nǐmen kàn, nàxiē niándēng zuòde duō piàoliang!** *Look, how prettily those new year lanterns are made!*
duō: *how* This **duō** is the same as **duōme**, used in exclamations; you may recall from L6 **Duōme měilì de yí zuò qiáo:** *How beautiful a bridge!* (L6, N16). Here it comes in an adverbial complement, **zuòde piàoliang:** *made prettily.*
- 16 **Nàr wéizhe yì qún hái zi** (lit.) *There, there is gathered round a crowd of children.*
This sentence follows the pattern for the appearance of people in a certain place: place—impersonal verb—people. See N6b above.
- 17 **Yuánlái shì mài fēngzhēng de.** *It turns out it is a kite seller.*
a **Yuánlái:** *it turns out* This word, which is actually an adverb, is used when something which was not clear previously becomes clear; it introduces the explanation.
b **de** This may be understood as an abbreviation for **de rén:** *someone who*. When what the person is doing is in the nature of a trade, it functions like the English suffix *-er* (as in *seller*).
- 18 **Kàn, nèige húdié hé jīnyú de yǎnjīng hái huì dòng ne.** *Look, the eyes of that butterfly and goldfish can even move!*
hái ... ne: *even* The combination of **hái:** *besides* and the impressive **ne** (see L4, N25d) is equivalent to *even*, as applied to an action.
- 19 **Dàgē, nǐ mǎi fēngchē gànma?** *Elderest brother, what do you want to buy a pinwheel for?*
gànma: *what for* (note the second tone for **má**) is an idiom equivalent to **gàn shénme?:** *to do what?* It may also be used before the main verb: **Nǐ gànma bú qù?** *What for are you not going?—Why are you not going?*

Lesson eleven In the department store

Translation

One

Wang Huiying: Today is Sunday.
My parents and I are going together to the Peking Department Store to do some shopping.
To go to the department store we take the bus.
We get off at Wangfujing Avenue.

Wangfujing Avenue is Peking's busiest area.
On both sides of the avenue it is almost all shops.
The Dongfeng Market, the Xinhua Bookshop, the People's Daily, etc. are all here.
Even on weekdays there are quite a lot of people in this area.
Today being Sunday, there are even more people.
However, the pedestrians are all unhurriedly going and coming with an air of complete serenity.

In the windows of the department store are displayed various kinds of cloth.
And also displayed are new models of radios and bicycles.
Today we want to buy a bicycle.
The reason is that Father's bicycle is already so old that he cannot ride it any more.
In addition I want to buy printed cloth.
Mother says she will make me two blouses.
The bicycle sales department is on the first floor (English ground floor).
Printed cloth is on the third floor (English second floor).
We first go to the third floor to buy printed cloth.

Two

Buying printed cloth

Wang Huiying: Ah, they're selling printed cloth here.
They're all very pretty.
There are so many designs, it's quite dazzling to look at them, I don't know which one to choose.
Mother: That's true.
Wang Huiying: Mother, choose one for me, will you?
Mother: Umm, how about that striped one?
Wang Huiying: Ah, a striped one would be nice, too.

Mother: Comrade, would you hand down that printed cloth to show us?
Saleswoman: Which one?
The one with the yellow background and the pink stripes?
Mother: No, that one with the green background and the pink stripes.
Saleswoman: All right.
This is most suitable for girls to wear in summer.
Wang Huiying: It really looks nice.
Show me that one with the yellow background, too.
Saleswoman: All right, please take a look.
This line also sells well.
Wang Huiying: The colour is too loud.
This one with the green background is better, after all.
Mother: That's right, after all the relatively plain one is better.
So, let's buy this one.
Won't it fade when you wash it?
Saleswoman: It won't fade, and also it won't shrink, it can be washed many times, and it wears long.
Mother: What about the price?
Saleswoman: Three mao for a chi (about 30 cm).
Mother: Relatively cheap.
How many chi do you need to make a blouse?
Saleswoman: Short sleeve one or long sleeve one?
Mother: Short sleeve one.
Saleswoman: For the usual build, five and a half chi are enough.
Mother: I'm making two, so please measure me one zhang plus one chi.
Saleswoman: All right.
I've finished cutting it.
This is your bill, please go and pay first.

Buying a bicycle

Father: I want to buy a bicycle.
Salesman: All right, there are a good few kinds displayed over there.
Please feel free to look round.
Mother: There are so many kinds, how are we to select one?
Wang Huiying: Can we give it a turn to try it?
Salesman: You can.
Wang Huiying: Father, the brakes of this bicycle are very efficient.
Father: This bicycle seems a bit more expensive than the others, what is different about it?
Salesman: The handlebars, pedals and other important parts of this bicycle are all made of stainless steel, and will never rust.
That is the special merit of this bicycle.
Father: Hey, this bicycle isn't bad, either.
By the look of it, it isn't any different from that one.
Salesman: That's right, it is only that the pedals and handlebars are not made of stainless steel.
As to capability, they are almost about the same.
Father: Oh, is that so.
Fengmei, which do you think is better?
Mother: Since it's only to be used for getting to and from work, we need one that is as sturdy as possible.

- Father: Huiying, how do you think?
 Wang Huiying: I think it makes no difference if it isn't a stainless steel one.
 This bicycle is very good.
 Father: Um . . .
 Wang Huiying: Father, you buy this one.
 I'll clean it every day for you, and will definitely not let it rust.
 Father: All right, then I'll agree with you and buy this one.
 Comrade, we've decided to take this one.

New words in this lesson

- bǎihuò dàlóu Department Building
 chē bus; car
 dìfang place
 dàjiē avenue; high street
 liǎngpáng both sides
 chàbùduō almost
 Dōngfēng shìchǎng Dongfeng Market
 Xīnhuà shūdiàn Xinhua (New China)
 Bookstore
 Rénmín rìbào shè People's Daily
 Corporation
 děng etcetera, and so on, and suchlike
 yídài area, district, neighbourhood
 pǔtōng ordinary
 rìzi day
 gǎnshàng come round to; by (the time it is)
 gèng even more
 xíng rén pedestrians
 yōurán zìdé unhurried and contented
 láilaiwǎngwǎng come and go
 gōngsī company
 chúhuāng shop window
 chēnliè set out, display
 gè sè all sorts
 gè yàng all kinds
 liàozǐ material
 xīnxíng new style, new model
 liàng measure word for vehicle
 jiù old (of things)
 zài further, more
 língwài separate(ly); besides
 yínhuābù printed cloth
 duǎnshān blouse
 shòumàibù department (in store)
 lóu floor
- yī lóu first floor (i.e. English ground floor)
 huāyàng pattern, design
 yǎn eyes
 huā dazzled, blurred
 tiāo choose
 zhēn shì de that's really so
 tiāoxuǎn choose
 dài carry, have with
 dài tiáo with stripes
 tiáo stripe
 huābù printed cloth
 náxiàlái take down
 dìr background
 fěnhóng pink
 nǚháizi girl
 hěshì suitable
 nǎgěi give to
 lù line (in goods): a measure word
 xiāo sell (commercially)
 yánsè colour
 xiānyàn loud (of colour)
 háishi rather; for preference
 sùjīng plain, sober
 diào shǎi fade, lose colour
 chōu shrink
 nài bear, tolerate
 jīn stand up to
 jiàqián price
 máo mao ($\frac{1}{10}$ of a yuan)
 chǐ measure roughly equal to a foot
 piányi cheap
 zuò make
 cháng long
 xiùr sleeve
 duǎn short

- shēncái build, stature
 zúgòu sufficient, adequate
 liáng measure
 zhàng ten chi (approx. 10 ft)
 jiǎn cut
 fùkuǎndān bill
 jiāo hand over
 kuǎn sum (of money)
 jiāo kuǎn pay the sum required
 hǎo jī a good few
 suíbiàn at (one's) convenience
 zhǒnglèi variety, kind
 zhuàn turn, revolve
 zhá brakes
 líng effective, efficient
 bié other
 guì expensive
 dìfang point, aspect
 chēbǎ handlebar
 jiǎodēngzǐ pedal

- zhòngyào important
 bùfen part
 búxiùgāng stainless steel
 jué definitely
 shēng produce
 xiù rust
 tècháng special merit
 búcuò not bad (= pretty good)
 zhìyú as to, with regard to
 xìngnéng capability
 Ō exclamation showing hesitancy
 kàn take the view, think
 shàng-xiàbān going to and from work
 jǐnliàng as far as possible
 jiēshi strong, sturdy
 xiǎng think
 méi guānxi it doesn't matter
 Ĭ noise made when cogitating
 tā it
 yī (yìzhe) rely on, follow the lead of

Notes

Part one

- 1 Wǒ hé fù-mǔ yìqǐ dào Běijīng bǎihuò dàlóu mǎi dōngxi qù. *I am going with my parents to the Peking Department Store to buy some things.*
 hé ~ yìqǐ: together with ~ In this construction hé commutes with gēn and yìqǐ with yíkuàir: gēn fù-mǔ yíkuàir.
- 2 Dàjiē de liǎngpáng chàbùduō dōu shì shāngdiàn. *On both sides of the avenue it is almost all shops.*
 chàbùduō: almost This time chàbùduō functions as an adverb; it often modifies dōu.
- 3 Zhè yídài pǔtōng rìzi rén yě gòu duō de. *In this area (even) on ordinary days people are still pretty numerous.*
 a yě: still Yě in the second half of a sentence suggests a jiùshi: even in the first half, which is the case here: jiùshi pǔtōng rìzi rén yě gòu duō de.
 b gòu This is the gòu referred to in L9, N12, meaning considerably: Jìntiān gòu lěng de. The final de lends the utterance an air of conviction or subjective validity.
- 4 Jìntiān gǎnshàng xīngqìrì, rén jiù gèng duō le. *Today being Sunday, there are even more people.*

- a **gǎnshang** Literally this means *catch up with*, hence by extension, *get round to, coincide with* (a certain time). **Gǎnshang xīngqīrì**: it *having got round to Sunday—It being Sunday*.
- b **gèng**: *even more* Another example: **Zuótiān lěng, jīntiān gèng lěng**: *Yesterday it was cold, today it is even colder*.
- 5 **Yīnwei fùqīn de zìxíngchē yǐjīng jiùde bù néng zài qí le**. *Because father's bicycle is so old it can't be ridden any more*.
- a **jiùde bù néng zài qí le**: *old (to the extent that) it cannot be ridden any more* Here we have an adverbial complement of degree following a verbal adjective, **jiù**: *be old*.
- b **zài**: *further* **Zài** occurs in negative statements either in the sense of (not) *any longer* or (not) *any more*. It may precede verbal adjectives as well as full verbs.
- 6 **Lìngwài wǒ yào mǎi yìnhuābù**. *In addition I want to buy printed cloth*, **lìngwài**: *in addition, besides* **Lìngwài** is very often supported by **hái**: *as well*. **Hái** could have been added in this sentence, to make **Lìngwài wǒ hái yào mǎi yìnhuābù**.

Part two

- 7 ... **kànde yǎn dōu huā le** *my eyes are all dazzled from looking at them* This is an adverbial complement of degree; lit. *I look at them (to the extent that) my eyes are all dazzled*. For **dōu**, see L7, N12.
- 8 **bù zhīdào tiāo něige hǎo**. *I don't know which it would be best to choose*.
bù zhīdào ... hǎo: *don't know ... for the best* There is always an interrogative construction in between **bù zhīdào** and **hǎo**. Here it is **tiāo něige**: *choose which one?* Another example is: **Bù zhīdào gàn shénme hǎo**: *I don't know what to do for the best*. If the dilemma is a particularly perplexing one, **cái**: *only then* may be used to strengthen **hǎo**, as in **Bù zhīdào zěnmē bàn cái hǎo**: *I can't think how I should act for the best*.
- 9 **Huáng dìr dài fěnhóng tiáor de ma?** *The one with the yellow background and pink stripes?*
de **De** stands for **de yìnhuābù**: *the printed cloth which ...*; the omission of the noun makes **de** correspond to the English noun-substitute *the one*. All that goes before **de** is an adjective phrase: *The yellow-background-with-pink-stripes one?*
- 10 **Nǚháizi xiàtiān chūan zuì héshì**. *It is most suitable for girls to wear in summer*.
Héshì always concludes a sentence: "such and such" *is suitable*. What is "most suitable" in this case is *that girls should wear it in summer*.

- 11 **Zhèige yánsè tài xiānyàn, háishi zhèige lǜ dīr de hǎo**. *This colour is too loud, the one with the green background is better, after all*.
háishi ... hǎo: *rather ... which is better* This construction is used when, after weighing up the pros and cons, one concludes that one thing, or one course of action, is preferable to another.
- 12 **Nàme jiù mǎi zhèige ba**. *In that case let's buy this one*.
jiù: *then* This **jiù** marks the final step in the mental progression—the mind made up.
- 13 **Xǐ, bú huì diàoshǎi ma?** *When washed it wouldn't fade, would it?*
a **xǐ**: *wash* It is often word order alone which determines the relationship between the component parts of a sentence. **Xǐ**, coming at the head of the sentence, presents a hypothesis which is then explored in the rest of the sentence: *Given the fact of washing—it wouldn't fade?*
- b **huì**: *would* This is the use of **huì** which has to do with likelihood or probability.
- 14 ... **nài xǐ jīn chuān**. *It bears washing and stands up to wearing*.
This is an example of the four-word balanced phrase which is a favourite locution in Chinese. **Nài**: *bear* and **jīn**: *stand up to*, both meaning approximately the same thing, each take a single-syllable object and so form matching pairs.
- 15 **Sān máo yì chǐ** *Three mao a foot*
In costing things, the price is given first and the quantity second.
- 16 **Zuò liǎng jiàn, nǐ gěi liáng yì zhàng yī ba**. *I'm making two; measure eleven feet for me, would you?*
a **gěi** is short for **gěi wǒ**: *for me*.
b **yì zhàng yī**: *one zhang (10 feet) and one (chi, "foot")* The last unit in a compound amount does not need to be expressed; it is assumed it will be the next lower unit. The same practice is followed in English (e.g. "six feet two").
- 17 **Hǎo, nàr chénlièzhe hǎo jǐ zhǒng**. *All right; there are a good few kinds displayed over there*.
hǎo jǐ: *a good few* This is the **hǎo** which denotes a high degree, as in **hǎo jiǔ**: *a very long time*. It can combine with **jǐ**: *a few* to make *a good few*, with **xiē**: *some* to make *a good number of* (**hǎo xiē**), and with **duō**: *many* to make *a good many* (**hǎo duō**).
- 18 **Zhuànzhuan shìshì kěyǐ ma?** *Is it all right to give it a turn and try it?*
zhuànzhuan shìshì This expression is similar to **zhuànzhuan kàn**: *give a turn to see* (what it's like), except that **zhuànzhuan kàn** expresses a direct means-end relationship (purpose does not have to be explicitly stated by some such phrase as **wèile**: "in order to"), whereas **shìshì** by its nature may involve other forms of "testing" as well as *turning* (**zhuànzhuan**).

- 19 **Kàn yàng hé nèi liàng méi yǒu shénme bùtóng de dìfang.** *By the look of it, it isn't any different from that one.*
 a **méi yǒu shénme bùtóng de dìfang:** lit. *hasn't any different points.*
 b **hé ~ bùtóng:** *different from ~* See L2, N8 and 28a.
- 20 **Shàng-xiàbān yòng ma, jīnliàng yào jiěshi de.** *It's to be used for going to and from work: as far as possible you want a strong one.*
 a **ma** for stating the obvious: *don't you see?* (L4, N20)
 b **jīnliàng:** *as far (much) as possible* (lit. *in fullest measure*). As this is an adverbial expression, it must come before a verb.
- 21 **... jué bú huì ràng tā shēng xiù.** *I definitely would not let it rust.*
 a **jué:** *definitely* **Jué** is used to make negative statements emphatic. It is never used in affirmative statements, neither is it used to modify verbal adjectives—you cannot say **Tā jué bù měili.**
 b **tā:** *it* As you see, **tā:** *it* is pronounced the same as the word for *he* or *she*, but written differently. Mostly “it” does not need to be expressed, but in this case the verb **ràng:** *let* is peculiar in that it cannot stand without an object.
- 22 **nàme jiù yìzhe nǐ, mǎi zhèi liàng ba.** *In that case then I'll agree with you and buy this one.*
yìzhe: *rely on, fall in with, go along with.* The **-zhe** is a customary affix for this word, which has a built-in continuative aspect.

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: Comrade Sun Yulan's house is in the new housing area.
 It takes about thirty minutes from my house by bus.
 I have been to her house once.

Her husband is called Qian Ziliang, and is a railway worker.
 His wages are a little higher than mine.
 She has two children, one boy and one girl, both of whom are going to primary school.

Their house is a big apartment-style building.
 They live on the third floor.
 (There are) two rooms with a kitchen and toilet.
 Moreover, they have central heating facilities.
 Their rent is a little higher than (that of) our house.

She says that next Sunday she will come to our house with her husband.
 Next Sunday is a day when I will be resting at home.
 She has never been to our house.
 Our house is at the end of the alley.
 For the first time of coming perhaps, it will be very difficult to find.
 I'm afraid she won't be able to find it.
 I have drawn her a rough map.
 In this way, I think she will certainly be able to find it.

Today Father has gone out on business.
 Mother is at home.
 She heard me say that this afternoon there would be visitors coming.
 As soon as she got up in the morning, she swept the yard, and tidied up the rooms.
 She was busy for a spell, cleaning the windows and wiping the table.
 She also went especially to the market to buy cakes and vegetables in preparation for entertaining the visitors.
 Younger Brother and Younger Sister said that today there is a basketball match at school, and they went off to school.
 They will only be able to return at evening time.

Receiving guests

Sun Yulan: So this is Comrade Wang's House.
 Qian Ziliang: Luckily we had this map, otherwise it wouldn't have been easy to find.
 Sun Yulan: Quite true.
 I'll go and knock on the door.
 Is Comrade Wang in?
 Mother: He is, please come in.
 You must be Comrade Sun?
 Sun Yulan: Yes.
 This is my husband.
 Mother: Welcome to you.
 Dawen is indoors waiting for you.
 The visitors have arrived!
 Wang Dawen: You've come, do please come in and sit down!
 Sun Yulan: Thank you.
 Wang Dawen: This place wasn't easy to find, was it?
 Sun Yulan: With the map you drew, we found it at once.
 Wang Dawen: That's excellent.
 Come, let me introduce you.
 This is my Mother, this is Comrade Sun.
 This is Comrade Sun's husband.
 Sun Yulan: How do you do!
 Qian Ziliang: How do you do!
 Mother: How do you do!
 Dawen often mentions both of you.
 I'm really happy you've come today.
 Qian Ziliang: We're very happy, too, to be able to see you today.
 Mother: We're all friends, so don't stand on ceremony, please sit down.
 Sun Yulan: Thank you.
 Mother: Please have some tea.
 Qian Ziliang: Thank you.
 Mother: Do you smoke?
 Qian Ziliang: I've brought some with me.
 Mother: Isn't it all the same? Smoke this one.
 Here's a match.
 Come, let me light it for you.
 Qian Ziliang: Please don't trouble yourself, I'll do it myself.
 Mother: Comrade Sun, do you smoke, too?
 Sun Yulan: No, I don't smoke.
 Mother: Then please have some cake.
 Sun Yulan: All right, thank you, but please don't wait upon me.

Seeing the guests off

Qian Ziliang: Ma'am, you must be busy every day, aren't you?
 Mother: I'm not that busy.
 I've heard that you're awfully busy.
 Qian Ziliang: We are rather busy on the railway.
 But we're not afraid of being busy, we're only afraid of being slack.
 Mother: This "willing to work" spirit of yours is really admirable.

Qian Ziliang: You overpraise us.
 Mother: You're not busy today, are you?
 Let's have dinner together in our house.
 Qian Ziliang: No, thank you.
 We have to go back early.
 The children are waiting at home.
 Wang Dawen: Why didn't you bring them with you?
 Qian Ziliang: They didn't want to come.
 They wanted to go to the Children's Palace.
 Wang Dawen: When my Mother heard you were coming, she wanted at all events to keep you for dinner.
 Mother: It is only everyday home cooking.
 Please don't stand on ceremony!
 Qian Ziliang: It's not a case for ceremony, next time we'll certainly impose on your hospitality.
 Mother: So let's talk some more.
 Sun Yulan: It's getting late, Ziliang, we ought to return.
 Qian Ziliang: Oh, we've disturbed you a long time.
 We must take our leave.
 Mother: What's the hurry?
 It's still early, please sit down a bit longer.
 Qian Ziliang: No, we won't.
 We'll come and visit you again another day.
 Mother: Is that so, then we won't force you to stay.
 Be sure to drop in again one of these days.
 Qian Ziliang: Yes, we certainly will come.
 Mother: Dawen, go and see them off.
 Qian Ziliang: Don't bother, we know the way.
 Sun Yulan: Please stay where you are.
 Wang Dawen: Then I won't see you very far.
 Please go carefully.
 Sun Yulan: Please go back, good-bye.
 Wang Dawen: Good-bye.

New words in this lesson

fǎngwèn visit
 xīnzhàiqū new housing area
 dàyuē roughly, probably
 zuǒyòu approximately
 tiělù railway
 gōngzī wages
 nán male
 nǚ female
 shàng attend
 xiǎoxué primary school

gōngyù apartment, flat
 shì style
 dàlóu (big) building
 zhù live, reside
 fángjiān room
 dài with
 cèsuǒ toilet
 nuǎnqì central heating
 fángzū rent
 hùtòng alley

jǐnlítou very end
kǒngpà perhaps
zhǎodào find (look for + attain)
pà fear, be afraid that
huà draw
lüètú rough map, sketch
zhèyàng in this way
shì business
yī ~ jiù ~ as soon as ~ then ~
shōushi tidy up
yòushi ~ yòushi ~ both ~ and ~
mā wipe
zhèn spell: a length of time
tèyì especially, with special intent
shìchǎng market
diǎnxīn little snacks and pastries
cài vegetables
zhāodài entertain
shuōshì say that
xuéxiào school
lánqiú basketball
bǐsài match, competition
bàngwǎn early evening, dusk
kuǐde fortunately
qiāo knock, tap
qiāo mén knock at the door
huānyíng welcome
lǐbianr inside
hǎo easy
yíxiàzì at once
zhǎozháo find (look for + succeed)
jìle extremely
jièshao introduce
tí mention
zhēnshi really
zìjǐrén friends
bú yào do not
kèqì polite, be polite

Notes

Part one

- 1 Lí wǒ jiā zuò gōnggòng qìchē dàyuē yào sānshí fēn zuǒyòu. From my house it takes about thirty minutes by bus.
a lí: from Notice that lí is used in relation to time as well as place (L2, N3): lí wǒ jiā yào sānshí fēn: from my house it takes thirty minutes.

dàizhe have with (one); have brought along
zhǐ measure word for cigarette
huǒchái match
diǎnshang light (up)
bùgǎndāng I wouldn't presume
zhāngluo wait upon; serve guests
huì be in the habit of, be used to
sòng see off (guests)
dàniáng ma'am: term of address for older women
búguò however
xián slack
jīngshén spirit
lìng make, cause
rén people
pèifu respect
guòjiǎng over-praise
dàilái bring along
shàoniángōng Children's Palace
liú keep, retain
búguò merely
jiācháng everyday, commonplace
biànfàn simple meal
xiàcì next time
tāorǎo impose on hospitality
tiān time (of day)
gàocí take one's leave
la fusion of le and a
bàifǎng visit (polite)
qiǎng forcibly; unreasonably
rènshi know
lù way
liúbù stay put (do not see off)
zǒuhǎo mind how you go
qǐng huí please return (don't come any further—said to host)

- b dàyuē . . . zuǒyòu: roughly . . . about It would be tautological in English to use these two words together, but in Chinese it is an instance of mutual support.
2 Wǒ qùguo tā jiā yí cì. I have been to her house once.
yí cì: once With this verbal measure word, its position in the sentence is as follows: verb—simple object—yí cì (as in the present example); in verb—object constructions, verb—yí cì—object (xiàle yí cì yǔ: it rained once); and complicated object—verb—yí cì (when the object is recast as the “topic”).
3 tā de gōngzī bǐ wǒ duō yíxiē. His wages are a little higher than mine.
yíxiē: a little this is used in the same way as yídiǎnr after a verbal adjective—a little -er.
4 Tāmen zhùzài sān lóu. They live on the third (= English second) floor.
The verb zhù: live may take zài either before it (Tāmen zài sān lóu zhù) or after it, as here, without any difference in meaning.
5 Chūcì lái kǒngpà hěn nán zhǎodào. Coming for the first time, perhaps it will be very difficult to find.
kǒngpà: (I'm) afraid Kǒngpà is used parenthetically with the force of perhaps, in the adverbial position. Contrast this with the next sentence, Wǒ (kǒng)pà tā zhǎobudào: I'm afraid she won't be able to find it.
6 Zhèyàng, wǒ xiǎng tā yíding néng zhǎodedào. In this way, I think she will certainly be able to find it.
néng zhǎodedào: be able to find Néng is strictly speaking superfluous with a potential verb which already includes the sense of “can”: another case of mutual support.
7 Tā zǎoshang yì qīlai jiù dǎsǎo yuànzǐ, As soon as she got up in the morning she swept the yard,
yī ~ jiù ~: as soon as ~ then ~. Compare L9, N7a.
8 Yòushi cā bōli, yòushi mā zhuōzi, mángle yízhèn. She was busy for a spell with both polishing the glass and wiping the table.
yòushi ~ yòushi ~: both ~ and ~ This is in most respects the same as yòu ~ yòu ~. The chief difference is that it cannot associate adjectives, only verbal constructions.
9 didi hé mèimei shuōshì . . .
shuōshì: say that The addition of shì to shuō is a positive indication that what follows is reported speech, but shuō by itself may also introduce reported speech.

Part two

- 10 Kuǐde yǒu zhèi zhāng lüètú, bùrán de huà, kě bù róngyi zhǎodào. Luckily we have this map, otherwise it would not have been easy to find.

- bùrán de huà: otherwise** This is the **de huà** used as an end-marker for conditional clauses (see L6, N29). Here too the context is conditional, as **bùrán** stands for “if we hadn’t had it”.
- 11 **Huānyíng nǐmen lái.** *You are welcome.*
Literally this says *We welcome your coming*. An equally common form of words is **Huānyíng huānyíng**.
- 12 ... **kuài qǐng lǐbianr zuò.** *Please come in (sit inside).*
kuài: *quick* is used to add urgency to a request. It does not appear to be directly translatable.
- 13 **Zhèr bù hǎo zhǎo ba?** *This place wasn’t easy to find, I would think?*
hǎo: *easy (to)* **Hǎo**, followed by a verb, has the same meaning as **róngyi**.
- 14 ... **wǒmen yíxiàzi jiù zhǎozhǎole.** *we found it at once.*
a **yíxiàzi:** *at one go, hence in an instant, straight away.*
b **-zhào** As the second element in a resultative verb, **zhào** indicates success in the action of the verb: **zhǎozhào** therefore means *looked for and succeeded* (in finding).
- 15 **Dàwén cháng tí nǐmen èr wèi.** *Dawen often mentions you two.*
èr wèi: *two (people)* **Èr wèi** is in apposition to **nǐmen**. The usual word for *two* (of anything) is **liǎng**, but **èr** may be used with the polite classifier (measure word) **wèi**. If one is not being deliberately polite, one would say **nǐmen liǎng ge**.
- 16 **Dōu shì zìjǐrén, búyào kèqì.** *We are all friends, don’t stand on ceremony.*
a **zìjǐrén:** *friends* Literally this means *one’s own people*, which is used in contradistinction to outsiders or strangers.
b **búyào:** *do not* This is the full form of the negative imperative, of which **bié** is a contraction.
- 17 **Hái bú shì yíyàng ma?** *Isn’t it (aren’t they) the same?*
hái bú shì ... ma? This is a form of rhetorical question: *isn’t it that ... ?* It works perfectly well without **hái:** *still*, but it is one of the special functions of **hái** to signal rhetorical questions (compare L6, N19).
- 18 **Bùgǎndāng, wǒ zìjǐ lái.** *I would not presume, I’ll do it myself.*
a **Bùgǎndāng** is a polite disclaimer, used either to decline attentions or to disavow flattering attributions.
b **lái:** *do* For **lái** as a proverb (here standing for **diǎnshang:** *light*), see L5, N25d.
- 19 **Bù, wǒ bú huì chōu.** *No, I don’t smoke.*
huì Another shade of meaning for **huì** is *be in the habit of; I am not in the habit of smoking*. However, the sense of “don’t know how to” is present as well.

- 20 **Zài tiělù shàng gōngzuò shì bǐjiào máng yìdiǎnr.** *On the railways the work is rather busy.*
shì **Shì** used before verbal adjectives (here **máng:** *busy*) lends assertive stress: *is busy*. It works to the same effect with ordinary verbs too.
- 21 **Búguò wǒmen bú pà máng, jiù pà xián.** *However, we are not afraid of being busy, we are just afraid of being slack.*
bú ~ jiù ~: *not ~ just ~* This combination occurs especially in matching clauses, in which the first proposition is rejected, only for the second to be accepted as exact.
- 22 **Nǐmen zhèi zhǒng kěn gàn de jīngshén zhēnshì líng rén pèifu.** *This “willing to work” spirit of yours really is admirable.*
a **zhǒng** **Zhǒng** is not always used in the full sense of *kind of*; it functions as an ordinary measure word for certain abstract nouns, of which **jīngshén** (or **jīngshen**): *spirit* is one. So **Nǐmen zhèi zhǒng jīngshén** is simply *This spirit of yours*.
b **líng:** *make* **Líng** belongs to the class of causative verbs, of which **jiào** and **ràng** are members. It normally takes **rén:** *people* as its object, as in this phrase, **líng rén pèifu:** *make people respect (= admirable)*.
- 23 **Nín tài guòjiǎng le.** *You overpraise us.*
a **guòjiǎng** is a cliché, like **bùgǎndāng**, used for declining compliments. In itself it means *over-praise* (and is sufficient by itself), but perhaps just because it is a cliché it can be modified by **tài:** *too*.
b **le** The sentence particle **le** habitually accompanies **tài**, as it does other emphatic adverbs (see L5, N10).
- 24 **Wǒ mǔqīn tīngshuō nǐmen lái, yíding yào liú nǐmen chī wǎnfàn.** *When mother heard (tell) you were coming, she insisted on having you stay for dinner.*
a **Wǒ mǔqīn tīngshuō nǐmen lái, ...** There is of course no word for “when” stated. As a first clause this just states what is given, leaving open what the appropriate connection with what follows might be. An absolute construction in English represents the same noncommittedness: *My mother, hearing you were coming, ...*
b **yíding yào:** *insist* From the literal meaning *definitely wanted, wanted on all accounts*.
c **liú:** *keep* This is a causative word, *make to stay, have stay*.
- 25 **Búguò shì jiācháng biànfàn.** *It is only everyday home cooking.*
Búguò This is not the conjunction, *however*, which we just met in **Búguò wǒmen bú pà máng**, but the adverb *only, merely, no more than*.
- 26 **Tiān bù zǎo le** *It’s getting late (It’s not early any more).*
tiān: *time of day* **Tiān** in this sense is restricted to a very few phrases.
- 27 **máng shénme de?** *What’s the hurry?*
a **Shénme** may signify a rhetorical question when it comes after a verb;

shénme then means *what for?*, and the general attitude of the speaker is "What's the idea?". **Shénme** in this sense is sometimes accompanied by **hái** (see L6, N20). A genuine question which expects an answer would end with the particle **ne**: **máng shénme ne?**

b de This is the "situational" **de**.

28 Bù la *No, we won't.*

la is a fusion of **le a**. **Le** has its familiar connotation of "now"; combined with a negative, the sense is "not any more".

Lesson thirteen Peking Metropolitan Airport

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: This afternoon, at two o'clock, a visiting delegation to China will arrive in Peking.

The China International Travel Service sent us to Peking Metropolitan Airport to welcome them.

We got to the airport thirty minutes in advance.
Autumn weather in Peking is very fine, today there isn't even a wisp of cloud in the sky.

There are a lot of people in the waiting room of the airport.
They have probably all come to welcome visitors.

It will soon be two o'clock, and we watch the sky attentively,
then see a plane come flying from the distance.
The plane arrives at the airport on time.
The passengers go down the gangway one after another.
Ah, it looks as if the visiting delegation to China has also come down.
Let's go to meet them.

Two

Meeting and welcoming

Wang Dawen: Excuse me, may I ask if you people are the visiting delegation to China?

Delegation leader: Yes.

Wang Dawen: We are here to welcome you.
I am Wang Dawen, a member of the China International Travel Service.

Delegation leader: This is Comrade Zhang Yi.
This is Comrade Sun Yulan.
They are both members of our travel service too.
How do you do!

I am the leader of the delegation.
We are very grateful for your especially coming to welcome us.
This is my wife, and these are the members of my delegation.

Wang Dawen: How do you do!

Delegation leader's wife: Now we have met, from now on, please assist us in everything.

Wang Dawen:

You are too polite.

From now on while you are in China, it will throughout be my responsibility to look after you, to accompany you on your journeys, so please don't be formal, if there's anything in which you need help, don't hesitate to tell me.

Delegation leader's wife: Thank you for your kindness.

In future, we won't be able to avoid troubling you.

Wang Dawen:

You must be very tired.

Please go to the waiting room first and rest a while.

Delegation leader:

It was very comfortable on the plane, and so we don't feel very tired at all.

Wang Dawen:

Is that so, then I'll take you to settle the immigration and customs procedures.

Delegation leader:

Good, thank you.

Settling formalities

Customs officer: Please show me your passports.

Delegation leader: This is my passport, please take a look.

Customs officer: How many pieces of luggage do you have?

Delegation leader: Just this suitcase and this hand luggage.

Customs officer: What do you have inside?

Delegation leader: In the suitcase I have two suits, some shirts, also some books and some medicine.

In the hand luggage, there is a camera, five or six rolls of film, and some things for everyday use.

Um, and there are a few packets of cigarettes, too.

Customs officer: Are these all personal effects?

Delegation leader: That's right.

Customs officer: Do you have any liquor?

Delegation leader: No, do you want to open it and have a look?

Customs officer: It's all right, no need to open it.

Delegation leader: Mr. Wang, we're all finished.

We've kept you waiting.

Wang Dawen:

Don't mention it.

Wang Dawen:

Do you want to change your foreign currency into Renminbi?

Delegation leader: Can we change it here?

Wang Dawen:

Yes, and also in the hotel, but it's more convenient to change it here.

Delegation leader: Good, so let's change it here.

Wang Dawen:

The office of the Chinese People's Bank is over there.

Let's go over there.

Delegation leader:

I'm giving you a lot of trouble.

Wang Dawen:

Not at all.

Wang Dawen:

Hey, Comrade!

These foreign visitors want to take procedures to change some foreign currency.

Bank employee:

All right, please first fill in the kind, and amount of the money you want to exchange on this application form.

Wang Dawen:

Please fill it in.

Delegation leader: All right.

Is it correct to write it like this?

Bank employee:

That's correct, please hand me the foreign currency.

Delegation leader: Fine.

Bank employee: This figure is the present exchange rate, is it satisfactory?

Delegation leader: It's satisfactory, it's satisfactory.

Bank employee: Please wait a moment.

Bank employee:

I've worked it out.

Your foreign exchange is equivalent to three hundred and sixty-five yuan and four jiao in Renminbi in total. Please check it.

Delegation leader: No mistake.

Bank employee: Please sign this receipt.

This receipt is very important, when you leave the country, the customs will check it again.

Please don't lose it, on any account.

Delegation leader: I understand.

Thank you, sorry to bother you.

Bank employee:

Not at all, not at all, good-bye.

New words in this lesson

jīchǎng airport

Běijīng shǒudū jīchǎng Peking

Metropolitan Airport

fǎng-Huá visiting China (contraction

of fǎngwèn Zhōnghuá)

dàibǎotián delegation

Zhōngguó guójì lǚxíngshè China

International Travel Service

pài send, depute

yíngjiē welcome, meet

qián in advance

lián ~ yě ~ even

yìsī a wisp of

hòujítīng waiting room (at airport)

zhùshì watch attentively

tiānkōng sky

jiàn see, perceive

fēijī aeroplane

fēi fly

ànshí punctually

dàodá arrive at (arrive + get to)

lùkè passenger

lùxù in succession

fútī gangway

jiē meet

qǐngwèn may I ask?

tuánzhǎng delegation (or group)

leader

gōngzuò rényuán member, employee

gǎnxiè (be) grateful

tuányuán member of group

fūren wife (of); Mrs.

duōduō a great deal

guānzhào look after

qíjiān period

yìzhí throughout

fùzé take responsibility

péitóng accompany

lǚxíng travel

xūyào need

bāngmáng help

jǐnguǎn don't hesitate to

miǎnbuliǎo inevitably; can't avoid

máfan put to trouble

lèi tired

bìng (not) at all

bǎnlǐ manage, carry out

qiǎnzhèng visa

hǎiguān customs

shǒuxù procedure

bàn carry out, attend to
 zhíyuán staff member
 hùzhào passport
 jiàn piece (of luggage)
 jiù only, just
 xíngli luggage
 píxiāng suitcase
 shǒutí pibāo hand luggage
 táo measure word for a suit or set
 xífú suit
 chènshān shirt
 yàopín medicine
 zhàoxiàngjī camera
 jiāojiǎnr roll of film
 rícháng yòngpǐn articles for everyday use
 bāo packet
 xiāngyān cigarettes
 yòng use
 dǎkāi open
 búbì no need to
 xiānsheng Mr.
 wánle finished
 shòuděng wait
 wàibì foreign currency
 huànchéng change into (change + become)
 rénminbì People's Currency
 fàndiàn hotel
 fāngbian convenient

Zhōngguó rénmin yínháng Chinese People's Bank
 bànschù office
 neibianr over there
 duìhuàn exchange (money)
 hángyuán bank employee
 qiánshù amount, sum (of money)
 tiánxiě fill in
 fēn measure word for form, paper, etc.
 shēnqǐngdān application form
 zhèyàng in this way (= zhèyàng)
 jiāogēi hand over to
 huìjià rate of exchange
 shù mù figure
 shāowēi just a little
 suàn reckon, reckon up
 hé be equivalent to
 yuán unit of currency
 jiǎo unit of currency ($\frac{1}{10}$ of yuan)
 diǎn check
 shōujù receipt
 qiānzi sign name
 huíguó return to one's own country
 líjìng leave the territory (of a country)
 jiǎnchá inspect
 qiǎnwàn on any account; by all means
 nòngdiū lose, mislay
 nǎi'ǎi' Not at all, not at all

Notes

Part one

- 1 Zhōngguó guójì lǚxíngshè pài wǒmen dào Běijīng shǒudū jīchǎng lái yíngjiē tāmen. *The China International Travel Service sent us to Peking Metropolitan Airport to welcome them.*
 lái Apart from indicating direction towards or away from, lái and qù serve also to express purpose when joining verbs in series; in such cases it is comparable to the English infinitive: pài wǒmen lái yíngjiē tāmen: sent us to welcome them. Whether lái or qù is used depends still on the way the speaker conceives of the direction.
- 2 Wǒmen qián sānshí fēn zhōng jiù dào jīchǎng lái. *We got to the airport thirty minutes in advance.*

qián: in advance This word is a preposition, not an adverb, so it must be followed by some period of time. It could not be used independently, e.g. in the sentence "We got there in advance".

- 3 ... jīntian lián yìsī yúncái yě méi yǒu ... *today there isn't even a wisp of cloud*
 lián ~ yě ~: even ~ (still) ~ In this construction it is in most cases a noun or noun construction which follows lian. Yě (always followed by a verb) may be replaced by dōu: lián yìsī yúncái dōu méi yǒu. Jiùshi ~ yě ~ may be used, with extra emphasis, in the same way: jiùshi dōngtiān yě bù chuān dàyī: not wear an overcoat even in winter, but the scope of lián ~ yě ~ does not extend to even if ..., like jiùshi ~ yě ~.
- 4 Tāmen dàgài dōu shì lái yíngjiē kèrén de ba. *They have probably all come to welcome visitors.*
 de De coming at the end of a descriptive phrase or clause without a noun to follow makes that phrase or clause a noun construction. When the missing noun can be specified, the de is equivalent to one: Tā de yǎnjīng shì lán de: Her eyes are blue ones. Where it is people involved, one can postulate a final rén, as one can here: Tāmen dōu shì lái yíngjiē kèrén de rén: They are all people who have come to welcome guests. Our original sentence, since it has a noun construction as its predicate, is static; with the shì ... de removed, it would be describing an action essentially.
- 5 ... jiù jiàn fēijī cóng yuǎnyuǎn de fēilái. ... *then see a plane come flying from afar.*
 cóng yuǎnyuǎn de: from afar This again is an example of de forming a noun construction in the absence of a noun to qualify: yuǎnyuǎn is transformed from an adjective (distant) into a noun (distance). If a noun were to be supplied, it would be difang: place or parts; yuǎnyuǎn de difang: distant parts.
- 6 Wǒmen qù jiē tāmen qù ba. *Let's go to meet them.*
 qù ... qù The first qù: go and or go to carries the implication of purpose; the second qù is the directional word ("in that direction").

Part two

- 7 Duìbuqǐ, qǐngwèn nǐmen jǐ wèi shì Fǎng-Huá dàibiǎotuán ma? *Excuse me, may I ask if you people are the visiting delegation to China?*
 a qǐngwèn: may I ask? This is a set phrase, used politely to preface an enquiry. It does not affect the structure of the question which is to follow.
 b nǐmen jǐ wèi: you people Dawen wants to show courtesy by addressing the visitors as wèi, but for such a measure word a quantity

needs to be supplied: one cannot say *nǐmen wèi*. Instead of counting heads, he uses the indeterminate word *jǐ*: *few*.

- c **Fǎng-Huá**: *visiting China* **Huá** is the formal word for *China* (being a “bound” form it must be used in combination with another word). **Zhōnghuá** is the official name for China, the everyday term being, of course, **Zhōngguó**.
- 8 **Chūcì jiànmiàn, yǐhòu qǐng dàjiā duōduō guānzhào.** *Now we have met, would you all please give us every care and protection in future.* It is a Chinese convention to portray oneself as helpless in order to elevate the other person’s importance.
- a **chūcì jiànmiàn**: lit. *meet for the first time* As a total stranger one would, according to traditional mores, have no claim on another person’s help; a simple introduction changes the situation.
- b **duōduō guānzhào**: lit. *look after (us) a great deal* This also is a set phrase, designed to give a boost to the host.
- 9 **Yǐhòu nǐmen zài Zhōngguó de qījiān yìzhí shì yóu wǒ fùzé zhāodài nǐmen, péitóng nǐmen lǚxíng de.** *From now on for the time you are in China, it will be my responsibility to look after you and accompany you on your journeys.*
shì yóu wǒ fùzé . . . de: lit. *it will be the case of responsibility being taken by me to . . .* For **yóu**: *by* see L10, N9a. **Shì . . . de** is used to explain the situation.
- 10 **. . . yǒu shénme xūyào wǒ bāngmáng de dìfang, jǐnguǎn shuō hǎo le.** *If there are any points in which you need me to help, just go ahead and say.*
jǐnguǎn shuō hǎo le **Jǐnguǎn** means *just go ahead, don’t hesitate to*. Here it is reinforced by **hǎo le**: *that will be all right*.
- 11 **Xièxie nǐ de hǎoyì.** *Thank you for your kindness.*
xièxie Apart from being a self-contained expression of gratitude—*Thanks!*—**xièxie** can also act as a verb, *thank* or *thank for*, when it takes an object.
- 12 **bìng bù juéde zěnme lèi** *We don’t at all feel very tired*
bìng **Bìng** intensifies a denial of an assumption; **bìng bù** or **bìng méi** means *not at all* (as assumed).
- 13 **Límian dōu shì shénme dōngxī?** *What is there inside?*
a **shì** **Shì** may be used instead of **yǒu**: *there is/are* when the existence of something is not in question, when it is obvious, or one can see, that something is there.
b **dōu** **Dōu** calls for separate enumeration.
- 14 **Jiào nín shòuděng le.** *We have made you wait (= Sorry to keep you waiting).*
shòuděng: *wait* This word is only used in a polite context; it means literally *suffer waiting* (i.e. at someone’s pleasure).

- 15 **Nǐ yào bú yào bǎ wàibì huànchéng rénminbì ya?** *Do you want to change your foreign currency into Renminbi?*

Rénminbì: lit. *People’s Currency* The basic unit of currency in China is the **yuán** (dollar), which is divided into units of ten cents (**jiǎo**, popularly called **máo**) and one cent (**fēn**).

- 16 **Hǎo, qǐng xiān bǎ nǐ yào huàn de wàibì de zhǒnglèi, qiánshù tiánxiězài zhèi fèn shēnqǐngdān shang.** *All right; please first fill in the kind and amount of the foreign currency you want to change on this application form.*

As this sentence is rather complicated, we will break it down. It consists of a **bǎ** construction, a long modifying clause, and a verb with a complex complement. **Bǎ zhǒnglèi, qiánshù tiánxiězài zhèi fèn shēnqǐngdān shang** is “take” the kind and amount and fill it in on this application form. **Nǐ yào huàn de wàibì de** modifies **zhǒnglèi** and **qiánshù**: *the kind and amount of the foreign currency you want to change*; this in turn can be broken down into **nǐ yào huàn de**: *which you want to change*, modifying **wàibì**, and **wàibì de zhǒnglèi, qiánshù**: *the kind and amount of foreign currency*.

- 17 **Qǐng shāowēi dēngyíděng.** *Please wait a moment.*

shāowēi: *just a little* **Shāowēi** is an adverb, therefore comes before the verb. It occurs in the patterns **shāowēi**—reduplicated verb (as here), or **shāowēi**—verbal adjective—**yídiǎnr** (e.g. **shāowēi hǎo yídiǎnr**: *just a little better*).

- 18 **Qǐng nín qiānwàn búyào nòngdiū le.** *Please don’t lose it on any account.*

qiānwàn: lit. *a thousand and ten thousand times* This adverb belongs to the imperative mood; negatively, **qiānwàn bú** means *don’t on any account*, positively **qiānwàn** means *be sure to*.

Lesson fourteen

At the hotel

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: The delegation got to the hotel by car.
This hotel is called the Xinqiao Hotel.
This hotel is not far from Peking Station.
A lot of foreigners use this hotel.
Every room has a bathroom.
Their rooms are all arranged on the fifth floor.
Their rooms are from number five hundred and twenty-seven to number five hundred and thirty.

You can give your clothes to the hotel to be washed.
They can be washed and ready the next day.
If you wish to have your clothes pressed, they can be pressed and ready in two hours.

Two

Arriving at the hotel

Wang Dawen: We've arrived at the hotel, please get out.
Delegation leader: Is this the Xinqiao Hotel?
Wang Dawen: That's right.
Let's go in.
Hotel employee A: You've arrived (There you are).
You must be very tired.
Delegation leader: Thank you, but we're not tired.
We are a visiting delegation to China.
We will have to call upon your help from now on.
Hotel employee A: I'll take your luggage.
Delegation leader's wife: No, this is very light, I can take it myself.
Thank you.
Delegation leader: Please deliver those suitcases placed over there to our rooms for us.
Hotel employee A: All right, I'll take them right up.
Wang Dawen: The hotel staff will deliver each of your suitcases to your rooms.
Please everyone, just put them down there.
Delegation leader: We're giving you a lot of trouble.
Wang Dawen: All of your rooms have been arranged on the fifth floor.
Please take that lift over there.
Wang Dawen: Comrades, the visiting delegation to China has arrived.

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader:

Wang Dawen:

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader:

In the room

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader:

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader:

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader:

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader:

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader:

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader:

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader:

Delegation leader's wife:

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader's wife:

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader's wife:

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader's wife:

Hotel employee B:

Delegation leader's wife:

Ah, you've arrived.

You must have found it very tiring on the journey?

Thank you, not at all.

Please hand them their room keys.

All right, your room numbers are from five hundred and twenty-seven to five hundred and thirty.

These are the keys.

Please keep hold of them.

If you go out, please leave the keys at our service desk.

I see.

In this row are your rooms.

It is this row on the left of the corridor, I take it?

That's right, on the left side.

This room is the delegation leader's.

Please open the door and have a look.

Ah, this room is extremely good, both spacious and sunny.

I am the attendant for this floor, my name is Zhou Yongfang.

While you are in Peking, it is I who am responsible for looking after you.

If there is anything, please just tell me.

From now on, we won't be able to avoid troubling you.

I'm always at the service desk in front of the elevator.

There is a bell over there, so if you need anything, please call me any time.

There is a bathroom, I take it?

Yes, it's behind the bedroom.

And the closet?

The closet is here.

Every room is like this.

Is that so.

That must be the thermos bottle.

That's right, it's the thermos bottle, inside there is hot water.

The tea leaves and teacups are both on the table.

Please drink, whenever you wish.

Envelopes and writing paper are both in the drawer, please use them as you desire.

Do you have anything else to ask?

What about slippers?

Slippers are under the bed.

Is there only one blanket?

There's another one in the closet.

If that's not enough, please tell me.

What does one do about laundry?

Please put the things you want washed into this bag.

Please iron this skirt and these trousers.

All right, hand them to me.

When will they be pressed and ready?

- 14** *Hotel employee B:* They can be pressed and ready in two hours.
Delegation leader's wife: Also, please send these shirts and undershirts and so on to be washed.
Hotel employee B: All right, I'll put them in this bag.
Delegation leader's wife: When can they be washed and ready?
Hotel employee B: They will be washed and ready tomorrow morning.
Delegation leader's wife: One more thing, please send this film to be developed.
 When can it be developed and ready?
Hotel employee B: Is it black and white, or colour?
Delegation leader's wife: Colour.
Hotel employee B: It can be developed in four or five days.
Delegation leader's wife: We're obliged to you.
Hotel employee B: Have you both taken dinner yet?
Delegation leader: I've eaten already.
Delegation leader's wife: I'm too tired, I don't feel like eating.
 I would like you to bring me breakfast tomorrow in my room, can you?
Hotel employee B: I can, what would you like to eat?
Delegation leader's wife: Two slices of bread, a glass of milk and an egg, soft-boiled.
 Don't forget sugar and butter.
Hotel employee B: Certainly.

New words in this lesson

qìchē car
 jiā measure word for an establishment
 (here a hotel)
 míngzì name
 Xīnqiáo fàndiàn Xinqiao Hotel
 chēzhàn station
 liyòng make use of
 měi each, every
 xǐzǎojiān bathroom
 ānpái arrange
 hào number
 líng zero
 tuō entrust (to)
 xǐdé wash (wash + have ready)
 yùn press, iron
 jìnqu enter
 fúwùyuán attendant, steward
 jiǎ A: the first in a Chinese system
 of ordering things as an alternative to
 numbers
 qīng light
 gē put

hǎo de all right, very well
 sòngdào deliver to
 suìhòu soon after
 mǎshàng immediately
 sòngqu deliver
 gèwèi each of you (polite)
 shàng mount, get on
 diàntī lift
 yǐ B: the next in succession after jiǎ
 (see above)
 yílù the whole way, journey
 yílù shàng en route
 xīnkǔ tiring, gruelling
 méi shénme it is/was nothing
 yàoshi key
 fáng hào room number
 cún deposit
 fúwùtái service desk
 pái row
 zǒuláng corridor
 zuǒbian left side
 kāi open

kuāncháng spacious
 xiàngyáng facing the sun
 céng measure word for storey
 fēnfu give instructions (to)
 jīnhòu hereafter; from now on
 jīngcháng regularly; all the time
 qiánmian in front of
 diànlíng electric bell
 yào if
 shìqíng matter, business, thing
 suíshí at any time
 wòshì bedroom
 hòubian behind
 bíchú wall cupboard, closet
 nuǎnhú thermos jug
 lǐtōu inside
 kāishuǐ boiled water, boiling water
 chá yè tea leaves
 xìnfēng envelope
 xìnzhǐ writing paper
 chōuti drawer
 tuōxié slippers
 dīxia underneath

tǎnzi blanket
 chuáng measure word for blanket,
 sheet
 zěnmē bàn how does one manage?
 zhuāng put or pack (into a container)
 kǒudai bag
 qúnzi skirt
 tiáo measure word for trousers
 kùzi trousers
 hànshān vest; undershirt
 chōngxī develop (film)
 hēi-bái black and white
 cǎisè colour
 xīwàng hope; would like
 piàn slice
 miànbāo bread
 bēi cup (as measure word)
 niúǎi milk
 bànshēng half-cooked; soft-boiled
 jīdàn egg
 bái táng white sugar
 huángyóu butter
 xiǎode know (= zhīdao)

Notes

Part one

- Zhèi jiā fàndiàn míngzì jiào Xīnqiáo fàndiàn.** This hotel is called the Xinqiao Hotel.
míngzì jiào: lit. *it's name is called* This may be abbreviated to simply **jiào**: **Zhèi jiā fàndiàn jiào...**
- Měi ge fángjiān dōu yǒu xǐzǎojiān.** Every room has a bathroom.
Měi: each or every is habitually supported by the apparently redundant **dōu**: all before the following verb (though **dōu** is not obligatory). **Měi** takes a measure word.
- Yīfu, kěyǐ tuō fàndiàn gěi xǐ.** As to clothes, you can get the hotel to wash them for you.
a tuō: entrust This is used in the context of entrusting (getting) someone to do something, e.g. **tuō rén mǎi shū**: get a person to buy books. It is a matter of requesting, not demanding.
b gěi This is short for **gěi nǐmen**: for you
- Dì èr tiān jiù kěyǐ xǐdé.** The following day they can be washed and ready.

- dé** One of the functions of **dé** as the second element in resultative verbs is to denote completion and readiness (compare the “free” word **déle**: *ready*, as in L4: **Fàn yě déle**: *The food is ready too*).
- 5 ... **liǎng ge xiǎoshí jiù kěyǐ yùnhǎo**. *In two hours they can be pressed and ready.*
- a **liǎng ge xiǎoshí**: *in two hours* Expressions of time WITHIN WHICH an action takes place or does not take place come BEFORE the verb. Remember that “time at which” expressions come before the verb too, whereas “time how long” expressions, i.e. the length of time an action lasts, come AFTER the verb.
- b **-hǎo** You may recall that **hǎo** as the second element in resultative verbs indicates satisfactory completion. As such it is similar to **-dé**.

Part two

- 6 **Wǒ lái ná xíngli ba**. *I'll take your luggage.*
lái This **lái** indicates positive intention to engage in an activity; see L10, N10.
- 7 **Hǎo de, suíhòu mǎshàng sòngqu**. *Very well, I'll take them right up.*
suíhòu: lit. *following afterwards* **Suíhòu** and **mǎshàng**: *immediately* reinforce each other, though each would work perfectly well on its own in this sentence.
- 8 **Gèwèi de píxiāng, fúwùyuan dōu huì gěi sòngdào fángjiān lǐ qù de**,
As to the suitcases of all you people, the attendant will deliver them (in) to your rooms.
- a **huì** The scope of **huì** can extend from likelihood to guarantee of occurrence: it is used to assure someone that something will take place.
- b **de** This **de** lends the statement the tone of undoubted fact (see L10, N5b).
- 9 **Qǐng ná zhe ba**. *Please keep hold of them.*
-zhe extends the operativeness of verbs which by their nature are momentary in duration. To be exact, **ná** means *take hold of*; it clearly is the intention that the keys should CONTINUE to be held, and **-zhe** supplies that supplement. Compare **Qǐng zuò ba**: *Please sit down* and **Qǐng zuò zhe ba**: *Please be seated*.
- 10 **Yǒu, wòshì hòubian jiù shì**. *There is, it is behind the bedroom.*
jiù shì short for **jiù shì xǐzǎojiān**: *is (precisely) the bathroom*. **Jiù** introduces the very thing/person in question.
- 11 **Nǐmen hái yǒu yào wèn de ma?** *Have you anything else you want to ask?*
There is no noun specified for **yào wèn de**: *which you want to ask*; therefore it becomes a noun phrase: *that which you want to ask*.

- The whole sentence reads, word for word, *You in addition have that which you want to ask?*
- 12 **Míngtiān de zǎofàn, xīwàng nǐ gěi wǒ ná dào fángjiān lǐ lái, kěyǐ ma?**
Tomorrow's breakfast I would like you to bring for me to my room, is that all right?
- a **Míngtiān de zǎofàn** is the logical object of **nálai**: *bring*, but to extricate it from the clutter which follows the verb it is transposed as topic to the head of the sentence.
- b **xīwàng** The full force of the verb **xīwàng** is *hope*, but it is used in polite requests in the sense of *would like*.
- 13 **Xiǎodele**. *Understood.*
Xiǎode is synonymous with **zhīdao**: *know*. **Xiǎodele**, like **zhīdaole**, is a response to instructions: *I see, understood, or will do*.

Lesson fifteen

Making phone calls

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: The delegation's schedule was originally planned for them to arrive in Nanking next Monday.
But they wish very much to go and see the Peking Zoo.
Because in the Peking Zoo there are pandas.
They have never seen pandas before.
The schedule has been changed.
It has been changed so that they arrive in Nanking next Tuesday.

I have to make a phone call to the Nanking branch of the China International Travel Service.
I will tell them that the arrival day of the delegation in Nanking has been changed.

The leader of the delegation has a Chinese friend.
He is working in the Commercial Press.
The delegation leader wants to see him very much.
Because they have not seen each other for a very long time.
The delegation leader wants to phone the Commercial Press.
But he doesn't know the telephone number of that place.
The delegation leader asks me.
I can't remember exactly, either.
I ask for Directory Enquiries.
The telephone number of Telephone Information is 04.

Two

Making a long distance call

Wang Dawen: I want to make a long distance call.
It's Nanking 31276.
Operator: Please hang up and wait a moment.

Wang Dawen: Nanking is on the line now, please go ahead.
Hello!
Is that the Nanking branch office?

Nanking Br. employee: Yes.

Wang Dawen: This is Wang Dawen of the Peking main office.
I'd like to speak to Comrade Li Guangde.

Nanking Br. employee: Oh, is that Wang Dawen of the main office?
Comrade Li is just taking another call.
If it's convenient, I can take a message for him.

Wang Dawen:

Thank you.

But I'd like to talk with him directly.

I'm phoning from Peking, and I can't wait, so will you ask him to take my call.

Nanking Br. employee: All right.

Li Guangde:

This is Li Guangde.

Comrade Wang?

Sorry to have kept you waiting.

You're taking the visiting delegation to China to see all round Peking, aren't you?

Yes.

I want to tell you that their schedule has changed a little.

Is that so?

Which day are they coming to Nanking?

Originally they were arriving in Nanking next Monday.

But they want to go to the Peking Zoo whatever happens, therefore, it is put back one day, and has been changed to next Tuesday, that is they will arrive in Nanking on the fifteenth, at half past eleven in the morning.

Please wait a moment, I'll write that down.

It's the fifteenth, next Tuesday at half past eleven in the morning, is that right?

That's right, no mistake.

Wang Dawen:

Calling an old friend

Wang Dawen:

Hello!

Is that the exchange?

Operator:

Yes.

Wang Dawen:

Can you look up a number?

Operator:

Please ask Telephone Information directly.

Wang Dawen:

All right.

Wang Dawen:

Telephone Information?

Please give me the number of the Commercial Press.

Telephone Information: Commercial Press?

Please wait a moment . . .

It's 53 exchange, 6284.

Wang Dawen:

Sorry to trouble you.

Telephone Information: Not at all.

Wang Dawen:

Delegation leader, you're through.

Please go ahead.

Delegation leader:

Is that the Commercial Press?

Operator:

Yes.

Delegation leader:

I want to talk to Mr. Chen.

Operator:

There are three Comrades by the name of Chen, which one are you looking for?

Delegation leader:

The one I'm looking for is Mr. Chen Yimin.

Operator:

I understand.

Wait a moment, please.

You're through, please go ahead.

Delegation leader:

I want to talk to Mr. Chen Yimin.

- Chen Yimin: That's me.
May I have your name, please?
- Delegation leader: Ah, Mr. Chen?
Can you guess who I am?
- Chen Yimin: Ah, I know.
I got your letter a few days ago.
What date did you arrive in Peking?
- Delegation leader: I arrived on the tenth.
Have you been well all this time?
- Chen Yimin: Thank you, very well.
You must be very tired after your long journey to China.
- Delegation leader: No, I'm not tired.
I would like to see you very much.
I'm staying at the Xinqiao Hotel at the moment.
Can you fix a time and place to meet?
- Chen Yimin: I want to see you very much, too.
Then, this evening at seven o'clock, I'll go to the Xinqiao Hotel to visit you, is that all right?
- Delegation leader: That would be excellent.
My room number is five hundred and twenty-seven.
At seven o'clock today, I'll be in my room waiting for you.
I am taking up too much of your time.
See you later.
- Chen Yimin: Not at all.
See you later.

New words in this lesson

richéng schedule
yuánlái originally
yùdìng fix in advance; be planned to
Nánjīng Nanking
dòngwùyuán zoo
xióngmāo panda
fēnshè branch office
Shāngwù yīnshūguǎn Commercial Press
hàomǎ number
jìbùqīng unable to remember clearly
cháháotái Directory Enquiries
chángtú long distance
huàwùyuán operator
guàshang hang up
jiētōng connect up with, get through to
zǒngshè main office
zhèngzài just in the process of

jiē answer, take (a phone call)
zhuǎngào pass a message to
zhíjiē direct(ly)
gèdì various places, all over
diǎn a little (= (yì)diǎnr)
biàngēng alter, change
běnlái originally
huǎn postpone, delay
jiù shì that is to say
xiěxiàlái write down
jiùyǒu old friend
zōngjī exchange (operator)
chá look up (information)
jú office; exchange (telephone)
dǎtōng get through (on telephone)
xìng be surnamed
guìxìng? May I ask your name? (polite)
xìn letter

jiēdào receive
yíxiàng all along, consistently
lǎoyuǎn a very long way
zhídìng specify, fix

dìdiǎn location, place
děnghòu wait (for)
dānwu waste (time)
huítóu later; after a while

Notes

Part one

- 1 Dàibīǎotuán de rìchéng yuánlái yùdìng xià-xīngqīyī dào Nánjīng. *The delegation's schedule was originally planned for them to arrive in Nanking next Monday.*
Since the relationship between "subject" and predicate in a Chinese sentence is so loose, this could either be read as *The delegation's schedule fixed in advance (yùdìng) that they . . .*, or *According to the delegation's schedule, it was fixed in advance that . . .*
yuánlái: *originally* Note that this use of **yuánlái** is different from, though related to, that in **Yuánlái shì mài fēngzheng de:** *It turns out that it is a kite-seller* (L10).
- 2 Gǎizài xià-xīngqī'èr dàodá Nánjīng. *It has been changed so that they arrive in Nanking next Tuesday.*
gǎizài: lit. *changed to be on* (next Tuesday that they arrive in Nanking) *Change to* is expressed as **gǎi** plus the appropriate verb. If it is a time or place in question, that verb is **zài:** *to be in/at/on*. Some other examples: **Tā gǎichuān xīfú le:** *He has changed to wearing a (Western) suit* (from Chinese style clothes); **Nǐ děi gǎizuò gōnggòng qìchē:** *You have to change to (travel on) a bus.*
- 3 Wǒ yě jìbùqīng le. *I can't remember exactly either (now).*
jìbùqīng is a negative potential verb: *cannot . . .* **Qīng** is short for **qīngchu:** *clear*, so **jìbùqīng** means literally *cannot remember so that it is clear*.

Part two

- 4 Wǒ yào qǐng Lǐ Guǎngdé tóngzhì shuō huà. *I'd like to speak to Comrade Li Guangde.*
Literally this says *I want to request Comrade Li Guangde to speak (with me)*. Alternatively one could say **Wǒ zhǎo . . . shuō huà:** *I am looking for . . . to speak with.*
- 5 Lǐ tóngzhì zhèngzài jiē bié de diànhuà ne. *Comrade Li is just taking another call.*

zhèngzài: just in the process of This is an amplification of the progressive marker **zài**: engaged in, in the process of (see L3, N9). The particle **ne** also marks the progressive aspect.

- 6 **Wǒ shì cóng Běijīng dǎ de.** I'm phoning from Peking.

shì ~ de This is the construction used for explaining circumstances: *It is from Peking I am phoning.*

- 7 **Wǒ shuō, tāmen de rìchéng yǒu diǎn biàngēng le.** I (want to) say, their schedule has changed a little.

a **wǒ shuō**: lit. I say This phrase is used to draw attention to a topic. Similar phrases in English are "the point is", "you know", etc.

b **yǒu diǎn** (= **yǒu yidiǎnr**): somewhat or a little **Yǒu diǎn** modifying a full verb does not have the disagreeable connotations that it has when modifying a verbal adjective, as in **yǒu diǎn lěng**: somewhat cold.

- 8 **Běnlái shì xià-xīngqiyī dàodá Nánjīng.** Originally it was that they were arriving in Nanking on Monday.

běnlái: originally **Běnlái** corresponds to the one meaning of **yuánlái**, but not to the other (*it turns out that*). The following sentence points the difference: **Wǒ běnlái yǐwéi shì nǐ xiě de, yuánlái shì tā xiě de ya!**: Originally I thought that it was written by you (but) it turns out that it was written by him!

- 9 ... **gǎizài xià-xīngqī'èr, jiù shì shíwǔ hào shàngwǔ shíyī diǎn bàn dào Nánjīng.** and has been changed to next Tuesday, that is they arrive in Nanking on the fifteenth at half past eleven in the morning.

jiù shì: that is (to say) **Jiù shì** connects a statement with the amplification of it. As another example, **Zhǐ yǒu liǎng ge rén qù, jiù shì wǒ gēn nǐ**: There are only two people going, namely me and you.

- 10 **Qǐng děng yíxià.** Please wait a moment.

yíxià The verbal measure word **yíxià** may supply the same effect as reduplication of the verb, i.e. to minimize the action. Here **děng yíxià** is the same as **děngyíděng**.

- 11 **Xìng Chén de tóngzhì yǒu sān ge.** There are three comrades named Chen.

Literally this says, *As to comrades (sur)named Chen, there are three.* It is quite possible grammatically to follow the verb-object word order (**Yǒu sān ge xìng Chén de tóngzhì**), but it is more natural to start with the "topic" of those named Chen as that has already been mentioned. **Yǒu sān ge xìng Chén de tóngzhì** ... might also be incomplete—the first part of a pivotal construction.

- 12 **Wǒ jiù shì a, nín guìxìng?** I am he (the very person), what is your name please?

guìxìng: lit. honourable surname? This expression belongs to a language of courtesy which has generally dropped out among Chinese themselves, being replaced by the straightforward **Nǐ xìng shénme?**:

What are you named? Like the word **xiānsheng**: Mr., it is still employed when addressing foreigners.

- 13 **Nín de xìn wǒ qián jǐ tiān jiēdàole.** I got your letter a few days ago.
qián jǐ tiān: a few days ago In lesson 13 **qián sānshí fēn zhōng** was translated as *thirty minutes in advance*. **Qián**: in advance, beforehand could be equated with **qián**: ago if it were understood as preceding this or that time. For ago there is the alternative formulation **~ (yǐ)qián**, as in **liǎng ge yuè yǐqián**: two months ago.

- 14 **Nín shì jǐ hào dào de Běijīng?** What date did you arrive in Peking?
shì ~ de Remember that in this construction used to explain (or ask) when, why, where etc. something was done, the object, if there is one, may come before the final **de** (L4, N34b).

Lesson sixteen At the Tiananmen and the Old Palace Museum

Translation

One

Tang Yonghui: Today, Comrade Wang Dawen is busy, so he had me accompany the delegation to the Tiananmen Square and the Old Palace Museum.

The Tiananmen is located in the centre of Peking.

The Tiananmen is the symbol of new China.

Because on the 1st of October 1949, Chairman Mao proclaimed the establishment of the Chinese People's Republic on the Tiananmen.

The Tiananmen was built five or six hundred years ago.

But later it was destroyed by fire.

The Tiananmen of today was rebuilt in 1651.

Tiananmen Square can hold five hundred thousand people.

On each May Day and the National Day, assemblies and all kinds of festivities are held here.

Towering in the middle of the square is the monument to the heroes of the people.

The members of the delegation took a lot of souvenir pictures in front of the Tiananmen or the memorial monument.

We then went to look round the Great Hall of the People.

This building was built to mark the tenth anniversary of the founding of the State.

From the planning stage to completion, it only took ten months time.

Afterwards, we went in through the Tiananmen to look round the Old Palace Museum.

Because there were so many things, and our time was too short, we couldn't look carefully, all we could do was take a quick look round.

Nevertheless, the delegation members all said:

"We have learned a lot, today."

Two

In Tiananmen Square

Tang Yonghui: That watchtower in front is the Tiananmen.

Delegation member C: Oh, so we've finally come to Tiananmen Square!

Delegation member D: The Tiananmen is the main gate of the south side of the former Imperial Palace, isn't it?

Tang Yonghui:

That's right.

The former Imperial Palace is now called the "Old Palace". Going directly northwards in through the Tiananmen gate is the Old Palace Museum.

We'll go there later to look around.

Delegation member D: I've heard that Peking's big meetings are mostly all held in this Square.

How many people can this Square hold?

Tang Yonghui:

It can hold five hundred thousand people, and if you add the avenues on both sides, it can take a million people.

Delegation member C: This avenue in front of the Tiananmen is called the Chang'an Avenue, isn't it?

Tang Yonghui:

That's right.

Delegation member D: The road (surface) is really broad!

Tang Yonghui:

It is one hundred metres.

That big building on the west side of the Square is the famous Great Hall of the People.

On the east side are the Museum of Chinese History and the Museum of the Chinese Revolution.

Standing right in the middle of the Square is the monument to the heroes of the people.

Delegation member D: What is the meaning of the bas-reliefs all round?

Tang Yonghui:

These explain the great events of the Chinese nation in the past hundred years.

Delegation member C: Let's stand in front of the memorial, and take a photo as a souvenir.

In the Old Palace Museum

Tang Yonghui:

This Old Palace Museum was formerly called the "Forbidden City", it was the imperial palace of the two dynasties, Ming and Ching, and also was once the residence of twenty-four feudal emperors in all.

Now, it has returned to the hands of the people.

Today it is a precious cultural heritage of China.

Let's go in and have a look round.

Delegation member C: The Old Palace buildings are all very magnificent and splendid; the cultural relics on display are in turn all treasures of high artistic value.

It really is impressive.

Delegation member D: There are really a lot of visitors, is it like this every day?

Tang Yonghui:

Now it's like this every day.

Delegation member C:

Oh, is that so?

Tang Yonghui:

These exhibits are arranged in perfect order nowadays. Moreover, there are explanations attached, so that with one glance you can understand the luxurious living conditions of the emperors of the past, so that visiting the Old Palace Museum is like attending a lesson on class education.

Delegation member D: I imagined that all the relics on display in the Museum were things which the emperors and empresses used. But today I learned that there are also displayed cultural objects which have been unearthed very recently.

16 New words in this lesson

Tiān'ānmén guǎngchǎng Tiananmen Square
 Gùgōng bówùyuàn Old Palace Museum
 wèi situated
 yú in, at, on
 zhōngxīn centre
 xiàngzhēng symbol
 xuāngào proclaim
 Zhōnghuá rénmin gònghéguó Chinese People's Republic
 chénglì establish
 jiànchéng build (construct + complete)
 dàn but (= dànshi)
 huǒ fire
 shāohuǐ destroy (burn + destroy)
 chóngxīn anew
 xiūjiàn repair and build
 róngnà hold, contain
 wàn ten thousand
 měiféng on every occasion of
 Wǔ-yījié May Day
 Guóqīngjié National Day
 zhèlǐ here
 jǔxíng hold (meeting, ceremony)
 jíhuì assembly
 qīngzhù celebrate
 huódòng activities
 chùlì stand erect; to tower
 guǎngchǎng square (in towns and cities)
 zhōngyāng the centre of
 Rénmín yīngxióng jiniànbēi People's Heroes Monument
 zhào take (photograph)
 jiniànxīàng souvenir photographs
 Rénmín dàhuitáng Great Hall of the People
 jiànzhù building
 wèi in order to
 jiniàn commemorate
 jiànguó founding of the state
 zhōunián anniversary
 ér and (conjunction used in connection with wèi)
 jiànzhào construct
 shèjì plan, design
 wángōng complete the work; completion
 jǐnjīn merely, barely
 gōngfu time
 cóng by way of
 xī closely, carefully
 zǒumǎ-kànhuā "looking at flowers from a galloping horse": cursorily
 biàn time (one occurrence)
 shōuhuò harvest; gain
 qiánbianr (in) front
 chénglóu watch-tower
 zhōngyú finally
 Huángchéng Imperial City or Palace
 nánmiàn south side
 zhèngmén main gate
 jiàozuò be called
 yízhí directly
 xiàng towards
 běi north
 jiāshàng add
 Cháng'ānjiē Changan Avenue
 lùmiàn road (surface)
 kuānuò wide
 mǐ metre
 xīmiàn west side
 dōngmiàn east side
 bówùguǎn museum
 Zhōngguó lìshǐ bówùguǎn Museum of Chinese History
 Zhōngguó géming bówùguǎn Museum of the Chinese Revolution
 shùlì (to) erect
 sìzhōu on all sides
 fúdiào carving in relief; bas-relief
 yìsi meaning
 shuōmíng explain
 láifor, over (a period of time)
 guójiā state, country
 dàshì major event
 bēi stone; monument
 xiàng photograph
 zuò as
 yǐqián formerly
 Zǐjīnchéng Forbidden City
 Míng Ming (dynasty)
 Qīng Qing (dynasty)
 dài dynasty
 huánggōng Imperial Palace
 céngjīng previously
 qián-hòu from first to last; in all

fēngjiàn feudal
 huángdì emperor
 jūsuǒ residence
 rénmin people
 zhēngui precious
 wénhuà culture; cultural
 yìchǎn heritage
 zhuànglǐ magnificent
 xióngwěi impressive, splendid
 zhǎnchū display
 wénwù cultural relics
 jùyǒu have (as an abstract property)
 gāodù high; high degree of
 yìshù art; artistic
 zhēnpǐn treasure
 liǎobuqǐ extraordinary; tremendous

chénlièpǐn exhibits
 zhěnglǐ arrange, put in order
 yǒutiáo-bùwěn in perfect order
 bìngqiě moreover (= érqiě)
 fùyǒu have attached
 liǎojiě understand
 shēchǐ luxurious, extravagant
 qíngkuàng condition, circumstances
 shàng attend (lesson)
 jiējī (social) class
 jiàoyù education
 kè lesson
 yíyàng the same
 hòufēi empress
 chūtǔ excavate, unearth

16

Notes

Part one

- 1 **Tiān'ānmén wèi yú Běijīng zhōngxīn.** *The Tiananmen is located in the centre of Peking.*
wèi yú: is located in **Wèi yú** is literary style Chinese; the common term is simply **zài**.
- 2 **Yīnwèi yī-jiǔ-sì-jiǔ nián shíyuè yīrì . . .** *Because on the 1st of October 1949 . . .*
 Unlike the practice in English, the word **nián**: year is invariably supplied in dates in Chinese. Since **yī-jiǔ-sì-jiǔ** specifies what year, naturally it precedes **nián**.
- 3 **Dàn hòulái bèi huǒ shāohuǐle.** *But later it was destroyed by fire.*
hòulái: later or afterwards **Hòulái** should be distinguished from the adverb **yǐhòu**. The former is only used of past events, the latter refers predominantly to the future: *after this, in future*. **Yǐhòu** is of course also used at the end of a phrase or clause in the sense of *after*.
- 4 **Měiféng Wǔ-yījié huò Guóqīngjié jiù zài zhèlǐ jǔxíng jíhuì hé gè zhǒng qīngzhù huódòng.** *Every May Day or National Day there are held here assemblies and all sorts of festive activities.*
 a **měiféng:** every Actually this is a verbal expression: *every time it gets to*. It governs recurrent events or occasions. **Měidào** is used in the same way.
 b **Wǔ-yījié:** May Day (also called **Láodòngjié**: Labour Day) **Wǔ-yī** is a contraction of **wǔyuè yīrì**: May 1st.

- c **Guóqíngjié**: *National Day*, i.e. October 1st, the day of the founding of the People's Republic.
- 5 **Wǒmen yòu qù cānguān Rénmín dàhuítáng.** *We then went to look round the Great Hall of the People.*
yòu: then or next This adverb is used of some action which has followed another (note the past tense). See L4, N15.
- 6 **Zhèi zuò jiànzhù shì wèi jiniàn jiànguó shí zhōunián ér jiànào de.**
This building was built in order to commemorate the tenth anniversary of the founding of the state.
wèi ~ ér ~: ~ in order to ~; ~ for the sake of ~ In this construction **wèi** introduces the purpose, aim or cause, and **ér** acts as a conjunction between this and the main verb. In this instance, **jiànào**: constructed is the main verb, and **jiniàn jiànguó shí zhōunián**: commemorate the tenth anniversary of the founding of the state the purpose (L10, N2a).
- 7 ... **jǐnjǐn yòngle shí ge yuè de gōngfu.** ... only took ten months' time.
- a **jǐnjǐn**: only or merely or barely **Jǐnjǐn** is similar to **zhǐ**: only, but is limited to that which only just reaches the stated level or amount: "barely" is then the nearest English equivalent.
- b **gōngfu**: time In this sentence **gōngfu** means no more than **shíjiān**; elsewhere it may mean *spare time* (**Míngtiān yǒu gōngfu ma?**: Will you have time tomorrow?) or *time and effort* (spent in learning something).
- 8 **Jiēzhe wǒmen yòu cóng Tiān'ānmén jìnqù cānguānle Gùgōng bówùyuàn.**
Afterwards we (next) went in through the Tiananmen to look round the Old Palace Museum.
cóng: by way of, via, through Note this meaning for **cóng**, additional to *from*. It is this meaning which is relevant in such common utterances as **Qǐng cóng zhèibian lái**: Please come this way (lit. by way of this side).
- 9 ... **zhǐhǎo zǒumǎ-kànhuā de kànle yí biàn.** ... all we could do was to take a quick look round.
- a **zhǐhǎo**: the only thing to do See L6, N13b.
- b **yí biàn**: once "Once", as applied to an action, may be expressed as **yí cì**, **yí huí** or **yí biàn**. **Yí cì** and **yí huí** are mostly interchangeable, but **yí biàn** has the connotation of "through", or "from beginning to end": **Zhèi běn shū wǒ kànle yí biàn**: I read this book once through.

Part two

- 10 **Kěyǐ róngnà wǔshiwàn rén,** *It can hold five hundred thousand people,*
wàn: ten thousand **Wàn** is the next unit of counting superior to **qiān**: thousand. There is no separate word for "million"; that has to be expressed as $100 \times 10,000$: **bǎiwàn**.

- bǎi, qiān** and **wàn**, when referring to people, do not require the measure word **ge** before **rén**: **wǔqiān (ge) rén**: five thousand people.
- 11 **Sìzhōu de fúdiào shì shénme yìsi?** *What is the meaning of the bas-reliefs all round?*
 The question "what is the meaning of ...?", "What does ... mean?" is posed in Chinese in the order given above: ... **shì shénme yìsi?**, e.g. **Zhèige zì shì shénme yìsi?** *What does this word mean?* **Shì ~ yìsi** should be distinguished from **yǒu yìsi**: (be) interesting.
- 12 **Zhèxiē shì shuōmíng Zhōngguó yībǎi nián lái de guójiā dàshì.** *These explain the great national events in China over the past hundred years.*
lái Suffixed to a time phrase, **lái** indicates that that time extends unbroken to the present. **Yībǎi nián lái** therefore means "over the length of a hundred years till now", or more simply, *over the past hundred years*.
- 13 **Wǒmen zhānzài bēi qián zhào ge xiàng zuò jiniàn ba.** *Let's stand in front of the memorial and take a photograph as a souvenir.*
 a **zhào ge xiàng**: take a photo (**Yí ge** is not always limited to ONE. Like the English translation, it could mean "do a bit of photo-taking". This especially applies to verb-object constructions. Compare **Chàng ge gē ba**: Let's sing a song/have a sing-song.
 b **zuò**: as The full meaning of **zuò** is to act as, to serve as, to be (in that limited sense). It may feature in a subordinate phrase, as here, or stand as an independent verb, e.g. **Wǒ zuò zhǔxí**: I'll be/act as chairman.
- 14 **Zhèige Gùgōng, yǐqián jiàozuò "Zìjinchéng" ...** *This Old Palace, previously called the "Forbidden City" ...*
jiàozuò: called As the second element in compound verbs, **zuò** is the equivalent of *as* in English, e.g. **kànzuò**: regard as. In the same way, **jiàozuò** can be glossed as *named as*.
- 15 **zhǎnchū de wénwù, yòu dōu shì jùyǒu gāodù yìshù jiàzhí de zhēnpǐn.**
The cultural relics on display are in turn all treasures of high artistic value.
 a **yòu**: in turn or again **Yòu** has this meaning when the subject changes but the sentiments expressed are similar: the building has just been praised, now it is the turn of the cultural treasures.
 b **jùyǒu**: have The meaning of this verb may be expanded as *be equipped with, be imbued with*.
 It takes as object abstract nouns, e.g. **Tāmen jùyǒu zhè zhǒng jīngshén**: They are imbued with this spirit.
- 16 **suǒyǐ cānguān Gùgōng bówùyuàn, jiù gēn shàng jiēji jiàoyù kè yíyàng.**
Therefore visiting the Old Palace Museum is then the same as attending a lesson on class education.

- a *gēn ~ yíyàng*: the same as ~ Also found are *hé ~ yíyàng* and *xiàng ~ yíyàng*
 b *shàng jiēji jiàoyù kè*: attending a lesson on class education. *Shàng kè* is a verb-object construction, meaning *attend a class* or *lesson*. Here the two are split by an adjective phrase describing the kind of lesson: a *class education* lesson.

Lesson seventeen At the market

Translation

One

Delegation leader: It is two days since we, the visiting delegation to China, arrived in Peking.
 Today is Sunday, a day of free activities.
 Mr. Wang says he will take us shopping today.
 Mr. Wang comes in all smiles, and shakes hands with us.
 Having sat down a while he then takes us shopping.
 We ask him where we're going shopping.
 He asks us what kind of things we want to buy.
 We tell him we want to buy a few presents to take back with us.
 He says, "The Dongfeng Market is very close to the hotel where you are staying, moreover, there are a lot of trades (represented) there, and there is a complete range of goods there; it would be best to go there to shop."
 He says, the Dongfeng Market is the most famous market in Peking.
 It already has a history of a good few decades.

The Dongfeng Market on Wangfujing Avenue was formerly called the Dong'an Market.
 At the time of the Great Cultural Revolution, it was renamed Dongfeng Market.
 There are really a lot of customers in the market.
 The sales people are also busy dealing with the customers.
 This is probably because it's Sunday.

Two

Buying presents

Delegation leader: Wow, there really are a lot of customers here!
Delegation member A: Mr. Wang, are there as many on normal days as well?
Wang Dawen: On normal days, there are not a few, either. Today is Sunday, so it's especially crowded.
Delegation leader: I would like to buy some presents to take back, but I don't know what to buy (for the best).
Wang Dawen: Please take your time looking.
Delegation member A: I say, look, those little clay figures are made so life-like.
Delegation leader: They're really not bad, how about buying one?
Delegation member A: You're right.
 Comrade, please pass over those little clay figures for us to see, will you?

- Salesgirl:* Which one?
This one?
- Delegation leader:* That's right.
- Salesgirl:* Please take a look.
- Delegation leader:* How much is one of these big ones?
- Salesgirl:* Six yuan.
- Delegation leader:* And the small ones?
- Salesgirl:* The small ones are one yuan and two mao each.
- Delegation leader:* The big ones take up too much room, and they're also difficult to carry, I'll buy three small ones.
- Delegation member A:* I have a lot of children at home, and I want to give them to my friends, too, let me reckon how many I need to buy ... let me have seven.
- Salesgirl:* How much are they altogether?
- Salesgirl:* Yours are seven, that will be nine yuan, one mao altogether. This gentleman's are three, three yuan, nine mao.
- Delegation leader:* I'll pay together.
- Delegation member A:* No, let's pay for our own.
- Salesgirl:* This is five yuan of yours, so I'll give you one yuan, one mao change.
This is ten yuan of yours, so I'll give you nine mao change. Please count it.
- Delegation member A:* Correct.
- Delegation leader:* I would also like to buy a flower vase.
- Salesgirl:* The flower vases are over there, please go over there.
- Delegation leader:* Do you prefer the cloisonne one, or do you prefer the engraved lacquer one?
- Delegation member A:* I think they are both pretty good, but the engraved lacquer one is a bit expensive.
- Delegation leader:* Mr. Wang, what do you think?
- Wang Dawen:* I think that they are both very exquisitely made.
- Delegation leader:* Then, I'll buy this cheaper one.
- Delegation member A:* I also want to get some small toys for the children.
- Wang Dawen:* All right, over there they are selling them.

Buying fruit

- Delegation leader:* We'll leave buying presents till we come next time, today let's buy some fruit to take back to the hotel to eat, all right?
- Delegation member A:* Excellent.
- Wang Dawen:* To buy fruit, we'll have to go a bit further in.
- Delegation leader:* I see it.
The fruit seller is over there.
- Delegation member A:* What kind of pear is this?
- Salesgirl:* This is the yali.
- Wang Dawen:* This pear is very famous in China.
It's both crisp and sweet and, moreover, very juicy.
- Delegation leader:* How do you sell these pears?
- Salesgirl:* We sell them singly.
- Delegation member A:* And the grapes?
- Salesgirl:* The grapes according to jin.
- Delegation leader:* How many kilogrammes is a jin equivalent to?

- Salesgirl:* It's equivalent to five hundred grammes.
- Delegation leader:* Is it?
Please weigh me one jin of grapes, and wrap up four pears.
Please choose the pears yourself.
Please choose four for me.
All right, don't you need anything else?
- Salesgirl:* These apples look really tasty, too, let's buy some apples.
- Delegation member A:* How many do you want?
- Salesgirl:* Give us seven.
- Delegation member A:* How much is that altogether?
- Delegation leader:* Counting both the pears and grapes, altogether it comes to six mao, two fen.
- Salesgirl:* All right, please give me the change.
I give you back three mao, eight fen, I'll wrap them for you, wait a moment, please.

New words in this lesson

shìchǎng market
huódòng activities
dài take (a person somewhere)
xiàoxī all smiles
wǒshǒu shake hands
lǐwù present(s)
hángyè trade, line of business
shāngpǐn goods (for sale)
qíquán (be) comprehensive
zuìhǎo it would be best
cóngqián formerly
Dōng'ān shìchǎng Dongan Market
Wénhuà dàgémíng The (Great)
Cultural Revolution
gǎichéng rename
-wéi as
yìngfú deal with, cope with
guānxi connection, relevance
yīnwèi ~ de guānxi in connection with,
due to, because of
yōngjǐ crowded
qiáo look
nírén clay figurine
shēnqì life-like
qián money

kuài common term for yuan (currency)
zhàn occupy, take up (space, time)
fù pay
gè each, every
zhǎo give change
shǔ count
Jīngtāilán cloisonne enamel
diāoqī carved lacquer
jīngqiǎo delicate, exquisite
xiǎowányìr trifle, little thing
shuǐguǒ fruit
lí pear
yārlǐ type of pear, produced in Peking
region
cuì crisp
tián sweet
shuǐfèn juice (content)
lùn in terms of, according to
gèr single unit
pútao grape
jīn unit of weight (500 gr.)
gōngjīn kilogramme
kè gramme
yāo weigh
fēn one hundredth of a yuan

Notes

Part one

- 1 Wǒmen Fǎng-Huá dàibiǎotuán láidào Běijīng liǎng tiān le. It is two days since we, the visiting delegation to China, arrived in Peking.

In this sentence you will notice that the time phrase comes after the verb. We have met it in this position before, when it expresses how long the action lasts. Here it is a question of time *SINCE* something took place, with the important proviso that nothing has changed in the meantime—they are still in Peking.

- 2 **Wáng xiānsheng shuōshì jīntiān dài wǒmen qù mǎi dōngxī.** *Mr. Wang said that today he would take us to buy things (i.e. do some shopping).*
shuōshì: *said that* This is used to introduce reported speech: see L12, N9. A plain **shuō** could be used, too.
- 3 **Wǒmen duì tā shuō xiǎng mǎi diǎnr lǐwù dàihuíqu.** *We say to him we want to buy some presents to take back with us.*
a duì tā shuō: *say to him* Two other prepositions which can be used in conjunction with **shuō** are **gēn** and **hé**: **gēn tā shuō**, **hé tā shuō**. All three translate as *say to*.
b diǎnr: *some* Most often **(yì)diǎnr** modifies generalized nouns like **shuǐ:** *water* or **ròu:** *meat* (**chī diǎnr ròu:** *eat some (a little) meat*). As we see now, it can also modify some nouns which one thinks of as measured in separate units, like **lǐwù:** *presents*; but these nouns are still conceived in general terms: there is no thought at this stage of specific presents.
- 4 **... zuìhǎo dào nàlǐ qù mǎi.** *... it would be best to go there to buy.*
zuìhǎo: *it would be best to* This always prefaces whatever is to be proposed. It should be distinguished from **zhǐ hǎo:** **zuìhǎo** indicates the best of several alternatives, **zhǐhǎo** is used in the absence of any valid alternative: “the only thing to do is ...”.
- 5 **Yǐjīng yǒu hǎo jǐshí nián de lìshǐ le.** *It already has a history of a good few decades.*
 We have already met **hǎo jǐ ~:** *a good few ~*. **Hǎo jǐ nián** would mean *a good few years*; **hǎo jǐshí nián**, according to the same pattern, is *a good few tens of years, or several decades*.
- 6 **... gǎichēngwéi Dōngfēng shìchǎng.** *... it was renamed Dongfeng Market.*
gǎichēngwéi: *lit. changed to be designated as* **Wéi:** *as is the* equivalent in formal language of the colloquial **zuò**; compare **jiàozuò:** *named as*. Like **zuò**, its use is not confined to verb endings, e.g. **Dàjiā xuǎn tā wéi tuánzhǎng:** *Everybody elected him as delegation leader*.
- 7 **Shòuhuòyuánmen yě dōu zài mángzhe yìngfú kèrén.** *The sales people are also busy dealing with customers.*
mángzhe: *busy* *Busy doing something (when “busy” is subordinate to another verb) is expressed as mángzhe, rather than máng.* Another example: **Tā lái de shíhòu wǒ zhèng mángzhe chī fàn ne:** *When he came I was just busy eating.*

- 8 **... kěshì bù zhīdào mǎi shénme hǎo.** *... but I didn't know what it would be best to buy.*
 The indirect question introduced by **bù zhīdào** is phrased exactly as it would have been if asked directly: **Mǎi shénme hǎo?:** *What would it be best to buy?* For this use of **hǎo** see L5, N17.
- 9 **Qǐng nǐmen mànmanr de qiáo ba.** *Please take your time looking.*
a mànmanr de: *at leisure* Remember that adverbs when reduplicated may alter in meaning (L5, N25c). **Màn** is *slow*, but **mànmanr de** may mean *gradually, at leisure*, as it does here.
b qiáo: *look* **Qiáo** is a colloquial equivalent of **kàn**.
- 10 **Shì nǐge? Shì zhèige ma?** *Which one is it? Is it this one?*
 The saleswoman replies here in the singular (*Which one?*), whereas the visitor posed the question in the plural (**nà jǐ ge:** *those few*). Presumably the delegation member is pointing to a group, and the saleswoman is offering a sample.
- 11 **Liù kuài qián.** *Six yuan.*
 In everyday money dealings the official currency unit **yuán** is called **kuài (qián)**, just the same as **jiǎo** is called **máo**.
- 12 **Dà de tài zhàn dìfang.** *The big ones take up too much room.*
Zhàn dìfang is treated as one linguistic unit in Chinese, *take-up-space*, therefore **tài:** *too* modifies the whole phrase, rather than just the word for *space*.
- 13 **Bù, háishi gè fù gè de ba.** *No, let's rather each pay for our own.*
gè fù gè de is literally, *each pay for each's (purchase)*.
- 14 **Nín zhè shì wǔ kuài qián,** *This is five yuan (you have given me).*
 The seller would be still holding the banknote, so says **Zhè shì wǔ kuài qián:** *This is five yuan.* **Nín** may be glossed as **nínde:** *of yours*—to distinguish it from the other person's money.
- 15 **... zhǎo nín yí kuài yì máo.** *I'll give you in change one yuan one mao.*
zhǎo **Zhǎo** normally means *look for*, but in the special context of buying and selling, it means *give in change (a certain amount)*, or *give change*, as in **Bú yòng zhǎo le:** *No need to give change—Keep the change.* In the latter sense, **qián:** *money* can be added: **Qīng nǐ zhǎo qián ba:** *Please give me the change.*
- 16 **Lǐwù xiàcì zài lái mǎi.** *As for presents, we'll come and buy them next time.*
zài This is the **zài** which stands for postponement: *We'll leave it to the next time to buy them* (L5, N12).
- 17 **Mǎi shuǐguǒ, hái děi zài wàng lǐbianr zǒu.** *To buy fruit, we still have to go further in.*

zài This **zài** means *further* or *more* (compare L11, N5b). **Zài wàng lǐbianr zǒu** is literally *further towards the inside go*.

18 ... **érqiě shuǐfèn yòu duō**. ... *moreover it has a lot of juice*.
yòu: and again **Yòu** here reinforces **érqiě**: *moreover*. They mean approximately the same thing.

19 **Lùn gèr mài**. *They are sold singly*.
lùn: in terms of **Lùn gèr** means *in terms of (single) ones*. **Lùn**, followed by a unit of measure, also translates as *by*: **lùn jīn mài**: *sell by the "jin"*.

20 **Lián lí dài pútáo, suànzài yíkuàir, yígòng shì liù máo èr fēn qián**.
Including the pears and the grapes, reckoning them together, altogether it is six yuan, two fen.

a **lián ~ dài ~**: including both ~ and ~. See L7, N6.

b **suànzài yíkuàir**: *reckon together* **Yíkuàir** follows the verb here because the sense is *reckon so that they are together*. The pears, grapes and apples are not together doing something. In short, if **yíkuàir** describes the manner in which an action is performed, it precedes the verb; if it describes a state which results from an action, it follows the verb.

Lesson eighteen Sending mail and telegrams

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: The foreign visitor wishes to send a picture postcard and a letter. He also wishes to send a parcel. There is a post office in the Xinqiao Hotel. The post office is on the first floor. Here, registered letters, airmail letters and parcels can all be sent, telegrams can be sent, too. Office hours are from nine o'clock in the morning until six o'clock in the afternoon; on Sundays it is closed. The other hotels almost all have post offices, too.

The foreign visitor suddenly remembers an urgent matter when he is on his way (somewhere). He wishes to send a telegram.

I take him to the post and telegraph office. The telecommunications office handles mail and telegrams. Among telegrams, there are ordinary telegrams, urgent telegrams and letter telegrams. In addition it also handles telephotos (radiophotos). It is also possible to make long-distance phone calls.

When you send a telegram, you may use any language. But you should write it in Roman letters.

Two

Sending letters

Delegation leader: I'm sorry to trouble you, but I would like to send this picture postcard and this letter to France, how much will that be?

Clerk: Are you sending them ordinary mail or airmail?

Delegation leader: How many days does ordinary mail take? Would it get there in ten days?

Clerk: It certainly couldn't get there in ten days. If it's airmail it could get there in about a week.

Delegation leader: Then, please send them by airmail.

Clerk: All right. The paste and airmail stickers are over there, please paste them on yourself.

Delegation leader: I also want to send this parcel.

Clerk: What's packed inside?

- Delegation leader:* Please take a look at what's inside.
Clerk: There are a stuffed toy panda and some small toys!
Delegation leader: That's right.
 I bought them in the Dongfeng Market.
Clerk: All right, they're all tax free.
 After you've wrapped them up, please use thin string to tie them firmly.
Delegation leader: All right.
Clerk: Do you want to send it by ordinary parcel (post) or by airmail?
Delegation leader: Um, I'd rather send it by ordinary parcel post. But I'd like to register it.
Clerk: I see, an airmail postcard, an airmail letter, and the parcel are eight yuan, one jiao and five fen, altogether.
Delegation leader: Here are eight yuan, one jiao and five fen.
Clerk: Please keep this receipt of registration.
Delegation leader: Ah, have you any commemorative stamps?
Clerk: There are several kinds displayed in that glass case.
Delegation leader: Please give me some for eight fen and some for three jiao.
Clerk: Each set is of ten stamps.
 How many sets do you want?
Delegation leader: Give me three sets of eight fen, and two sets of three jiao.
Clerk: All right.
Delegation leader: Much obliged.
Clerk: Not at all.

Sending a telegram

- Delegation leader:* Mr. Wang, I want to go to the telegraph office to send a telegram.
Wang Dawen: In the hotel too there is a post office, do you want to send it at once?
Delegation leader: I've just suddenly remembered an urgent matter, and I want to send it at once.
 Do I have to go back to the hotel to send it?
Wang Dawen: That's not necessary.
Delegation leader: Is the telegraph office far from here?
Wang Dawen: Peking City Post Office is a bit far.
 But there is a telegraph office near here, too.
 Do you see that building over there? That is the telegraph office.
Delegation leader: Then let's go to that office.
Wang Dawen: Comrade, excuse me, at which (number) window are international telegrams handled?
Clerk: Window number eight.
Delegation leader: Are international telegrams sent here?
Clerk: That's right, where do you want to send it to?
Delegation leader: I want to send it to England, please give me a telegram form, will you?
Clerk: Please write clearly.
Delegation leader: I see.
 Can I use English to send it?
Clerk: You can, provided you use Roman letters, you can write it in any foreign language.

- Delegation leader:* I see.
 Ah, my fountain pen has run out of ink, please lend me a ballpoint pen to use, will you?
Clerk: Please use this.
Delegation leader: Oh dear, I've written one word wrongly.
Clerk: It will be all right to change it, it doesn't matter.
Delegation leader: Doesn't it?
 Take a look, will it do like this?
Clerk: That's correct, except you haven't written the address of the receiver.
Delegation leader: Ah, I forgot it.
 I've written it, now.
Clerk: Oh, at the bottom, the name and address of the sender also needs to be filled in.
 If you have a telephone, please put down the telephone number, as well.
Delegation leader: I see.
 Is it correct like this?
Clerk: Very good.
 Are you going to send it by ordinary telegram, or by urgent telegram?
 If it's not an urgent matter, what about sending it by letter telegram?
 The telegraph cost is rather more economical.
Delegation leader: Is it?
 But my matter is very urgent, please send it by urgent telegram.
Clerk: If sent by urgent telegram, the telegram cost will be twice as much as the ordinary telegram.
Delegation leader: Can it get there tomorrow?
Clerk: Most probably it can.
Delegation leader: It can? I understand.

New words in this lesson

jì send
 yóujiàn mail
 diànbào telegram
 dǎ diànbào send a telegram
 fēngjǐng scenery
 míngxìnpǐàn postcard
 fēngjǐng míngxìnpǐàn picture postcard
 fēng measure word for a letter
 xìn letter
 bāoguǒ parcel
 yóujú post office
 guàhàoxìn registered letter
 hángkōngxìn airmail letter

xiǎngqilai recall, remember
 jiàn measure word for a matter
 jíshì urgent matter
 yóudiànjú post and telegraph office
 pǔtōng diànbào ordinary telegram
 jiājí diànbào express telegram
 shūxìn diànbào letter telegram
 chuánzhēn diànbào radiophoto
 nǎguóhuà language of any country
 Lǎdīng zìmǔ Roman letters
 Fǎguó France
 píngxìn ordinary mail
 -bùliǎo not able to

dàobùliǎo not able to arrive
xīngqī week
hángkōng air, aviation
hángkōngqiān airmail label
féngzhì sew and make (a toy)
miǎnshuì tax free
xì thin
shéng string, cord
kǔn tie, bind
kǔnjiēshì tie firmly
àn according to; by
guàhào (to) register
shōu receive, accept
shōuhǎo keep, put away
yóupiào postage stamp
bōlichú glass case
jīnjí urgent
bùbì be unnecessary
Běijīngshì yóujú Peking City Post Office
fùjìn near, in the neighbourhood of
zhè fùjìn near here
lóufáng storied building

guójì international
chuāngkǒu window, position (in post office etc.)
yíngyèyuán clerk
fā despatch
Yīngguó England
diànbào zhǐ telegram form
qīngchū clear
wàiwén foreign language
jīnbǐ fountain pen
chū produce
shuǐ liquid (= mòshuǐ: ink)
jiègěi lend to
yuánzhūbǐ ballpoint pen
shōubàorén recipient (of telegram)
zhùzhǐ address
xiàbianr (at the) bottom
fābàorén sender of telegram
xìngmíng name (family and personal)
diànbào fèi telegram charge or cost
jīngjì economical
bèi times, -fold

Notes

Part One

- 1 Dǎ diànbào, yòng nǎguóhuà dōu kěyǐ. (With regard to) sending telegrams, it is permissible to use the language of any country.
nǎ ~ dōu ~: whichever ~ (still) ~ Indefinite interrogative words (like nǎ, nǐ, shuí, shénme) have a comprehensive sense when followed by yě or dōu before the main verb. The effect is comparable to the addition of the suffix -ever in English, or at all. So nǎguó is whichever country; in the negative, Wǒ shénme diànbào dōu bù yào dǎ is I don't want to send any telegram at all.

Part two

- 2 Píngxìn yào duōshao tiān? Shí tiān kěyǐ dào ma? Ordinary mail takes how many days? Can it reach there in ten days?
Contrast these two time phrases: duōshao tiān is "time how long"; shí tiān is "time within which". The former comes after the verb, the latter before it.

- 3 ... dàgài yǒu yí ge xīngqī jiù kěyǐ dào. It probably could get there in about a week.
yǒu Yǒu coming before a quantity may just convey that the figure is an estimation—"about". But it may also indicate measuring UP TO a certain point, when it has the sense of as much as, not less than; for instance Tāde hái zi sì suì means simply Her child is four years old, but Tāde hái zi yǒu sì suì means Her child is as much as four (no younger).
4 Bāohǎo yǐhòu, qīng yòng xì shéng kǔnjiēshì diǎnr. After you have wrapped it, please use thin string to tie it firmly.
There are two resultative verbs in this sentence: bāohǎo: wrap so that it is satisfactory, and kǔnjiēshì: tie so that it is firm. In jiēshì diǎnr: rather firm, diǎnr does not signify of course that it only needs to be a little firm, it is just used to give a mild tone to a request.
5 Shì àn pǔtōng bāoguǒ jì ne, hái shì àn hángkōng yóujiàn jì ne? Are you sending it by ordinary parcel (post), or by airmail?
àn The full meaning of àn is according to: àn huìjià duìhuàn: change (money) according to the rate of exchange. In this instance it is more natural to translate àn as by.
6 N, hái shì jì pǔtōng bāoguǒ ba. Um, I'd rather send it ordinary parcel (post).
jì pǔtōng bāoguǒ is just an alternative way of putting àn pǔtōng bāoguǒ jì. Jì may either join with the preposition àn, or it may take, grammatically speaking, a direct object, when its meaning extends to send by or send as.
7 A, yǒu shénme jìniàn yóupiào ma? Oh, have you any commemorative stamps?
shénme is used in an indefinite sense here: any. If there were not a question particle ma at the end of this question (which indicates the question does not lie in shénme), then shénme WOULD be used in its interrogative sense: Yǒu shénme jìniàn yóupiào? What commemorative stamps have you?
8 Gěi wǒ bā fēn de sān tào, sān jiǎo de liǎng tào ba. Give me three sets of eight fen, and two sets of three jiao.
Literally this says Give me of the eight fen ones three sets ... The word order simply follows the process of thought: first you mention the objects, then you decide about them. If you have it all worked out in advance, you can say Gěi wǒ sān tào bā fēn de.
9 Nà dào bú bì. That's not necessary.
dào: in fact Dào still has the basic sense of "contrary to what you might think" (L5, N23a), but at the same time it acts as a "filling in" word in appropriate contexts, and it is not necessary always to account for it separately in translation.
10 Nín kànjian nèi zuò lóufáng le méiyǒu? Do you see that building?

Wáng Dàwén is pointing the building out, and asks Do you see it now (le)? or *Have you caught sight of it now?* The answer is **Kànjian le**: *I see it now*. The idiom is different from the English.

- 11 **Gúoji diànbào shì zài zhèr fā ma?** *Are international telegrams sent here?*
shì *Shì* is used to the same effect as “it is the case that” in English (L9, N18b).
- 12 **Duì, nín yào wàng nǎ dǎ diànbào?** *That's right, where do you want to send a telegram to?*
wàng: *towards* **Wàng** has to be translated as *to* here, but it is not the same as **dào**. **Wàng** normally means *in the general direction of*: for instance one says for *go south wàng nán zǒu*, not *dào nán zǒu*. **Nǐ yào dào nǎ dǎ diànbào** would mean *Where are you going to to send a telegram?*
- 13 **A, wǒde jīnbǐ bù chū shuǐ le,** *Oh, my fountain pen has run out of ink, bù chū shuǐ le*: lit. *not producing ink any more* The full word for ink is **mòshuǐ**.
- 14 **Aiyà, wǒ xiěcuòle yí ge zì.** *Oh dear, I've written one word wrongly.*
-cuò: *wrong* **Cuò** occurs as a resultative verb ending in combination with many verbs. **Xiěcuò** means *write so that it is wrong*, hence *write wrongly*.
- 15 **... diànbàofèi bǐ pǔtōng diànbào guì yí bèi.** *... the telegram cost will be twice as expensive as (that of) an ordinary telegram.*
bèi: *times, -fold*, i.e. some multiple of the same figure. **Bǐ ~ guì yí bèi** means *compared with ~ (more) expensive by one-fold*, i.e. *twice as expensive*.

Lesson nineteen Visiting the Great Wall

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: Today I'm going to go with the delegation to sight-see along the Great Wall.
 First thing in the morning we set out by car from the hotel, and a little after nine we arrived at Juyongguan.
 We got out at Juyongguan, looked round a bit, then again by car, we headed for our destination, the Badaling.

The Badaling is the highest point of the Great Wall.
 Every foreign visitor to Peking probably wants to come here to sight-see.
 From Juyongguan we can get there in about twenty minutes by car.
 The Great Wall begins in the east at Shanhaiguan, and extends in the west to Jiayuguan.

The length of the Great Wall in a straight line (i.e. as the crow flies) is about two thousand three hundred kilometers or more.
 They began to build the Great Wall more than two thousand years ago during the Warring States period.
 With the coming of the Qin Dynasty, they connected up the many sections of the original wall, and also broadened it.
 Afterwards, it further underwent several rebuildings, and the Great Wall of today is a construction of the Ming Dynasty of the 16th century A.D.

The Great Wall is about six and a half metres in height, and on the top, the width extends to five and a half metres, and can accommodate five or six horses advancing abreast.
 The wall was built along the ridge of the mountains.
 At fixed intervals, there is a beacon station.
 The members of the delegation climbed up to a beacon station, but they were not satisfied, so they ended up climbing up another, and only at this were they satisfied.
 But some delegation members were so tired they kept panting, and some members' faces were covered with perspiration from walking.

From here, looking downward, we saw the Great Wall at our feet like a headless and tailless giant dragon climbing over the hills, and striding over the peaks.
 The delegation members, while looking, kept saying: “A grand sight!”

Looking westward, the mountain peaks are piled one on top of the other, as far as the eye can see.
If we meet bright and clear weather, we can even see vaguely in the south-east, the Beihai Baita.

October here is already quite cold.

With the cold wind blowing against us, it is decidedly somewhat cold.
The members of the delegation all very reluctantly went down from the beacon station.

Two

At Juyongguan

- Wang Dawen:* We've arrived at Juyongguan, let's first of all get out here, and have a look round, and then we'll go to the Badaling.
- Delegation leader:* Oh, so is this the old battlefield, Juyongguan?
- Wang Dawen:* That's right, this is the place the military in ancient times had to fight for.
- Delegation leader:* I've heard that the scenery in spring here is most beautiful, is that right?
- Wang Dawen:* Yes, but the autumn scenery is quite beautiful, too!
- Delegation leader's wife:* What is that stone platform over there?
- Wang Dawen:* That is called the "yuntai", completely built up by using Chinese white jade stones.
Originally it was the foundation of a building, but now all that is left on top is the railing.
Let's go into the cave and take a look.

At the Badaling

- Delegation leader:* I've heard that the Great Wall is only about two thousand three hundred kilometres or so long, so why is it called the Ten Thousand Li Great Wall?
- Wang Dawen:* Because at passes and strategic positions, there are usually many layers of wall, so the actual total length is more than six thousand kilometres, which is equivalent to twelve thousand or more Chinese li, so we call it the Ten Thousand Li Great Wall.
- Delegation leader:* So that's how it is; I understand.
- Delegation leader's wife:* How high is the Badaling?
- Wang Dawen:* Eight hundred or so metres above sea level.
- Delegation member A:* Is the whole of the Great Wall as perfect as this (part) here?
- Wang Dawen:* Because in the past it has been subjected to wind and rain for many years, there are naturally many places where it has already collapsed; but now there are some places which have already been restored by the government.
- Delegation leader's wife:* To build this Great Wall in the old days must have been very hard, I suppose?
- Wang Dawen:* Right; it is said that in the Qin Dynasty, the Great Wall took more than ten years (to build), and apart from

three hundred thousand soldiers, they conscripted countless civilians.

Let alone the amount of money squandered, I don't know how many lives of the labouring people were sacrificed!
One can truly say that this is the crystallization of the Chinese people's blood and sweat, and of their wisdom.

Delegation leader:

Delegation leader's wife:

Wang Dawen:

Delegation leader:

Wang Dawen:

Delegation leader:

Delegation member B:

Delegation member A:

Delegation member B:

What you say is absolutely right.

Let's go up to the beacon station to have a look.

All right.

Let's walk a bit slower.

Aren't you tired?

No, I'm not, I still want to go to that beacon station up in front, to have a look.

I'll go, too.

The people behind have all caught up.

Ah, we're here.

Look, this is simply a beautiful and magnificent picture!

New words in this lesson

Chángchéng the Great Wall

sùitóng accompany, along with

yizǎor first thing in the morning

chūfā set out

Jūyōngguān Juyong Pass

bènxìang head for

mùdì destination, goal

Bādálíng Badaling

zuìgāofēng highest point, pinnacle

dōng east

qǐ arise

Shānhǎiguān Shanhai Pass

xī west

zhì extend to

Jiāyùguān Jiayu Pass

zhíxiǎn in a straight line, as the crow flies

cháng long, in length

yuē approximately

gōnglǐ kilometre

Zhànguó Warring States

shídài age, time, period

xiūzhù construct

Qín Qin (dynasty) (Ch'in),

221-206 B.C.

cháo dynasty

duàn section, stretch (of time or space)

chéngqiáng (defensive) wall

liánjiē connect

-qǐ'lai up or together (verb ending)

bìng and also (= **bìngqiě**)

jiāyǐ "subject (something) to"

kuòzhǎn widen, expand

jīngguò undergo

duōcì multiple

xiàndài the present time, modern times

Gōngyuán A.D.

shìjì century

gāo high, in height

dǐngbù top (part)

kuān broad, in breadth

dá extend to

kě can (= **kěyǐ**)

róng accommodate

bìngliè abreast

yán(zhe) bordering, along the line of

shānjǐ mountain ridge

měi each time

gé separated by

yídìng fixed

jùlì distance

fēnghuǒtái beacon station

dēng ascend

mǎnzú satisfied
chuǎn pant
mǎn whole
dàhàn profuse perspiration
mǎn tóu dàhàn dripping with sweat
dītóu lower the head
xiàwàng look down
jiǎoxiǎ at one's feet
wútóu-wúwěi headless and tailless
jùlóng giant dragon
fānshān-yuèlǐng climb hills and stride
over peaks
búzhù de unceasingly
zhuàngguān a grand sight
kànqu look (towards), gaze
shānfēng mountain peak
chóngdié be piled one on another
yíwàng-wúji as far as the eye can see
qínglǎng bright and clear
dōngnánfāng south-east direction
yīnyuē vaguely
xiāngdāng (de) quite, fairly
hánfēng cold wind
shēnshang on the body, on one
díquè decidedly, certainly
liànlìan-bùshě very reluctant (to part)
gǔ ancient
zhànchǎng battle ground
gǔshí ancient times
bīngjiā military expert
bì must
zhēng fight for, contend over
dì place, ground
jǐngzhì scenery
měi beautiful, fine
shítái stone platform
Yúntái Yuntai ("Cloud Platform")
quánbù entirely
hànbáiyùshí Chinese white jade stone
qì build (using slabs or bricks)
táiji foundation
dǐngshàng on top
lángān railing, balustrade
dòng cave

WànLǐ Chángchéng Ten Thousand Li
Great Wall
guānkǒu pass
xiǎnyào strategically important
chángcháng frequently
céng layer
shíjì actual
zǒng total
chángdù length
Zhōngguólǐ Chinese li (now =
500 metres)
guān word to introduce the object
before jiào: to call
hǎibá above sea level
zhěnggè whole, entire
wánzhěng perfect, intact
shòudào suffer, be subjected to
duōnián for many years
fēngchuī-yǔdǎ battering from wind
and rain
dǎotā collapse
zhèngfǔ government
xiūbù repair
jùshuō according to report; it is said
that ...
fèi spend (a lot of)
jūnduì soldiery
yǐwài apart from, besides
zhēngyòng conscript
wúshù countless
mínfū civilian
hàofèi squander
jīnqián money
láodòng rénmin labouring people
shēngmìng life
xìshēng sacrifice
xuèhàn blood and sweat
zhìhuì wisdom
jiéjīng crystallization
hòumian behind
gēnshang catch up
jiǎnzhí simply
fú measure word for a picture
túhuà picture

Notes

Part one

- 1 Wǒmen yizǎor jiù zuò qìchē cóng fàndiàn chūfā, First thing in the morning we set out by car from the hotel,

- a In this sentence we have all together adverbial expressions of time (yizǎor), manner (zuò qìchē) and place (cóng fàndiàn). That is the order they normally come in. Naturally they all precede the verb, chūfā: set out.
- b jiù Jiù indicates that the speaker regards the time as early. The opposite feeling of lateness is expressed by cái: Wǒmen wǎnshang cái chūfā: We did not leave till the evening.
- 2 Chángchéng dōngqǐ Shānhǎiguān, xī zhì Jiāyùguān. The Great Wall begins in the east at Shanhaiguan, and extends in the west to Jiayuguan.
- a dōng qǐ ~ xī zhì ~: in the east arises at ~, in the west extends to ~. This matching pair of adverb-verb belongs to the register of elevated language.
- b Shānhǎiguān is in Héběi (Hebei) province, Jiāyùguān in Gānsū (Kansu) province; both are passes with gates (guān).
- 3 Zhíxiàn cháng yuē èrqiān sānbǎi duō gōnglǐ. In a straight line (as the crow flies) it is about two thousand three hundred kilometres or more. The figure given for length (or any such dimension) may come either before or after the word cháng: long. For instance, Zhèi zhāng zhuōzi sān chǐ cháng: This table is three feet long; or, Zhèi zhāng zhuōzi cháng sān chǐ: This table in length is three feet.
- 4 Chángchéng shì liǎngqiān duō nián qián Zhànguó shídài kāishǐ xiūzhù de. The Great Wall was begun to be built more than two thousand years ago in the Warring States period.
- a In this sentence liǎngqiān duō nián qián: two thousand odd years ago is in apposition to Zhànguó shídài: the Warring States period.
- b shì ~ de This brings out the time element: "it was two thousand years ago ... that ..."
- 5 Dào le Qín cháo, bǎ yuánlái yí duàn yí duàn de chéngqiáng liánjiēqilai, bìng jiāyī kuòzhǎn. With the coming of the Qin dynasty, they connected up the original wall which was in sections, and also broadened it.
- a yí duàn yí duàn de: which was in section after section, i.e. the whole was in many sections. The second yí may be omitted: yí duànduàn de: see L10, N7a.
- b jiāyī This is a literary expression. It is only used before two-syllable verbs. Its function is purely grammatical, though it might help to think of it in terms of "to subject (something) to ~". It dispenses with the object which the following two-syllable word governs, indeed nothing can follow this verb; as such it might be regarded as indicating that the following verb is transitive.
- 6 Hòulái yòu jīngguò duōcì xiūjiàn, Afterwards it further underwent several rebuildings,
- a jīngguò: undergo Jīngguò may either be a full verb in a main clause,

or it may function in a subordinate clause in the weakened sense of *having undergone* (something), i.e. *after*.

- b **duōci**: *multiple; many times* Cì measures the number of times an action takes place. When the verb has an object, the number + cì comes normally between verb and object: **kàn yí cì diànyǐng**: *see (once) a film*.
- 7 **Měi gé yíding de jùli, jiù yǒu yí ge fēnghuǒtái**. *At fixed intervals there is a beacon station.*
gé Gé as a verb means to *separate* or *divide*. As a preposition it means *separated by* or *at an interval of*. **gé yíding de jùli** therefore literally means *separated by fixed distances*. **Měi** is the **měi** of **měifēng** (L16, N4a): *each time*, which added to the foregoing phrase makes *each time separated by fixed distances*, that is, *at each fixed interval*.
- 8 **Dànshi yǒude tuányuán lèide zhí chuǎn**, *But some delegation members were so tired they kept panting*,
zhí chuǎn: *pant incessantly, keep on panting* is the complement of the verbal adjective **lèi**: *be tired*; hence it shows the degree to which they were tired: *tired to the extent that they kept panting*, or *so tired they kept panting*.
- 9 ... **hǎoxiàng yì tiáo wútóu-wúwěi de jùlóng zài fānshān-yuèlǐng**.
 ... *like a headless and tailless huge dragon climbing over the hills and striding over the peaks*.
- a **zài** This is the **zài** of the progressive aspect: *in the process of*.
- b **fānshān yuèlǐng** is a four-word literary expression made up of matching halves, verb-object, verb-object.
- 10 **Yàoshi gǎnshàng tiānqì qínglǎng de shíhou ...** *If we meet bright and clear weather ...*
gǎnshàng: lit. *catch up with*, hence *coincide with*. This whole clause reads, *If it coincides with when the weather is bright and clear*.

Part two

- 11 **Duile, zhèr shì gǔshí bīngjiā bì zhēng zhī dì**. *That's right, here is the place the military had to fight for in ancient times*.
- a **bīngjiā**; *military men* -jiā is a suffix for members of a profession, or experts in something. **Bīng** is a plain soldier, but **bīngjiā** is a military expert.
- b **bì zhēng zhī dì** This is literary language. **Zhī** is the classical counterpart of the modern **de**; **dì** is the modern **dìfang**: *place* or *ground*. So this phrase reads *the place which (the military men) had to (bì) fight for*.
- 12 **Wǒmen jìn dòngli qù kànkàn ba**. *Let's go into the cave and take a look*.

Here the object **dòngli**: (*in*) *the cave* splits the main verb **jìn**: *enter* from its directional complement **qù**, "in that direction". If there were no object, **jìnqu** would be regarded as one word: **Wǒmen jìnqu ba**: *Let us go in*.

- 13 **Tīngshuō Chángchéng zhǐ yǒu èrqiān sānbǎi duō gōnglǐ**, *I hear that the Long Wall is only two thousand three hundred odd kilometres (long)*,
yǒu: lit. *has*, i.e. *measure up to, amount to* (L18, N3).
- 14 ... **suǒyǐ wǒmen jiù guǎn tā jiào Wànlǐ chángchéng**. ... *therefore we call it the Ten Thousand Li Great Wall*.
- a **jiù** Jiù marks the "consequence" clause: after all the explanation, we get to the resolution. Jiù reinforces **suǒyǐ**: *therefore*.
- b **guǎn** This word has only a grammatical function, which is the same as that of the "pretransitive" **bǎ**, i.e. to dispose of the object before the verb. It combines with only one verb, however, and that is **jiào**: *call*.
- 15 **Yuánlái shì zhèyàng, míngbai le**. *So that's how it is, I understand now*.
yuánlái This is the word which introduces explanations or realizations: *after all* (it is like this).
- 16 **Bādǎlǐng yǒu duō gāo wa?** *How high is the Badaling?*
 a **duō**: *how ~?* Duō is used in an interrogative sense, preceding an adjective. This is in addition to the exclamatory sense, as in **Duō měilì ya!**: *How beautiful!*
- b The pattern of these sentences which state or ask the dimensions of aspects of things is subject + (**yǒu**) + figure (or **duō**) + adjective. **Yǒu** is optional. An answer to the present question might be **Bādǎlǐng yǒu sānbǎi mǐ gāo**: *Badaling is three hundred metres high*.
- 17 **Zhěnggè Chángchéng dōu xiàng zhèlǐ de zhème wánzhěng ma?** *Is the entire Great Wall as perfect as this here?*
 a **zhèlǐ de** is short for **zhèlǐ de Chángchéng**: *the Great Wall here*.
- b **xiàng** Xiàng may be a full verb, *to be (a)like, to resemble*: **Tāmen liǎng ge hěn xiàng**: *The two of them are very alike*. It may also play a subordinate role in the pattern **xiàng ~ zhème ~**: *as ~ as ~*; **Tāde yifu xiàng nǐde zhème cháng**: *Her clothes are as long as yours*; here **xiàng** literally means *like* and **zhème** means *thus*. Another possible combination is **xiàng ~ yíyàng ~**: *like ~ similarly ~*: **xiàng zhèlǐ de yíyàng wánzhěng**: "like this here similarly perfect", where **xiàng** commutes with **gēn** and **hé**.
- 18 **Hàofèi de jīnqián búyòng shuō, láodòng rénmin de shēngmìng bù zhīdao xīshēngle duōshǎo ne**. *Let alone the money squandered, I don't know how many lives of the labouring people were sacrificed!*
 a **búyòng shuō**: *needless to say* This phrase may come either before or after whatever it is that does not need to be said, depending on

whether the verb comes first or last in the main clause. The patterns need to match.

b **lǎodòng rénmin de shēngmìng** is an object transposed to the topic position. **Bù zhīdào xīshēngle duōshǎo lǎodòng rénmin de shēngmìng** ne could also be said.

c **bù zhīdào**: *I don't know* Has the sense "goodness knows".

d **ne** This **ne** accompanies impressive utterances.

19 **Nín shuōde yidiǎnr yě bú cuò.** *What you say is not in the least wrong.*
yidiǎnr yě bù/méi ~: *even a little not ~* This construction represents absolute exclusion, e.g. **Wǒ yidiǎnr yě bú lèi**: *I am not even a little (not in the least) tired*; **Yì diǎnr fēng yě méi yǒu**: *There isn't even a little wind.*

This construction fits here into an adverbial complement: *You speak in such a way that it's not in the least wrong.*

20 **A, kě dào le** *Ah, we've arrived.*

kě is not here simply lending force to an utterance (L4, N31). Its special use is to indicate relief after a goal which has been longed for has been attained; its force is "at long last".

Lesson twenty

At the hospital

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: The delegation leader's wife probably got a chill yesterday when she was looking round the Great Wall.
 She didn't feel well when she got up this morning.
 In the evening she was a little feverish.
 Therefore, the delegation leader asked me to take her to the hospital to be examined.

The Capital Hospital is not far from the hotel.
 I wanted to take her to this hospital.
 The hospital is open for treatment all night.
 We went to the hospital by car.
 At the hospital registry we filled in a registration card.
 We went to the emergency treatment room.
 I told her symptoms to the doctor.
 Her Chinese is very good, so there was no need for me to translate for her.
 I sat on a chair in the corridor waiting for her.

Before long the doctor came out.
 According to the doctor's explanation, her condition is like this:
 Her temperature is thirty-eight point one degrees.
 Her tonsils are red and swollen.
 Her temperature may go up still higher.
 The best is for her to stay in the hospital now for treatment.

Two

Medical examination

Nurse: Please sit down.
 Do you understand what I say?
Delegation leader's wife: I understand.
 I studied Chinese for two years before I came to China.
Nurse: That's wonderful.
 Let's try the thermometer first.
Delegation leader's wife: I took my temperature in the hotel, it's thirty-seven and a half degrees.
Nurse: It may have changed, let's take it again.
 Please put this thermometer under your arm.
Delegation leader's wife: All right.

- Nurse:* Doctor Ma, her temperature is thirty-eight point one degrees.
- Doctor:* Oh, is it?
Please sit down on the chair over here.
Where don't you feel well? (What's the trouble?)
- Delegation leader's wife:* I felt unwell this morning, already.
- Doctor:* How did you sleep last night?
- Delegation leader's wife:* I couldn't sleep well.
- Doctor:* Do you feel listless?
- Delegation leader's wife:* I feel my entire body has no strength.
- Doctor:* Did you sweat last night?
- Delegation leader's wife:* I didn't.
- Doctor:* Do you have a headache?
How about your throat?
- Delegation leader's wife:* I have a headache.
When I swallow saliva, my throat hurts a lot.
- Doctor:* Do you cough?
- Delegation leader's wife:* I don't cough that much.
- Doctor:* Do you have phlegm?
- Delegation leader's wife:* I don't have phlegm.
- Doctor:* And do you have a running nose?
- Delegation leader's wife:* I don't have a running nose, but I can't breathe through my nose.
- Doctor:* Do you feel chilly?
- Delegation leader's wife:* I feel a bit chilly now.
- Doctor:* Is your blood pressure normally high?
- Delegation leader's wife:* I suffer from high blood pressure, and sometimes my head is dizzy.
- Doctor:* How is your appetite?
Do you still enjoy your food?
- Delegation leader's wife:* (Because) my throat hurts, I don't feel like eating anything.
- Doctor:* How about your stool?
- Delegation leader's wife:* I'm a little constipated.
- Doctor:* Well, all right.
So let me give you an examination.
Open your mouth, I'll take a look.
- Delegation leader's wife:* My tonsils hurt a bit.
- Doctor:* They're inflamed, and a little swollen.
Please unbutton your top clothes, I'm going to listen (to your chest).
- Nurse:* Let me help you.
- Delegation leader's wife:* Thank you.
- Doctor:* Breathe in deeply, breathe in once again.
All right.
Please lie down on this bed.
- Doctor:* When I press like this, does your stomach hurt?
- Delegation leader's wife:* It doesn't hurt.
It just seems as if I have some undigested food in my stomach.
- Doctor:* Now I'll measure your blood pressure, please don't get up, just remain lying like this.

- All right.
Your blood pressure is a little high.
- Nurse:* It's all right now.
Please get up and get dressed.
Your illness is a common influenza.
But your tonsils are red and swollen, and your temperature may go up again.
Therefore, in the interest of caution, the best thing is to stay in the hospital for treatment now.
- Delegation leader's wife:* Oh! Must I stay in the hospital?
How many days will it take to get better?
- Doctor:* Don't worry, one or two days and you'll be better.
- Enquiring after health**
- Nurse:* Mr. Chen Yimin of the Commercial Press has come to see you.
I heard you were ill, are you a little better now?
- Chen Yimin:* Ah! Mr. Chen Yimin, I'm awfully sorry to have made you come especially to see me.
- Delegation leader's wife:* How many days have you not been feeling well?
- Chen Yimin:* I haven't been feeling well for four days.
- Delegation leader's wife:* It's influenza.
But now I'm a lot better.
How is your appetite?
- Chen Yimin:* My temperature went up to thirty-nine degrees for a while, which was very distressing.
But now my fever has already dropped, and I am able to eat to some extent.
- Delegation leader's wife:* That's wonderful.
Not until you become ill, do you realize that health is more precious than anything else.
- Chen Yimin:* That's absolutely right.
Please take great care of yourself.
I've brought some fruit, please accept it.
- Delegation leader's wife:* You are so considerate, I'm really infinitely grateful.
- Chen Yimin:* I wish you a quick recovery!
- Delegation leader's wife:* I can leave the hospital tomorrow, so please don't worry.

New words in this lesson

yīyuàn hospital
dòngzhào catch a chill
zǎochén morning
fāshāo be feverish
yīncǐ for this reason, therefore
qǐngqiú request
kǎn examine, be examined (medically)
Shǒudū-yīyuàn the Capital Hospital
zhōngyè all night
zhènlíáo give treatment
guàhàochù registry

guàhàodān registration card
jìzhěnshì emergency treatment room
bìngqíng condition (of patient)
yīshēng doctor
yòngbuzháo there is no need
fānyì translate
guò pass (of time)
guòle after (there having passed)
jù according to
bìngzhuàng symptoms, condition
rèdù temperature

biǎntáoxiàn tonsils
 hóngzhǒng red and swollen
 shēnggāo rise
 zhùyuan go into hospital, stay in hospital
 zhiliáo treat (illness), receive treatment
 zhěnbīng medical examination
 hùshi nurse
 jiǎng speak
 tīngdǒng understand (listen to + understand)
 tiēwēnbǎo thermometer (medical)
 biànhuà change
 jiā put (between two things)
 yèxià under the arm
 dàifu doctor (colloquial term)
 tǐwēn (body) temperature
 zhèibianr over here
 fālǎn feel listless
 húnshēn whole body
 yèlì (at) night, night time
 dàohàn perspiration (during sleep)
 tóuténg (have) headache
 hóulóng throat
 yàn swallow
 tuòmo saliva
 késou cough
 tán phlegm
 liú flow, run
 bití mucus from nose
 tōng go through, penetrate, be open
 qìr air, breath
 bù tōng qìr blocked
 fǎlěng feel chill
 píngcháng normally
 xuèyā blood pressure
 gāoxuèyāzhèng high blood pressure
 tóuyūn feel dizzy, feel faint
 shíyù appetite
 xiāng appetizing, satisfying (of food)
 dàbiàn stool, faeces
 biànbì constipated
 zhěrchá examine

zhāngkāi open (of mouth)
 zuǐ mouth
 fāhóng be red, inflamed
 zhǒng (be) swollen
 jiěkāi undo
 shàngyī top clothes
 shēnhūxī breathe deeply
 hūxī breathe
 bìngchuáng (hospital) bed
 èn press
 dùzi stomach, belly
 wèi stomach
 cúnshí undigested food
 wèile . . . qǐjiàn for the sake of, in the interest of
 shènzhòng caution, cautious
 zhìhǎo cure (treat satisfactorily)
 dānxīn worry
 tànbīng enquire after health (of a sick person)
 kàn see, visit
 chéng receive, be honoured by (polite)
 guòyíbùqù be sorry, embarrassed
 wèikǒu appetite
 yízhènzǐ for a time
 nánshòu hard to bear; uncomfortable
 tuishāo fever recede
 duōshǎo to some extent
 dé get
 dé bìng fall ill
 bǎoguì precious
 wánquán completely
 bǎozhòng be careful (about physical well-being)
 shōuxiǎ accept
 fèixīn go to trouble, be kind and thoughtful
 shízài really, honestly
 bújìn to an infinite degree, no end
 zǎorì soon, shortly
 huífù recover, be restored to
 chūyuàn leave hospital
 guāixin worry, fret

Notes

Part one

- 1 Tā jīntiān zǎochén qīlai jiù juéde bù shūfu. She didn't feel well when she got up this morning.

jiù Jiù implies that as soon as she got up she felt unwell. We can understand it as "as early as" (this morning).

- 2 Rèdù kěnéng huì zài shēnggāo. Her temperature may go up still higher.

kěnéng is used adverbially here: possibly.

huì: might (well) In this context huì refers to a range of POSSIBILITY, as distinct from the tone of CONVICTION it lends to the later sentence . . . yì-liǎng tiān jiù huì hǎo de: you will be better (I am sure) in one or two days.

Part two

- 3 Wǒ lái Zhōngguó yǐqián xuéle liǎng nián Zhōngwén le. Before I came to China I studied Chinese for two years.

When a verb takes an object, the time the action takes either comes between the verb and object, or the verb has to be repeated: Wǒ xué Zhōngwén xuéle liǎng nián le. The final le in this sentence ("up till now") indicates that the lady is still studying Chinese. Without it, the study would have been over and done with. Normally completion as of the present is indicated in English by the perfect tense—"have been studying"—but it is a peculiarity of English that when a time is mentioned you have to use the simple past ("studied"). Chinese is unaffected.

- 4 Nín nǎr bù shūfu? Lit. Where are you uncomfortable?

This is a standard opening question in these circumstances, which may be taken loosely as "What is wrong with you?". The lady therefore does not reply directly as to "where".

- 5 Hóulóng téng, shénme yě bù xiǎng chī. My throat hurts, (so) I don't feel like eating anything.

shénme yě bù . . . : not . . . anything at all Not only shénme, any interrogative word can be used in this pattern, which like yídiǎnr yě bù . . . stands for absolute exclusion. It is more emphatic than bù xiǎng chī shénme: not want to eat anything (in particular, or to speak of). Another example: Wǒ nǎr yě bú qù: I am not going anywhere at all.

- 6 Suǒyǐ wèile shènzhòng qǐjiàn . . . Therefore in the interests of caution . . .

qǐjiàn is an end marker for phrases or clauses expressing a purpose or objective. It matches the initial marker wèi or wèile. The use of qǐjiàn is optional, and may depend simply on considerations of rhythm and balance.

- 7 Xūyào jǐ tiān kěyǐ zhìhǎo? How many days will it take to be cured?

Literally this sentence reads: *It requires how many days to be able to be cured?*

8 **Shāngwù yīnshūguǎn de Chén Yímín xiānsheng kàn nín laile.**

Mr. Chen Yimin of the Commercial Press has come to see you.

lái: come and **qù:** go may include the idea of purpose—come or go to do something. In this use **lái** and **qù** may come before the main verb, OR AFTER it: **nǐ qù zuò shénme?** and **nǐ zuò shénme qù?** both mean *What are you going (there) to do?* Since the **qù** in the latter position comes at the end of the clause, there is nothing to distinguish it grammatically from the directional word “in that direction”. **Lái** and **qù** referring to purpose and direction may come together: **Tā lái kàn nín lái.**

9 **Bù shūfu yǒu jǐ tiān le?** *How many days is it since you have been unwell?*

This question asks how many days the state of being unwell has lasted, so the time expression comes after the verb.

yǒu **Yǒu** can come before lengths of time related to actions or states begun in the past; equally it can be missed out: **Bù shūfu jǐ tiān le?**

The use of **yǒu** is habitual, and Chinese speakers do not feel it contributes anything extra.

10 **Rèdù yǒu yízhènzǐ shēngdào sānshíjiǔ dù.** *My temperature for a while went up to thirty-nine degrees.*

yǒu yí zhènzǐ: *there was a time (period)* Adverbial expressions of time which contain indefinite words like **yí:** a or **(yí)xiē:** some are prefaced by **yǒu.** (This does not apply to expressions of time which follow the verb, when **yǒu** is optional as explained above.) **Yǒu yí zhènzǐ** may be placed at the head of the sentence, when the logic will be clearer: **Yǒu yízhènzǐ rèdù shēngdào . . .** *There was a period when the temperature rose to . . .* As another example, the phrase *one day* which starts a story is **yǒu yì tiān.**

11 **. . . néng duōshǎo chī diǎnr le. . . .** *I am able to eat to some extent now.*
duōshǎo: *to some extent (“more or less”)* Notice that **duōshǎo** in this sense comes before the verb, not before the object. It is reinforced by a word of like meaning after the verb, such as **(yì)diǎnr:** *a little or a few.*

Lesson twenty-one Asking the way

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: A female member of the delegation to China wants me to go with her to look up an old friend of hers.
Her old friend is called Liu Chunfang.
When she was studying abroad at Peking University, she was in the same class as Liu Chunfang, and was her close friend.
After she graduated, and went back to her country, they haven't seen each other for more than twenty years.
This time, coming with the delegation to Peking, she wants very much to go and see her old classmate.

Liu Chunfang lives in the Xicheng quarter in Xinkai Alley.

I've never been to Xinkai Alley.

There's no way but to ask someone.

First, we take the bus.

Because there is no direct bus to Xinkai Alley, we have to change.

We changed buses at Xidan, and then again at Ping'anli, we changed to a trolley-bus.

After getting off at Xinjiekou, we next asked an old man and an old lady, and only then did we find Xinkai Alley.

Two

On the bus

Female delegation

member A:

The bus has come.

Wang Dawen:

Excuse me, Comrade, does this bus go to Xinkai Alley?

Conductor:

You'll have to change!

Please get on.

Wang Dawen:

Where do I change?

Conductor:

At Xidan.

Wang Dawen:

Change to a bus?

Conductor:

That's right

You ride to Ping'anli, then you change to a trolley bus.

Wang Dawen:

Where do I get off?

Conductor:

At Xinjiekou.

After you get off, you ask someone else there again.

Wang Dawen:

Thank you.

Please give us two tickets for Xidan.

How much is that?

- Conductor:* Two tickets, two mao.
Female delegation member A: Mr. Wang, here's some change.
Wang Dawen: Oh, yes.
 When we get to Xidan, please let us know, all right?
Conductor: All right, fine.
 Excuse me, excuse me!
 Let me pass.
 Are there still people inside who wish to buy tickets?
 If you haven't got a ticket, buy your ticket!
Wang Dawen: There's an empty seat there, please sit down.
Female delegation member A: You sit down, please.
Wang Dawen: I'm used to standing up.
 Please don't be so formal.
Female delegation member A: Well then, I won't be formal.
Conductor: The next stop is Xidan, please prepare to get off.
Female delegation member A: Thank you.
 Let's get off.
Wang Dawen: Don't be in a hurry, wait until the bus has stopped, then get off.
Wang Dawen: I forgot to ask which route we should change to now.
Female delegation member A: That's the bus stop in front.
 Let's go there and wait.
 We'll ask when the bus comes.
Wang Dawen: All right.
Female delegation member A: Here it comes.
Wang Dawen: Excuse me, does this bus go to Ping'anli?
Conductor: This is bus route eight, it doesn't go to Ping'anli.
 You should take bus route nine.
Wang Dawen: Can we wait here?
Conductor: Do you see that bus stop on the north side of the street?
 You should wait there.
Wang Dawen: Thank you.
Female delegation member A: Why hasn't it come yet!
Wang Dawen: Don't get impatient, the more impatient you are, the less likely it is to come.
Female delegation member A: You don't know how soon I want to see my old classmate!
Wang Dawen: Here it comes, here it comes, get on quickly.
How to get there
Wang Dawen: Here we are at Xijiekou, let's get off.

- Female delegation member A:* How far is it from here to Xinkai Alley?
Wang Dawen: I don't know, either.
 Hey, look, there's an old man in front, walking toward us.
 Let's find out from him.
Female delegation member A: Please go and ask him.
Wang Dawen: Excuse me a moment, sir, but how do we get to Xinkai Alley?
Old man: Xinkai Alley?
 You go along this avenue straight towards the west, at the second crossroad, you turn to the south, not far off on the south side of the road is Xinkai Alley.
Wang Dawen: Thank you, sir.
Old man: Not at all, not at all.
Wang Dawen: What number is Comrade Liu's house?
Female delegation member A: Number fifteen.
Wang Dawen: Let's ask that old lady this time.
Wang Dawen: Excuse me, may I ask you, which section is number fifteen Xinkai Alley?
Old lady: Counting from this house, it's the sixth door.
 There's a house number on the door, so you'll know at once when you see it.
Wang Dawen: Thank you.
Old lady: Not at all.
Wang Dawen: We've found it at last.
Female delegation member A: I really must thank you very much for this.
Wang Dawen: Don't mention it, don't mention it, go and knock on the door, quickly.

New words in this lesson

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| zhǎo look up, visit | zhídào go directly to |
| lǎo old (=from former times) | huàn change; change to |
| Běijīng dàxué Peking University | huànzhuò change to (travel by) |
| liúxué study abroad | wúguǐ diànchē trolleybus |
| tóngbān in the same class, classmate | lǎodàniáng old lady |
| tóngxué fellow student | shòupiàoyuán ticket seller; conductor |
| yàohǎo good, close (of friendship) | biérén someone else; other people |
| biyè graduate | dǎtīng make enquiries |
| bǐcǐ mutually; one another | piào ticket |
| suí (go) along with | língqián change, odd coins |
| Xìchéngqū Xichengqu (West City Quarter) | láojià excuse me |
| | guòqù go past |

lǐmianr inside
 kōng unoccupied
 zuò seat
 zhànguān used to standing
 zhàn (bus) stop
 děng wait (until)
 zhànzhù stop, halt
 lù route
 duōme how (in exclamations)
 jièguāng excuse me
 shùnzhe along, following the course of
 shízilùkǒu crossroads

nán south
 guǎi turn
 bù yuǎnr not far
 búxiè don't mention it (don't thank me)
 ménpái doorplate with house number
 yíkuàir part
 jiā house
 búyòng xiè don't mention it (no need to thank)
 duōxiè thank very much

Notes

Part one

- 1 Tā bièyè huíguó yǐhòu, bǐcǐ yǐjīng yǒu èrshí duō nián méi jiàn le. After she graduated and went back to her country, they haven't seen each other for already more than twenty years.
 a bǐcǐ: lit. that and this Hence this side and that side, mutually, each other.
 Other examples: bǐcǐ bāngmáng: help each other; bǐcǐ liǎojiě: understand one another. Note, though, that each other is an object in English, whereas bǐcǐ is an adverb.
- b yǐjīng yǒu èrshí duō nián: already for more than twenty years. Since this appears to be a "time how long" expression you might expect it to come after the verb, but that rule applies only to the length of time something has actually been going on. In a negative context it is only a question of time elapsing: the business of the verb has NOT been going on. In such circumstances the time expression comes before the verb.
- 2 Zheì cì tā suí dàibǎotián lái Běijīng, hěn xiǎng qù kànkan tā de lǎo tóngxué. This time, coming with the delegation to Peking, she very much wants to go and see her old classmate.
 a suí: along with, in company with This is the same as suítóng (L19).
 b lái Běijīng: come to Peking Alternatively one could say dào Běijīng lái or lái Běijīng, the only difference is that lái Běijīng refers specifically to arrival (dào).
- c hěn In addition to adjectives, hěn may modify verbs of volition, such as xiǎng, ài: love, and xǐhuan: like.
- 3 Wǒmen zài Xīdān huàn chē, yòu zài Píng'ānlǐ huànzuò wúguǐ diànchē.

We changed at Xidan, and then again changed to a trolleybus at Pinganli.

huànzuò: lit. changed to travel by Zuò may be missed out: huàn wúguǐ diànchē.

- 4 ... zhè cái zhǎodàole Xīnkāi hùtòng. ... only then did we find Xinkai Alley. zhè is to be understood as at this point or with this.

Part two

- 5 Zuòdào Píng'ānlǐ zài huàn wúguǐ diànchē Ride to Pinganli, then change to a trolley bus.
 a zuòdào: ride to Zuò is being used as a full verb here, as opposed to a preposition governing some means of transport.
- b zài: then, next In Part one the word yòu was consistently used in this sense; that was because the reference was to past actions. Now the reference is to things yet to be done.
- 6 ... nín zài nàr zài gēn biérén dǎtingdǎting ba, ... there you should (further) ask someone else.
 dǎting: make enquiries The preposition corresponding to of which combines with this verb may either be gēn or hé: hé biérén dǎting: make enquiries of someone else. The effect of the reduplication of dǎting is to suggest that one need not go to too much trouble, which is consistent with the overall tone of politeness.
- 7 Lǎojià, lǎojià! Excuse me, excuse me!
 Both lǎojià and jièguāng, which comes later in this lesson, mean excuse me, but the first more often prefaces a request, and the second is more used when accosting strangers in order to ask for information.
- 8 Méi yǒu piào, mǎi piào a! If you haven't got a ticket, buy your ticket!
 The relationship between these clauses is not marked. If it were, it would be Yàoshi méi yǒu piào, jiù mǎi piào a! If you haven't a ticket, then buy a ticket.
- 9 Nín qǐng ba. You sit down, please.
 If it is clear what is expected, either through gestures or because it has been stated already, the action requested may be omitted after qǐng. The complete formulation would be Nín qǐng zuòxià ba or qǐng nín zuòxià ba.
- 10 Wǒ zhànguānle. I am used to standing.
 guān Guān may either be an independent verb, be accustomed to, or it may be a verb ending, when it indicates that the action of the verb has become customary: chīguān: used to eating; chībuguān: unable to get used to eating.
- 11 Xià yí zhàn jiù shì Xīdān, The next stop is Xidan,
 xià yí zhàn: the next stop Xià is next in a succession or series; it

should be distinguished from **dì èr**: *the following* (as in **dì èr tiān**: *the following day* after some event). **Zhàn** is only qualified here by **yí** because it itself is functioning as a measure word.

- 12 **Wǒ wàngle wèn huàn jǐ lù chē le.** *I forgot to ask which route we should change to now.*

a Remember that indirect questions use the same phrasing as the original direct question, which in this case would be, **Huàn jǐ lù chē?** *Change to which route?*

b Since bus routes are numbered, the question “which route?” is also asked in numerical terms with **Jǐ**: *how many?*

- 13 **Láile.** *Here it comes.*

Note that **láile** does not mean here “it has come”. The **le** indicates that the action of coming is now under way.

- 14 **Lù běi nǐge qìchēzhàn nín kànjianle méiyǒu?** *Do you see that bus stop on the north side of the road?*

a **běi** *north* This and other points of the compass are placed after the noun to which they refer, just like the place words **shàng**, **lǐ** etc. When they balance the noun they can be used in this minimal form (**lù** and **běi** being one syllable each), but otherwise they are amplified to, e.g. **běibianr**: **chēzhàn (de) běibianr**: *on the north side of the station*.

b **Nǐ kànjianle méiyǒu?**: *do you see?* For this use of **le** see L18, N10.

- 15 ... **qiánmian zǒulaile yí ge lǎodàye.** ... *ahead there is an old man approaching (now).*

The pattern of this clause is determined by the fact that a person is appearing at a certain place. The pattern is place (or time)–verb–person (or thing).

- 16 **Qǐng nín qù gěi wènwen.** *Please go and ask him.*

gěi This is the **gěi** which points to someone’s interests being involved. In this case it could be expanded as **gěi wǒ**: *on my behalf*, though the speaker prefers not to be so explicit.

- 17 ... **qǐngwèn dào Xīnkāi hùtòng qù zěnmē zǒu wa?** ... *may I ask how we get to Xinkai Alley?*

zěnmē zǒu: *how does one go?* This is a set phrase for asking directions. It occurs after the intended destination is stated: *to get to Xinkai Alley, how do you go?*

- 18 **zài dì èr ge shízilùkǒu nàr wàng nán guǎi** ... *at the second crossroad turn southwards*

nàr: *there* This is used in apposition to **shízilùkǒu**: *there where the crossroads is*.

- 19 ... **zǒu bù yuǎnr lù nán jiù shì Xīnkāi hùtòng.** *not far away on the south side of the road is Xinkai Alley.*

zǒu bù yuǎnr: lit. *go not far* Expressions of distance covered come after the verb, e.g. **zǒu yì gōnglǐ**: *walk a kilometre*.

- 20 **Liú tóngzhì jiā ménpái duōshao hào?** *What number is Comrade Liu’s house?*

In Chinese a “house” cannot be a number; to talk about house numbers you have to supply the word **ménpái**: *doorplate*. The number of his house is 304 is expressed as **Tā jiā ménpái hàomǎ shì sānlíngsì** (*With regard to his home, the number of the doorplate is 304.*)

- 21 **Xīnkāi hùtòng shíwǔ hào shì nǎ yíkuàir?** *Which section is number fifteen Xinkai Alley?*

yíkuàir does not of course mean “together” here. **Kuài** means a piece, broken or cut or divided from a whole. In **yíkuàir**: *together*, **yī** means *one whole*; from *one whole piece* derives the meaning of *together*. **Nǎ yíkuàir**, however, means *which (one) piece?*—*which part?*

Lesson twenty-two Watching a ping-pong match

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: This evening I accompanied the delegation to the Capital Gymnasium to see the national ping-pong championship.

The Capital Gymnasium is in the western suburbs of Peking, and was constructed during the period of the Cultural Revolution. This is China's biggest, best-equipped gymnasium. It can hold eighteen thousand spectators, and twenty-four ping-pong matches can be held simultaneously. If they remove the floor boards, it can be used as an ice-skating rink.

We arrived more than thirty minutes before time, but all the spectators' seats were already full. The hall was not at all noisy. The spectators were all quietly waiting for the matches to begin. Before the beginning, we talked about matters related to sport and exercise.

The matches were about to begin. The applause of the spectators began to sound from all sides. The pair in front of us was the men's singles finals. Xu Jingguang versus Yu Wenyan. Xu Jingguang held the bat upright, in his left hand; Yu Wenyan held it upright, in his right hand. The two men both excel in the quick attack and strong stroke, moreover the two were evenly matched, and both had much experience in tournaments, therefore, this match was spiritedly and fiercely contested.

The first two games were one win and one defeat (each); in the last game Yu Wenyan beat Xu Jingguang twenty-one: twenty-three, and won the championship.

When their match was over, the spectators let out a long sigh, and relaxed their taut feelings.

Two

Discussing sports

Delegation leader: Which sports do you like playing?
Wang Dawen: I like playing basketball, how about you?

Delegation leader: When I was young, I liked playing soccer, but now, first of all, I don't have time, and secondly, I don't have enough physical strength, so I seldom play sports; I only sometimes play tennis, that's all.
How is your tennis?

Wang Dawen: I'm no good at tennis. but I can still cope in ping-pong, more or less.

Delegation leader's wife: What is the most popular sport in China?

Wang Dawen: Probably ping-pong. But basketball, soccer, volleyball and badminton are all fairly widespread.

Delegation leader's wife: How about baseball?

Wang Dawen: Very few people know how to play baseball.

Delegation leader's wife: Apart from ball games, what sports are comparatively popular?

Wang Dawen: Track and field, weight-lifting, gymnastics, cycling, ice-skating, and swimming are fairly widespread.

Delegation leader's wife: We hear taijiquan is also very widespread.

What kind of sport is taijiquan?

Wang Dawen: Taijiquan in old times was a kind of military art, it had many moves, and was difficult to learn; now, it has been simplified, and moreover, the movements are gentler; so men or women, old or young, everyone can practise it. In China, early every morning, in the parks and on the squares, you can always see a lot of people practising taijiquan.

Watching the match

Delegation leader: The players have come out, the match is about to begin.
Wang Dawen: The pair in front of us is a men's singles final.

Delegation leader: What are the names of these two players?

Wang Dawen: The one holding the bat in his left hand is called Xu Jingguang, the one holding the bat in his right hand is called Yu Wenyan.

Ah! The match has begun.

Delegation leader: They play really marvellously!
Xu Jingguang attacks quickly, and smashes viciously; Yu Wenyan defends tightly, and receives steadily.

Wang Dawen: Whom are you supporting?

Delegation leader: Originally, I wanted to cheer for the weaker side, but those two are evenly matched, there's no superiority or inferiority between the two, so who should I cheer for?

Wang Dawen: Now, it's 19:15, with Xu Jingguang in the lead. If Yu Wenyan doesn't get a move on, I'm afraid he'll lose.

Delegation leader: Not necessarily, yet.
Look how Yu Wenyan is changing from defence to attack.

How finely he is hitting, especially with his backhand!

Delegation leader's wife: Ah, it's 20:20, they're even.

Delegation leader: It's too bad, Yu Wenyan lost two points in a row, so Xu Jingguang won the first game.

Delegation leader's wife: In the second and third games, Yu Wenyan played steadily and accurately; Xu Jingguang was too hasty, used too much force, made quite a few errors, and as a result, lost two games in a row. Yu Wenyan won the victory.

Delegation leader: I've seen a lot of ping-pong matches, but it's the first time I've seen such a spectacular and fiercely contested game as today's.

New words in this lesson

píngpāngqiú ping-pong
sài match, contest
Shǒudū tǐyùguǎn Capital Gymnasium
jīnbīāosài championship
xījiāo western suburbs
shíqī period
wánshàn complete, perfect
tǐyùguǎn gymnasium
guānzhòng audience, spectators
tóngshí simultaneously
tái measure word for activities which use tables, platforms etc.
dìbǎn floorboards
chèqu remove
yòngzuò use as
liúbīngchǎng skating rink
zuòmǎn seat to capacity
huìchǎng hall, meeting hall, auditorium
chǎonào noisy
jìngjìng de quietly
děngdài await
tǎolùn discuss
yǒuguān related to
tǐyù physical training; sports
yùndòng exercise, athletics, sports
shìqīng matter, affair, thing
jiù yào... le on the point of...
zhǎngshēng applause (the sound of)
sìmiàn four sides, i.e. all sides
zǔ unit; one team in a contest
dāndǎ "single combat"—singles
juésài finals, deciding match
duì against
zuǒshǒu (in the) left hand
zhí straight, upright (not crosswise, but in "penholder" grip)

wò grasp, hold
qiúpāi bat
yòushǒu right hand
shànyú excel in
kuàigōng quick attack
qiáng dǎ strong stroke
shíjūn-lídi evenly matched (of contestants)
jīngyàn experience
fēngfù ample, abundant
chǎng measure word for a contest
dǎ play (various games)
jīngcǎi spirited, splendid, spectacular
jīliè energetic, fierce
jú measure word for a game
shèng victory, win victory
bài defeat, suffer defeat
yǐ with, by
bǐ compared with, against (in scores)
zhànshèng beat (in a contest)
huòdé gain
guànjūn champion, championship
dāng... de shíhòu at the time when...
jiéshù come to an end
tǔchū let out (from the mouth)
kǒu (a) mouthful (of); measure word for a sigh
qì breath
cháng qì long breath, sigh
fàngsōng relax
jǐnzhāng tense, taut
xīnqíng feelings
tī kick; play (football)
zúqiú football
yīlái in the first place
èrlái in the second place

tǐlì physical strength
wǎngqiú tennis
bàle that's all
mǎhu perfunctory, sloppy
duifu cope
shèngxíng popular
páiqiú volleyball
yǔmáoqiú badminton
pǔjī widespread, universal
bàngqiú baseball
qiúlei ball games
tiánjīng field and track events
jǔzhòng weight-lifting
tǐcāo gymnastics
huábīng ice-skating
yóuyóng swimming
gǔ shíhou in ancient times
wǔshù military art
zhāoshù move, gambit
dòngzuò movement
róuhuǎn soft and slow; gentle
búlùn no matter...
lǎo-yòu old or young
qīngzǎo bright and early
guānzhàn watch a contest
yùndòngyuán player, athlete
pāizi bat
miào marvellous

gōng attack
chōu smash, drive (in tennis, ping-pong)
měng fierce
shǒu defend
yán tight, strict
jiē receive (service)
wěn steady, sure, calm
jiāyóu cheer (for a side, a player)
ruò weak
yìbiān side
shēngyuán support vocally; to cheer
bù xiāng shàng-xià neither has an advantage over the other
lǐngxiān (be) in the lead
jiāyóu get a move on, get stuck in
fǎn shǒu wéi gōng turn defence into attack
fǎnpāi backhand
lián in succession
qiú ball; point in ball game
zhèngquè accurate
yòngli effort
guò excessively, too
shībài failure; misfire
qǔdé get, gain
shènglì victory
dì yī cì the first time

Notes

Part one

- 1 Wǒmen zǎo dào le sānshí duō fēn zhōng, *We arrived more than thirty minutes early,*
Remember that the degree to which something exceeds the norm or excels over something else comes after the pertinent adjective or adverb, e.g. *kuān yì chǐ: broader by one foot.* Hence *thirty minutes early* is *zǎo sānshí fēn zhōng*. But here *zǎo* is also modifying *dào: arrive*, and the verb intervenes between *zǎo* and its complement of degree.
- 2 Wǒmen zài kāishǐ zhī qián, tánlùn yǒuguān tǐyù yùndòng de shìqīng. *Before the start we talked about matters related to sport and exercise.*
- a zài... zhī qián: *before...* This is a somewhat more literary equivalent to (zài)... yǐqián. The opposite of zài... zhī qián is zài... zhī hòu: *after...*

- b **yǒuguān**: *related to* **Yǒuguān** also occurs in combination with **hé**: *with*; **hé rénmin shēnghuó yǒuguān**: *related to the people's life*.
- 3 **Xú Jīngguāng shì zuǒshǒu zhí wò qiúpāi**; **Yú Wényuán shì yòushǒu zhí wò**. *Xu Jingguang holds the bat upright in his left hand; Yu Wenyuan holds it upright in his right hand.*
- a **Shì** is used when you have contrasting cases: (subject) **shì** . . . , (other subject) **shì** . . . , e.g. **Tā shì míngtiān qù, wǒ shì jīntiān qù**: *He is going tomorrow, I am going today*. Or the contrast may be in the predicate only: **Wǒ shì qù bāngzhu tā, bú shì dǎ tā**: *I went to help him, not to hit him*.
- b **zhí wò**: *hold upright* Most Chinese table tennis players use this “penholder” grip.
- 4 **Èr rén dōu shànyú kuàigōng qiángdǎ**, *The two men both excel in the quick attack and the strong stroke*,
This introductory description uses somewhat bookish language.
Èr rén: *the two men* would in more colloquial language be **liǎng ge rén**; **shànyú**: *excel in* would be **hěn huì**: *very good at* (lit. *know very well how to*).
- 5 . . . **Yú Wényuán yī èrshíyī bǐ èrshísān zhànshèngle Xú Jīngguāng**,
. . . *Yu Wenyuan beat Xu Jingguang twenty-one to twenty-three*,
- a **yī** As a preposition, **yī** broadly has to do with instrumentality, and in different contexts may be variously translated as *by*, *with*, *by means of* etc. In most cases it refers to abstract or intangible things, such as **jīngshén**: *spirit*, or, as here, a score in a game. For instruments which are concrete, **yòng**: *use* is used: **yòng zuǒshǒu xiě zì**: *write with the left hand*.
- b **èrshíyī bǐ èrshísān**: literally, *twenty-one compared with twenty-three*.
- 6 **Dāng tāmen de bǐsài jiéshù de shíhòu . . .** *When their match came to an end . . .*
dāng . . . de shíhòu: *at a time when* **Dāng** is added as an initial marker to a “when” construction to specify a particular moment (“right then”) rather than a regular condition. For preference it introduces whole clauses rather than isolated verbs.

Part two

- 7 **Xiànzài yí lái shì méi yǒu gōngfu, èr lái shì tǐ lì yě bú gòu**, *For one thing I haven't the time, for another my physical strength isn't sufficient, either*,
- a **yí lái . . . , èr lái . . .**: *in the first place . . . , in the second place . . .*
These are used for setting out reasons methodically.
- b **shì** “it is a case of”

- 8 **búguò yǒushí dǎdǎ wǎngqiú bàle**. *I just have the odd game of tennis, that's all.*
- a **búguò . . . bàle**: *only . . . that's all* Again we have a matching pair of words, one to begin, the other to end a construction. **Búguò** is used in the sense of *no more than*, *only*, and **bàle** has the literal meaning of *ended—and that's the end of it*.
- b **dǎdǎ** This verb is reduplicated to minimize or make light of the verb, *play*.
- 9 . . . **pīngpāngqiú hái mǎmǎhūhū kěyǐ duìfu**. . . *in ping-pong I can still cope, more or less.*
hái: *still* This **hái** does not refer to time. The idea is that he is admittedly not very good, but he “still” qualifies as being able to cope, perfunctorily (**mǎmǎhūhū**).
- 10 . . . **xiànzài gǎide hěn jiǎndān**, . . . *now it has been changed so that it is very simple*,
hěn jiǎndān is a complement to the verb **gǎi**: *change*. Since the change has already taken place, we can call it a complement of result.
- 11 . . . **búlùn nán-nǚ lǎo-yòu dōu kěyǐ liànxí** . . . *be it men or women, old or young, all can practise it.*
búlùn: *be it, no matter, regardless of* This word indicates that no conditions are laid down. If it is various kinds of people or things which are being declared of no relevance, it is supported by **dōu**, as in this sentence. It is also supported by **dōu** if an interrogative word in its indefinite sense is being used to substitute for various kinds or classes: **búlùn shuí dōu kěyǐ liànxí**: *no matter who (it is), all can practise*. If it is a whole conditional clause which **búlùn** introduces, it is still usually matched in the second clause by some word like **yě**: *still* or **yíding**: *definitely*: **Búlùn tiānqì zěnmeyàng, wǒ míngtiān yíding qù**: *No matter how the weather is, I am definitely going tomorrow*.
- 12 **Zhè liǎng ge yùndòngyuán jiào shénme míngzi?** *What are the names of these two players?*
If the reference is to people, **jiào shénme míngzi?** asks for the whole name; **míngzi jiào shénme?** asks specifically for the personal name (**míngzi**), as opposed to the surname (**xìng**).
- 13 . . . **jiào wǒ gěi shuí shēngyuán hǎo ne?** . . . *who would you have me cheer for?*
jiào is *have* in the causative sense; . . . **hǎo ne?** is asking for the best course to pursue when one is undecided (L5, N17).
- 14 . . . **wǒ háishi dì yī cì kàn dào** . . . *it's the first time ever I have seen (such a game)*
háishi In this special combination with **dì yī cì**: *the first time*, **háishi** translates as *ever*: others may have seen it before, but “as yet” for me it is the first time.

Lesson twenty-three At a restaurant

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: The leader of the delegation to China and his wife had heard before they came to China that roast duck and boiled mutton are Peking's famous dishes.
They very much want to go and try them.
But they don't know where they should go to eat, and want me to take them.
One day, when their sight-seeing activities were over, I took them to the Peking Roast Duck Restaurant outside the Qianmen.

The waiter brought out a roasted, fattened duck for us to see.
Then he pared off the duck skin, piece by piece, onto a plate.
Next, he (again) brought over thin pancakes, soya bean paste and spring onions, garlic, etc.
We ate them using the pancakes to fold in the duck skin, onions and soya bean paste.
It was crisp and sweet, and the taste was beyond description.
The delegation leader and his wife kept on saying:
"It's delicious, it's delicious!"
Before long, the waiter again brought a dish of fried duck meat, and soup made by boiling duck liver and duck bones.
The delegation leader said: "This is really the art of eating".

The next day, they wanted to go to an average small restaurant to eat a simple meal.
Near Dengshi Xikou, we found a small restaurant.
The time was just dinner time, so there were a lot of customers inside.
We ordered four dishes, one soup, two liang of Maotai spirit and one bottle of beer.
The delegation leader's wife wanted to eat bread.
In this little restaurant, they only have mantou and rice, but no bread.

The delegation leader and his wife seemed very satisfied with the food here, too, and they both kept nodding their heads and saying praisingly:
"Very good!"

Two

Eating roast duck

Waiter: Good-day to you. (lit. You've come.)
There are some empty seats over here.
Wang Dawen: We would like to eat roast duck.
Waiter: All right, please just wait a moment.
What do you think of this one?
Delegation leader's wife: It's roasted so brown and shiny, just looking at it, it seems tasty.
Let us have this one then.
Delegation leader: Just smell it, how good it is!
Waiter: Let me slice the duck skin for you.
Delegation leader's wife: How should one eat this?
Waiter: You use the pancakes to roll up the duck skin and onions and the soya bean paste, and eat it (like that).
Delegation leader: Mr. Wang, come on, please have some.
Wang Dawen: You eat first.
Delegation leader: Umm, it's certainly not an empty reputation, it's extremely delicious.
Delegation leader's wife: Try this soup, it's so good!
Delegation leader: This dish of fried duck meat is not bad either, it is plain but has a fine taste, and is not in the least greasy.

A simple meal
Delegation leader: What we ate yesterday was the famous dish, roast duck.
Today, please take us to a little restaurant, where we can eat a simple meal, will you?
Wang Dawen: All right, all right.
Then let's look for one near here.
Delegation leader: There's one over there.
Delegation leader's wife: Let's go over there, then.

Waitress: What will you have to eat?
Wang Dawen: Please bring the menu for us to see.
Waitress: All right, here it is, please take a look.
Wang Dawen: What will you both have?
Delegation leader: Anything will do for us.
Please order what you like.
Wang Dawen: Then, how about one dish of babao vegetables, one dish of dongpo meat, one dish of hongshao chicken, one dish of shrimp bean curd, and one bowl of Chinese cabbage beef soup?
Delegation leader's wife: Very good.
Wang Dawen: Do you want to drink something (strong)?
Delegation leader: What kinds of drinks do they have?
Waitress: There's beer, laoju, baigan, and there's also maotai and grape wine, and so on.
Delegation leader: First, bring two liang of Maotai spirit and a bottle of beer.
If that's not enough, we'll ask for more later.
Waitress: Do you want rice or mantou?
Delegation leader's wife: Do you have any bread?

- Waitress: We don't have bread.
 Delegation leader's wife: Then, rice.
 Waitress: Certainly.
 Delegation leader: Mr. Wang, thank you for giving us your kind attention every day.
 Wang Dawen: Please don't mention it.
 Delegation leader: Come on, let's drink a toast.
 Wang Dawen: Good, I wish you health.
 Delegation leader's wife: Delegation leader's wife, please lift your glass, too.
 Wang Dawen: The Maotai spirit is too strong, I don't dare drink it.
 Delegation leader: Then, please drink beer.
 Delegation leader's wife: Come on, Cheers!
 Wang Dawen: What proof is Maotai spirit?
 Delegation leader's wife: I've heard it's over fifty degrees.
 Wang Dawen: No wonder it's so strong!
 Delegation leader's wife: It's strong all right, but it won't go to your head.
 Wang Dawen: What substance is it made from?
 Delegation leader: From wheat and sorghum.
 Wang Dawen: We mustn't just talk, come, have some food.
 Delegation leader's wife: They say that Chinese food has to be eaten while it is hot, when it is cold, it's not good.
 Wang Dawen: I've been eating without break.
 Delegation leader's wife: How about the seasoning of this dish?
 Wang Dawen: If you find it too bland, here's salt.
 Delegation leader's wife: It tastes just right for me.
 Wang Dawen: Have another bowl of rice.
 Delegation leader: I've had enough.
 Wang Dawen: Then, please drink some more wine.
 Delegation leader's wife: I've had enough wine, too.
 Wang Dawen: Please don't stand on ceremony!
 Delegation leader: Up to now I've never stood on ceremony, it's the truth.
 Wang Dawen: Then, let's ask the waitress for the bill.
 Delegation leader: Thank you very much for today.
 Wang Dawen: Don't mention it, you are too polite.

New words in this lesson

fànguǎr restaurant
 kǎoyā roast duck
 shuānyángrou quickly boiled mutton,
 cut in thin slices
 míngcài famous dish
 cháng taste, try
 yǒu yì tiān one day
 wài outside
 Běijīng kǎoyādiàn The Peking Roast
 Duck Restaurant

zhī measure word for various animals
 and birds, including duck
 tiányā force-fed duck
 yāpí duck skin
 xiāo pare off, slice off
 diézi plate
 báobǐng thin pancake
 shíjīnjiàng soya bean paste with other
 ingredients
 cōng spring onion, onion, scallion

suàn garlic
 jiàng soya bean paste
 sūcuì crisp
 xiāngtián sweet
 wèi taste
 bùkě yán indescribable
 búduàn unceasing
 bùjiǔ soon
 yāròu duck meat
 chǎo quick-fry
 cài dish of food
 yāgān duck liver
 yāgǔ duck bones
 tāng soup
 Dēngshì (xīkǒu) place name
 zhèng right, exactly
 diǎn order (from menu)
 yào order (food, drink)
 liǎng liǎng (measure of 50 gr.)
 Máotáijiǔ Maotai spirit
 píng bottle
 píjiǔ beer
 mǐfàn rice
 sìhū seemingly
 fàn-cài food, meal as a whole
 mǎnyì satisfied
 diǎntóu nod head
 jiāohuáng brown (from cooking)
 yóuliàng shiny
 piàn to slice
 zěnmē ge -fa? how do you go about...?
 juǎn roll up
 míng bù xūchuán the reputation is
 deserved
 xiān fresh-tasting
 yāròu chǎocài fried dish of duckmeat
 and vegetable
 qīngdàn plain or mild—not
 overseasoned
 yóuni greasy
 xiǎochī simple meal; snack
 jiār measure word for a commercial
 establishment (= jiā)

Notes

Part one

1 Yǒu yì tiān, zài tāmen cānguān huódòng wánle zhī hòu . . . One day,
 after their sight-seeing activities were over . . .

càidān menu
 pán dish (measure word)
 bābǎocài mixed vegetables
 dōngpōròu a type of stewed meat dish
 hóngshāoji red-cooked chicken
 xiārén dòufu shrimp bean curd
 báicài Chinese cabbage
 báicài niúròutāng soup with cabbage
 and beef
 lǎojiǔ old (Chinese) wine, esp.
 Shaoxing wine.
 báigān strong drink distilled from
 gaoliang
 pútaojiǔ grape wine
 mǐfàn rice (cooked)
 méng receive, be favoured with (polite)
 hǎoshuō not at all (polite response to
 compliment)
 gān empty
 bēi cup
 gān yì bēi drink (a toast, in friendship)
 jǔ raise
 -qilai up
 chòng strong (esp. of taste, smell)
 gǎn dare
 gān bēi! cheers! bottoms up!
 yǐshàng upwards of
 guàibude no wonder
 shàng tóu go to the head
 yuánliào raw material, substance
 gāoliang sorghum
 guāng only, just
 chèn while; take advantage of (an
 opportunity)
 liáng cold (of food and beverages);
 cool
 xián-dàn seasoning; degree of saltiness
 dàn bland
 yán salt
 zú enough
 xiànglái up to now, all along, always
 suànzhàng reckon up the bill

zài . . . zhī hòu: *after . . .* **Zhī hòu** is a more literary equivalent of **yǐhòu**. **Zài** may introduce the time expression for which **zhī hòu** (or **yǐhòu**, or **yǐqián**, or **zhī qián**) is the terminal marker, but its use is not obligatory.

- 2 . . . **ránhòu bǎ yāpí yí piàn yí piàn de xiāozài diézi li.** . . . *after that he pared off the duck skin, piece by piece, onto a plate.*

a **yí piàn yí piàn de:** *piece by piece* When we met a measure word reduplicated before, the connotation was that the units were innumerable: **yì zhī zhī de táng húlu:** *stick after stick of sugar-coated fruits*. In this case, however, the emphasis is on “one by one”, though of course you have to have a fair quantity to use the expression at all.

- b **xiāozài diézi li:** *pared off onto a plate* The plate is where the slices are to end up (the “target”), so **zài** follows the verb (L10, N12). The place which is the “target” must follow in direct succession.

- 3 **Gēnzhe yòu duānlai le bǎobíng . . .** *Right after he (next) carried over thin pancakes . . .*

This sentence is exactly parallel to **Jiēzhe yòu nálaile mántou hé xifàn** in Lesson Four (see L4, N15).

- 4 **Wǒmen yòng bǎobíng jiāzhe yāpí hé cōngjiàng chí.** *We ate them using the pancakes to enfold the duck skin, spring onions and soya bean paste.* **jiāzhe** The progressive suffix **-zhe** is used here because the ingredients once having been enfolded are to **STAY** enfolded. **-zhe** is often added to verbs denoting physical states where the initial motion has come to rest.

- 5 **Sūcuì xiāngtián, wèi měi bùkě yán.** *It was crisp and sweet, and the taste was beyond description.*

měi bùkě yán: *lit. so fine that one could not put it into words* This is literary-style language: **kě** is short for **kěyǐ:** *can*; **yán** is the Classical equivalent for **shuō:** *say*. As a whole **bùkě yán** amounts to *indescribably*, and it may be applied to attributes other than **měi:** *fine*.

- 6 . . . **hái yào le èr liǎng Máotaijiǔ hé yì píng pījiǔ.** . . . *we also ordered two liang of Maotai spirit and one bottle of beer.*

a **liǎng** **Liǎng** is a weight measure. Ten **liǎng** make one **jīn** (= 500 gr.). To avoid the juxtaposition of the same sound, you must say **èr liǎng**, not **liǎng liǎng**.

- b **Máotaijiǔ** This is a strong spirit originating in Máotái in Guizhōu (Kweichow) province, in south-west China.

- 7 **Tuánzhǎng hé fūren sīhu duì zhèli de fàn-cài yě hěn mǎnyì,** *The delegation leader and his wife seemed very satisfied with the food here, too,*

a **sīhū:** *seemingly* This adverb is similar to the more colloquial **hǎoxiàng**.

- b **duì . . . mǎnyì:** *be satisfied with . . .*

Part two

- 8 **Nín lái le.** *lit. You have come.*

This is an empty form of greeting, just something to say to welcome someone who has just arrived.

- 9 . . . **kàn yàngr jiù hěn hǎochī.** . . . *just looking at it it seems tasty.*

jiù **Jiù** introduces the result which follows once the minimum requirement has been met (L4, N30b): the idea is “you just need to see the way it looks to know it is tasty”.

- 10 **Zhè zěnmē ge chīfǎ?** *How do you go about eating this?*

zěnmē ge (verb)-**fǎ?** is a formula for asking from perplexity how one goes about doing something. Another example: **Wǒ xiǎng wàng**

Yīngguó dǎ diànbào, bù zhīdào shì zěnmē ge dǎfǎ? *I want to send a telegram to England; I wonder (don't know) how to go about sending it?*

- 11 **Bú gòu de huà, huítóu zài yào.** *If that is not enough we'll order some more later.*

a **de huà** This is the end marker for a conditional clause (L6, N29).

b **huítóu zài yào:** *lit. later on we'll order once more.*

- 12 **Wáng xiānsheng, měitiān méng nín guānzhào, xièxie.** *Mr. Wang, thank you for giving us your kind attention every day.*

méng **Méng** is a polite word meaning *receive* (as a kindness) or *be favoured with*. **Méng nín guānzhào** is therefore *be favoured with your care*. **Méng** may link with **chéng**, which occurred in L20: **Chéngméng rèqíng zhāodai, xièxie:** *Thank you for your warm reception*

- 13 **Tīngshuō shì wǔshí dù yǐshàng.** *I've heard it's over fifty degrees.*

yǐshàng: *upwards of* **Yǐshàng** leaves a good deal of scope. **Wǔshí duō dù** means *more than fifty degrees* (but less than sixty), but **wǔshí dù yǐshàng**—note that **yǐshàng** comes after the measure word—might include any number within reasonable reach of fifty.

- 14 **Bié guāng shuō le** *Don't just talk*

guāng: *only, just* **Guāng** is used in the context of doing one thing to the disregard of everything else, or not doing something you should be doing, e.g. **Guāng shuō bù xíng, yào gàn!:** *Just talking won't do, you need to act!*

- 15 **Tīngshuō Zhōngguócài yào chèn rè chī,** *They say Chinese food needs to be eaten while it's hot,*

chèn: *while* (the opportunity lasts) The basic meaning of **chèn** is *take advantage of* (an opportunity, occasion, time, etc.); put the other way, it reflects concern that a favourable situation might be let slip.

Another example: **Chèn dàjiā dōu zài zhèr bǎ zhèi jiàn shì jiǎng yíxià ba:** *While everyone is here, let's talk about this matter.*

- 16 **Wǒ méi xiánzhe.** *I haven't been idle.*

The negative of verbs with the progressive suffix **-zhe** is **méi** if the reference is to what has been going on.

- 17 **Zhèi cài xián-dàn zěnmeyàng?** *How about the seasoning of this dish?*
xián-dàn **Xián:** *salty* and **dàn:** *bland* are opposite qualities. Put together they encompass the range of tastes between the two, and form the abstract notion of "seasoning". Similarly, **dà-xiǎo** encompasses the range between *big* and *small*, so means *size*.
- 18 **Wǒ chīzhe zhèng hǎo.** *To my taste it is just right.*

chīzhe This is a special use of **-zhe** which has to do with stating or asking about one's impressions after some kind of experience which is expressed in the verb. Other examples: **Nǐ tīngzhe zěnmeyàng?**: *What is it like to your ears?* (asking for impressions after listening to a singer, say); **Zhèige fángzi, nǐ zhùzhe zěnmeyàng?**: *How do you find living in this house?* (after having recently moved in).

Lesson twenty-four Taking a train

Translation

One

Wang Dawen: All the activities of the delegation to China have already finished in Peking, and today in the afternoon, we shall take the train and leave Peking for Nanking.
 Comrade Zhang Yi comes along to see us off.
 It's very quick to go by plane, but they wish to go by train; because they can see the scenery along the way.

They also wanted to buy second class tickets.
 Because they want to talk freely with the ordinary travellers.
 The journey from Peking to Nanking is quite long, and if one becomes ill from fatigue by sitting in second class, it is nothing to joke about.
 I recommended them to take first class sleeping berths, and they agreed.

Peking station is a three-storey construction built in 1959 to commemorate the tenth anniversary of the establishment of the nation, and has a very majestic air.
 The waiting-room is full of people.
 In front of every ticket window queues of people are standing.
 The ticket sellers are selling tickets skilfully and speedily.

The train is the 18.30 special express for Shanghai.
 The train arrives in Nanking after passing over the Nanking Yangtze Great Bridge.
 This great bridge was completed in 1968.
 The bridge is divided into two levels, the top level is a road bridge, the lower level is a railway bridge.
 Its total length is more than six thousand seven hundred metres, and to cross the bridge on foot takes more than one hour.

Two

Leaving Peking

Delegation leader:

Wang Dawen:

Delegation leader:

So this is Peking Station?

That's right.

I saw it in a picture magazine before.

But its air certainly was not so majestic.

- Delegation member A:* When was it built?
Wang Dawen: 1959.
 Come on, let me carry this hand luggage for you.
Delegation member A: Thank you.
 It's not heavy, it's not heavy.
Wang Dawen: The ticket punching gate is over here.
Delegation leader: Can we go in now?
Wang Dawen: You can, they have already begun punching the tickets.
Delegation leader: Please wait a moment, I'll get the tickets out.
Wang Dawen: Excuse me, Comrade, which platform is the special express to Shanghai?
Ticket-clipper: Please go up by the escalator in front.
Wang Dawen: It's platform number five.
 Thank you.
- Wang Dawen:* The first class sleeping car is in which (number) carriage?
Female train attendant: The third or fourth carriage from the rear.
Wang Dawen: We must go a bit further on.
 This is it, please get in.
Delegation leader: It's a private compartment!
 It certainly is extremely comfortable.
Wang Dawen: Let's put the hand luggage on the luggage rack.
Delegation member A: Thank you, but I'll do it myself.
Zhang Yi: I'm very sorry, I cannot accompany you to Nanking.
 I will say good-bye to you, here.
 I hope you have a successful journey from now on.
Delegation leader: We are truly very grateful for your kind hospitality in Peking.
Zhang Yi: Don't mention it, it was my privilege.
Delegation leader: If we have a chance in the future, we would like to come to China again, at that time, we will again ask for your assistance.
Zhang Yi: Certainly, certainly, I shall be waiting in Peking for you.
 The bell has rung.
 The train is about to leave.
 I will get off.
 I wish you a safe journey!
- Delegation leader:* We wish you good health, good-bye!
Delegation members:

On the train

- Delegation leader:* Comrade, would you please tell me what time this train arrives in Nanking?
Female train attendant: Tomorrow morning at half past eleven.
Delegation member A: How many hours in all?
Female train attendant: Seventeen hours.
Delegation member A: Seventeen hours is pretty long!
Female train attendant: Whenever it gets to a station the train has a few minutes' stop; you can get off the train, and walk about on the platform to refresh yourselves.
Delegation leader: Are there vendors on the platforms?

- Female train attendant:* Yes, yes, there are vendors who sell food, and there are also kiosks where you can buy the local products of that place.
Delegation leader: Which carriage is the dining car?
Female train attendant: Number five from the rear.
Delegation member A: It's right close to our car, that's convenient.
Female train attendant: At meal time, the dining car attendant comes selling meal tickets, (and) you can order your meal.
Delegation leader: Oh, yes?
Female train attendant: Another thing, when you want to open the window, it's best you don't open the screen window.
Delegation leader: Why is that?
Female train attendant: Although this train burns smokeless coal, nevertheless, it is inevitable that some smut will fly in.
Delegation leader: Oh, I understand.
 Thank you.
Wang Dawen: Soon, we will pass over the Nanking Great Bridge.
Delegation leader's wife: Oh, that's the Yangtze River!
 The train has begun passing over the Great Bridge.
Wang Dawen: This is the Nanking Yangtze Great Bridge.
 The lower level is a railway bridge, and the top level is a road bridge.
Delegation leader: How long is this bridge?
Wang Dawen: The railway bridge is six thousand seven hundred metres or more. The road bridge is four thousand five hundred metres or more, and can take four trucks driving abreast, and there are sidewalks on both sides.
Delegation leader's wife: Look!
 A steamer is going to pass under the Great Bridge.
Wang Dawen: When evening comes, a great many lights on the bridge are turned on, it's extremely beautiful.

New words in this lesson

huǒchē train
 yǐ already (= yǐjīng)
 gēnlai come along
 sòngxíng see off (on journey)
 yánlù along the way
 fēngjǐng scenery
 yìngxípiào second class tickets
 xiǎngyào want
 lùchéng journey
 yìngxí second class
 bú shì wánr de it's no joke
 quàn urge, recommend
 ruǎnxí first class

wòpù sleeping berth
 dāying consent, agree
 lóu multi-storey building
 qìpò air, look
 hòuchēshì waiting room
 shòupiàochù ticket office
 pái queue
 shòupiàoyuán ticket seller
 shúlián expert, practised
 xùnsù speedy
 fāshòu (issue and) sell
 chēpiào ticket (train and bus)
 kāiwǎng leave for, be bound for

Shànghǎi Shanghai
 tèbié kuàichē special express
 tōngguò pass through, over
 Nánjīng Chángjiāng dàqiáo Nanking
 Yangtze Great Bridge
 wánchéng complete
 céng level
 shàngcéng upper level
 gōnglùqiáo road bridge
 xiàcéng lower level
 tiělùqiáo railway bridge
 quáncháng total length
 bùxíng on foot
 guò to cross
 huàbào illustrated magazine
 tì for, in place of
 chén heavy
 jiǎnpiàokǒu gate where tickets are
 clipped
 jiǎnpiào clip ticket
 yuètái platform
 zhèngmiàn facing one, in front
 diàndòng fútī escalator
 shàng go up
 wòchē sleeping car
 jié measure word for carriage
 chēxiāng carriage
 lièchēyuán guard (on train)
 dào backwards, in reverse
 dàoshǔ counting from the end
 huòshí or (= huò)
 bāofáng private compartment
 xínglǐjià luggage rack
 bàojiàn be sorry; apologise
 fēnshǒu part company
 shùnlì successful, without a hitch
 qīnqiè warm, friendly

Notes

Part one

- 1 Yinwei xiāngyào gēn yībān lǚkè suíbiàn tánhuà. *Because they want to chat informally with the ordinary passengers.*
 xiāngyào: want Want may be expressed as yào, xiāngyào, or xiāng;
 yào is the most decided in intention, and the other two follow in descending order.

yīngdāng should be (as someone's
 due)
 hòu await
 kāichē depart (of train)
 xiàqù go down, get off
 píng'ān peaceful and safe
 yíwù píng'ān! I wish you a safe journey
 zhōng inside
 tàng measure word for a train as
 scheduled
 tíngchē stop; be halted (of vehicle)
 sǎnbù stroll, stretch legs
 jiěfá refresh oneself
 chīshí food, comestibles
 shòuhuòtíng sales kiosk
 dāngdì local
 tǔchǎn local products
 cānchē dining car
 āizhe near to, next to
 fànpiào meal tickets
 dìng order
 O exclamation expressing realization
 chuāng window
 shāchuāng screen window
 shāo burn
 wúyānméi smokeless coal
 nánmiǎn inevitably
 méiyānzi smut
 kuài yào... le will soon...
 kǎchē truck, lorry
 xíngshì drive, travel
 liǎngbiān both sides
 rénxíngdào pavement, sidewalk
 zhī measure word for a boat
 lúnchuán steamer
 diǎn to light
 dēngguāng a light

- 2 ... zuò yìngxí yàoshi lèichū bing lai, kě bú shì wánr de. ... if one becomes ill from fatigue (through) travelling second class, it's no joking matter.
 lèichū bing lai: lit. produce illness through fatigue Lèichūlai is a resultative verb: be tired and as a result produce. The object bing: illness comes, as is customary, between the two elements of the compound directional complement, chūlai.
 3 Hòuchēshì lǐ zuòmǎnle rén. The waiting-room is full of people. Literally this sentence says In the waiting room it is seated full of people. For full of something, a verb is supplied (here zuò: sit) before mǎnle; for instance if a hotel is full of people, the word zhù: live, stay would be supplied: zhù mǎnle rén.
 4 Huǒchē tōngguò Nánjīng Chángjiāng dàqiáo dàodá Nánjīng. The train arrives in Nanking after passing over the Nanking Yangtze Great Bridge.
 tōngguò is a verb here, meaning go through, go across, pass over.

Part two

- 5 Qìpò kě méi zhème xióngwěi! (But) its air was certainly not so majestic!
 Méi (yǒu) ... nàme/zhème ... is a form for a negative comparison. Whether nàme or zhème is used depends on whether the standard for comparison is before one (zhème) or not (nàme). If the standard for comparison is mentioned, nàme/zhème may be omitted: Wǒ méi yǒu tā gāo: I am not as tall as him. If it is not mentioned, then nàme/zhème may not be omitted.
 6 Lái, wǒ tì nín nàzhe zhèige shǒutí píbāo ba. Come on, I'll carry this hand luggage for you.
 tì The basic meaning of tì is substitute for, so as a preposition its proper meaning is in place of, or for in the same sense. That is the way it is used in this sentence. One does, however, find it used instead of gěi for (in the interest of).
 7 Bùgǎndāng, wǒ zìjǐ lái. Much obliged (lit. I wouldn't presume), I'll do it myself.
 lái This is the pro-verb lái, which may stand for any action presently required.
 8 Nǎr de huà, zhè shì yīngdāng de. Not at all, it was my privilege.
 a nǎr de huà: not at all This expression may be understood as nǎlǐ lái de huà?: words which come from where? i.e. What is the basis of those words?—implying there isn't any.

- b **zhè shì yīngdāng de** Literally means *this is as it should be*, i.e. no less than you had a right to expect. As it is a conventional response, however, it is translated in such terms.
- 9 ... **nín kěyǐ xià chē zài yuètái shàng sànsan-bù, jiějie-fá.** ... *you can get off the train and walk about on the platform to refresh yourselves.*
sànbù, jiěfá Both these are verb-object constructions: **sànbù** is literally *scatter steps* (i.e. *stroll*), and **jiěfá** is *dispel weariness* (*refresh oneself*). When verb-object constructions are reduplicated, only the verb is repeated.
- 10 **Yuètái shàng yǒu mài dōngxī de ma?** *Are there vendors on the platform?*
mài dōngxī de is literally *those who sell things*, hence *vendors*.
- 11 **Hái yǒu, nín yào kāi chuāng de shíhòu, zuihǎo búyào kāi shāchuāng.**
Another thing, when you want to open the window, it's best you don't open the screen window.
- a **hái yǒu:** *for another thing* This expression always starts a sentence, introducing an after-thought.
- b **búyào:** *don't* This is the negative imperative. The direct order would be **Nǐ búyào kāi shāchuāng:** *Don't open the screen window!* As **zuihǎo** is simply an adverbial expression its addition does not affect the cast of the sentence, whereas the English *it's best (that)* requires a change to the indicative mood.
- 12 **Yǒu yì zhī lúnchuán yào cóng Dàqiáo xiàmian tōngguò le.** *A steamer is going to pass under the Great Bridge.*
cóng: *by way of* In Chinese you have to use the apparently cumbersome phrasing of *by way of under the bridge*.
- 13 **Dào le wǎnshàng, dàqiáo shàng diǎnqǐ wàn zhǎn dēngguāng.** *When it gets to evening, on the bridge are lit a great many lights.*
wàn: *ten thousand* **Wàn** is not designating an exact number, just a countless number. Ten thousand as an accurate number would be **yí wàn**.

Translation

One

Delegation leader: In Nanking we visited the Chengxian Street Elementary School. This elementary school is named after the street. In the entire school there are twelve hundred pupils in all, and fifty-eight staff. The majority of those in the school are children of workers' families. In Chinese elementary schools there are generally more female teachers, and this elementary school is also the same.

The elementary school was formerly a six-year system school, but now, it has been shortened to the five-year system. Although it is an elementary school, they pay great attention to ideological education.

The children are all very lively, very polite, and obedient to rules. They always raise their hands, wanting to speak. As soon as they saw foreign visitors coming in, they clapped their hands in welcome. When the teacher waved her hand, they stopped immediately.

This elementary school runs a tiny factory, and cultivates a big vegetable plot, which enables the students to work. In this way they can foster a spirit of love for work.

In the school there is a dining room, and some of the pupils eat their lunch at school. The vegetables eaten at lunch time are mostly those produced in the school vegetable garden.

Two

Visiting classrooms

Delegation leader: Ah, the windows of the classroom are all open, don't they feel cold?

Su Ping: We keep them open even in winter. This is in order to train the body.

- Delegation leader:** They are open even in winter?
If it were us, I'm afraid we couldn't stand it.
- Su Ping:** China's education policy pays great attention to moral, academic, and physical education, all together.
Thus, training the body is an important goal of elementary school education.
- Delegation leader:** About how many pupils are there in each class?
- Su Ping:** In each class the maximum does not exceed forty.
- Su Ping:** This is a language lesson.
- Delegation leader:** Which year?
- Su Ping:** Second year.
- Delegation leader:** Considering that they're in the second grade, the Chinese characters written on the blackboard are quite difficult!
- Su Ping:** Chinese characters, with their many varieties and many strokes, are difficult to learn.
- Delegation leader:** Can't you teach language using Roman letters?
- Su Ping:** China's proper form of writing is Chinese characters, and Roman letters are only a kind of symbol used to spell the sound for Chinese characters.
- Delegation leader:** I've just spoken to some of our little friends, and they can speak Mandarin, but still with something of a Nanking accent.
- Su Ping:** That's right, there are quite a lot of them who use the Nanking dialect at home.
- Delegation leader:** Are the textbooks compiled uniformly by the state?
- Su Ping:** They are not compiled uniformly by the state.
Owing to the differences between regions, the content is different, too.

The little factory

- Su Ping:** This is the factory run by our school.
- Delegation leader:** Do other schools all have this kind of small factory, too?
- Su Ping:** They do.
Our factory actually can't be called a factory, because the accommodation is both cramped and crude; but the pupils all like to have practical study here.
- Delegation leader:** What is it that they make?
- Su Ping:** Simple parts for cars.
- Delegation leader:** Then, do the car factories buy these parts?
- Su Ping:** Right.
In this way, on the one hand, we can foster a spirit of love for work, and on the other, we can serve the people.
- Delegation leader:** This is really killing two birds with one stone!
- Su Ping:** Even if a pupil's grades in class are good, if his ideology or labour have problems, he can't be reckoned to be a good student.
- Delegation leader:** Um, in this respect China is greatly different from other countries.

New words in this lesson

Chénxiánjiē xiǎoxué Chengxian Street Elementary School
jiē street
míngmíng to name, give a name to
quánxiào the entire school
jiào-zhíyuán staff
duōbàn for the most part
zǐdì young people (in a family); sons and brothers
yībān on average
jiàoshī teacher
zhì system
suōduǎn reduce
zhòngshì lay stress on
sīxiǎng thought, ideology; ideological
huópo lively
lǐmào courtesy
yǒu lǐmào courteous
shǒu abide by
guīju rules
shícháng frequently
jǔshǒu raise the hand
fāyán speak (in public)
gǔzhǎng applaud, clap
huīshǒu wave the hand (for someone to desist)
-xialai tail off (verb ending)
kāipi open up for cultivation
kuài piece, plot (of ground)
yuándi vegetable plot
péiyǎng foster, nourish
àihào love
shítáng dining hall, refectory
yí bùfen part of
zhōngfàn lunch
suǒ particle used in relative clauses
jiàoshì classroom
chuānghu window
duànliàn forge; train
shēntǐ body
shòubùliǎo be unable to bear
fāngzhēn policy
déyù moral education
zhìyù academic education

mùdì aim, objective
bān class or group
zuì duō at the most
yǔwén language
niánjī year (class of pupils belonging to a certain year)
zhào according to, in terms of
hēibǎn blackboard
hànzì Chinese characters
bīhuà stroke (in a character)
hǎo easy to
Luómǎzì Latin letters, romanization
zhèngshì proper
wénzì form of writing
yònglái use to
pīnyīn spell the sound; spelling
fúhào symbol
kǒuyīn accent
shíyòng to use
Nánjīnghuà Nanking dialect
tóngyī uniform(ly)
biānxiě compile
yóuyú due to
dìqū region, district
shíjì shàng in actuality
zhǎixiǎo narrow, cramped
jiǎnlòu crude
shíxí learn from practice, have practical training
língjiàn spare parts
qìchēchǎng car factory
gòumǎi purchase
yì fāngmiàn . . . yì fāngmiàn . . . On the one hand . . . on the other . . .
fúwù serve, render service
yìjǔ-liǎngdé kill two birds with one stone
chéngjì record (of attainment), results
suàn be considered, be reckoned
diǎn point, respect

Part one

- 1 Zhèi suǒ xiǎoxué shì yǐ jiē míngmíng de. *This elementary school is named after the street.*
- a yǐ ... míngmíng: *name after* ... This is best learned as a set pattern, but taken separately, yǐ has the meaning of *in accordance with*, *following* or *after*, rather than *with* or *by* (L22, N5a), and míngmíng means *name a name*, i.e. *give a name*.
- b shì ... de This is employed to explain the situation—"that's how it got its name".
- 2 Zhèige xuéxiào duōbàn shì gōngren jiāting de zǐdì. *The majority of those in this school are children of workers' families.*
In Chinese it is possible to say, because of the loose relationship between subject and predicate, "this school is (!) ... children", whereas in English one has to say "it is ... children who go to this school".
- 3 Jiàoshī yì huǐshǒu, tāmen jiù lìkè tíngxiáilái. *As soon as the teacher waved her hand they immediately stopped.*
tíngxiáilái Tíngxiáilái focuses attention on the ACTION coming to a halt, tíngxiáilái would denote the completion of a PHASE in a developing situation.
- 4 Zhèige xiǎoxué bànle yí ge xiǎoxiǎo de gōngchǎng, hái kāipìle yí dà kuài yuándì ... *This elementary school runs a tiny factory and cultivates a big vegetable plot ...*
- a xiǎoxiǎo: *tiny* When adjectives are reduplicated, the effect may be to exaggerate the quality, so xiǎo: *small* when reduplicated becomes *tiny*, dà: *big* when reduplicated becomes *very big* or *huge*, and so on.
- b yí dà kuài yuándì: *a big plot of ground* Measure words which genuinely measure quantities of things, like kuài: *piece of* may themselves be modified ("a big piece", "a small piece", etc.). Compare yí dà wǎn fàn: *a big bowl of rice*.
- 5 Zhōngfān shí suǒ chí de shūcài, dàdōu shì zài xuéxiào yuándì lǐ shēngchǎn de. *The vegetables which are eaten at lunch time are mostly those produced in the school plot.*
suǒ This word, which is not much used in colloquial Chinese, is an explicit marker for an adjectival clause describing something which is the OBJECT of the verb in that clause. Suǒ always immediately precedes the verb. The adjectival clause goes into English as a relative clause, and the effect of using suǒ is similar to using the explicit marker *which*, i.e. saying *the vegetables which are eaten* instead of *the vegetables eaten*. Another example: wǒmen suǒ tāolùn de wèntí: *the*

questions which we discussed. Suǒ need not be used: wǒmen tāolùn de wèntí means the same.

Part two

- 6 Zhè shì wèile yào duànliàn shēntǐ. *This is in order to train the body.*
wèile yào: *in order to* This differs little from plain wèile (L10, N2a). Its literal meaning is *on account of wanting to*.
- 7 Zhōngguó de jiàoyù fāngzhēn shì déyù, zhìyù, tǐyù dōu zhòngshì de. *China's educational policy is to stress moral, academic and physical education, all (these three).*
- a shì ... de is used with the implication "that's the type of policy it is".
- b dōu Has to RESUME all the things it brackets together, and the verb (zhòngshì) goes with it to the end of the sentence. If the order were dōu zhòngshì déyù, zhìyù, tǐyù that would mean (some bodies) *all lay stress on moral, academic and physical education*.
- 8 Měi bān zuì duō búguò sìshí ge. *In each class the maximum does not exceed forty.*
Literally this sentence reads *Each class at the most is no more than forty*.
- 9 Shì jǐ niánjī? *Which year is it?*
Classes in schools and colleges are called niánjī: *year-class*, like the American "grades", and numbered, the lowest being number one. Which class? is therefore asked in terms of *how many?*: jǐ. Niánjī functions as a measure word.
- 10 Zhào èr niánjī lái shuō, ... *Considering it is a second year class, ...*
zhào: *according to* Zhào is very similar to àn (L18, N5), indeed they combine together to make ànzhào, which has the same meaning of *according to*, in terms of. Zhào ... lái shuō is to *speak in terms of* ... or to *judge by the standards of* ...
- 11 Hànzì, zhōnglèi duō, bǐhuà duō, shì bù hǎo xué. *Chinese characters, having many varieties and many strokes, ARE difficult to learn.*
shì Shì may lend stress to a verb. Another example: Wǒ shì rènshi ta: *I do know him*.
- 12 Luómǎzì búguò shì yí zhǒng yònglái gěi hànzì pīnyīn de fúhào bàle. *Roman letters are only a type of symbol used to spell the sound for Chinese characters, that's all.*
yònglái: *use to* This introduces a verbal construction. Yònglái pīnyīn is used to spell the sound; gěi hànzì is adverbial, for Chinese characters.
- 13 ... dàn háishi duōshǎo dàizhe yìxiē Nánjīng kǒuyīn. ... *but still with something of a Nanking accent.*
- a duōshǎo: *to some extent* (L20, N11) and yìxiē: *a little* (= yìdiǎnr) reinforce each other.

- b *dàizhe* means *having incidentally*; usually it is translatable as the preposition “with”.
- 14 Dui, tāmen zài jiāting lǐ shǐyòng Nánjīnghuà de xiāngdāng duō. *That's right, there are quite a lot of them who use Nanking dialect at home. Literally this says: . . . of them, those who use Nanking dialect at home are quite a lot. . . . de stands for the ones who . . .*
- 15 Yóuyú dìqū de bùtóng, . . . *Owing to differences between the regions, . . . yóuyú: owing to* This word always begins a sentence, introducing reasons for a consequence which may or may not be marked by *jiù*.
- 16 Tāmen zuò de shì shénme? *What is it that they make?*
Literally this says: *That which they make is what?*
- 17 Dui, zhèyàng yì fāngmiàn kěyǐ péiyǎng àihào láodòng de jīngshén, yì fāngmiàn yě kěyǐ wèi rénmin fúwù. *That's right, in this way on the one hand we can foster a spirit of love for work, and on the other we can serve the people.*
- a Yì fāngmiàn . . . yì fāngmiàn . . . : *on the one hand . . . on the other . . .*
This construction is parallel to *yìbiānr . . . yìbiānr . . .* (L3, N14), but its reference is to abstract matters rather than to perceptible actions. *Fāngmiàn* might be more precisely rendered as *aspect*, and *yì fāngmiàn* as *in one respect*.
- b wèi rénmin fúwù: *serve the people* Fúwù: *serve* takes as its preposition *wèi*: *for the sake of*.

Lesson twenty-six

At Shanghai

Translation

One

Delegation leader: Shanghai is China's largest industrial and cultural city, the population is about ten million, and it is also one of the biggest cities in the world.

Before the Liberation, I came here several times, but this is my first time since the Liberation.
Shanghai's big buildings are the same as before, only those big sign boards, movie posters, etc. of the past have all disappeared. The former horse racing course has now become the People's Park, the biggest gambling hall has changed into a gymnasium, and the night club has become the cultural palace.

The streets are full of bustle, crowded with pedestrians, and the expressions of the people are very bright, the clothes of the young people seem to be a little colourful compared to Peking.

We stayed in Shanghai three days.
We visited the Lu Xun Memorial Hall, Lu Xun's Old Residence, the Shanghai diesel engine factory; and we also roamed around the shopping streets.

Two

At Lu Xun's Old Residence

Wang Dawen: We've arrived at Lu Xun's Old Residence, please get off.

Delegation leader: Is Mr. Lu Xun's residence in this small alley?

Wang Dawen: That's right, it's the ninth gate on the right. Let's go in.

Delegation leader: Oh, there hangs a panel, "Lu Xun's Old Residence".

Wang Dawen: This house is a three-storey building.
On the first floor is the dining room, his study is on the second floor, and on the third floor is the room of his child and its nurse. Let's go in and have a look.

Delegation leader: All right.

Wang Dawen: This is the study of Mr. Lu Xun.

Delegation leader: Um, his writing brush, inkstone, manuscript paper, etc. are still placed on the table.

- Wang Dawen:* The furnishings of this study were all arranged under the directions of his wife, Comrade Xu Guangping in 1951, according to the conditions in which they were used when Mr. Lu Xun was alive.
- Delegation leader:* The many essays of his which attacked reactionary writers were written on this table then!
- Wang Dawen:* He was not only a great writer, but also a great thinker, and a great revolutionary.
- Delegation leader:* Mr Lu Xun lived here for how many years?
- Wang Dawen:* He came to Shanghai in 1927, so he lived in Shanghai ten years. But the period he lived here was the last three years.
- Delegation leader:* Then, did he die in this house?
- Wang Dawen:* That's right, he passed away in 1936 in this house, at the age of fifty-five.
- Delegation leader:* Look, this calendar shows October nineteenth, Monday. That is the day he passed away.

Visiting a diesel engine factory

- Deputy foreman:* We welcome your visit.
- Delegation leader:* We are causing extra trouble for you.
- Deputy foreman:* Not at all, not at all, we don't have much experience, so we hope that all of you will give us your opinions.
- Delegation leader:* You are too polite.
Can you tell us what horsepower diesel engines your factory chiefly manufactures?
- Deputy foreman:* From forty horsepower upwards, there are many kinds.
- Delegation leader:* What is the trademark of your products called?
- Deputy foreman:* It's called "Dongfeng".
The "Dongfeng" trademark diesel engine is very famous in China.
Oh, it's already after twelve o'clock.
Let's go to the dining hall and have lunch.
- Delegation leader:* All right.
- Deputy foreman:* Today, there are some worker comrades who will accompany you and eat with you.
Please sit wherever you wish.
- Delegation leader:* Then, I'll sit down here.
- Deputy foreman:* Because of the request of your delegation, today what we have prepared is an ordinary staff and workers' meal.
I don't know if it will suit your taste.
- Delegation leader:* Thank you for agreeing to our request.
- Deputy foreman:* Do you need knives and forks?
- Delegation leader:* No thank you, no need to take such trouble.
- Worker:* Mr. Delegation leader, will you eat mantou or will you eat rice?
I'll fetch it for you.
- Delegation leader:* Please don't serve me.
I'll get it myself.
- Worker:* Here, every day, we have quite a few kinds of dishes, so we can have a free choice.
Today, we have chosen a soup and two dishes.
This is fried fish, and this is fried beancurd with vegetables.

- Delegation leader:* Ah, so this is beancurd!
I thought it was meat.
It looks very much like meat.
Umm, the taste is also like meat.
I think the meat I ate at the hotel yesterday was not as good as this.
The people of your country really have subtle cooking methods!
My wife ought to learn from the Chinese people, ha ha!
- Wang Dawen:* Mr. Delegation leader, let me get you another bowl of rice.
- Delegation leader:* Enough.
Thank you, I'm already full.

New words in this lesson

- | | |
|---|--|
| gōngyè industry | jiēshì shopping streets |
| chéngshì city | lòng small alley |
| shìjiè world | yòucè right side |
| dūshì city, metropolis | páizi sign, placard |
| jiěfàng liberation; term for the Communist victory in 1949 | shūfáng study |
| céng previously; sign for the indefinite past | máobǐ writing brush |
| gāolóu-dàshà tall and massive buildings | yàntai inkstone, ink slab |
| fú strip; measure word for paintings, posters, etc. | gǎozhǐ manuscript paper |
| zhāopái sign board | Xu Guāngpíng Xu Guangping (wife of Luxun) |
| guǎnggào advertisement; poster | zhǐshì instruct, direct |
| pǎomǎchǎng racecourse | shēngqián lifetime; while alive |
| Rénmín gōngyuán People's Park | qíngxíng state, situation |
| dūchǎng gambling hall | bùzhì arrange |
| gǎichéng change into | gōngjī attack |
| yèzǒnghuì night club | fǎndòng reactionary |
| wénhuàgōng palace of culture | wénrén literary man, writer |
| jiēmiàn the streets (as opposed to other aspects of the city) | záwén (extempore) essays |
| biǎoqíng expression (displaying feeling) | wěidà great |
| mínglǎng bright, cheerful | wénxuéjiā writer |
| niánqīngrén young people | sīxiǎngjiā thinker |
| fúzhuāng dress | gémíngjiā revolutionary |
| huáli colourful, gay | fángzi house |
| Lǔxùn Luxun (1881-1936), famous essayist and writer of short stories | sǐqù die (die + go away) |
| jìniànguǎn memorial hall, museum | qùshì pass away |
| gùjū former residence | rìlì calendar |
| cháyóujiǎng diesel engine factory | zhǐ point to, show |
| yóuguàng roam round | fù-zhǔrén deputy foreman |
| | tiān máfan give extra trouble, add to burdens |
| | mǎlì horsepower |
| | cháyóuji diesel engine |

chǎnpǐn product
páihào brand, trademark
Dōngfēng "East Wind"
pái brand, trademark
tuán group, delegation
yāoqiú request
zhígōng staff and workers
bù zhī don't know (= bù zhīdào)
hé to suit, conform with
kǒuwèi taste
dāozi knife
chāzi fork
xuǎn choose

gānzháyú fried fish
qīngcài zhádòufugānr fried beancurd
with fresh vegetables
dòufu beancurd
yàngzi look, appearance
wèidào taste, flavour
bùrú not as . . . ; not as good as . . .
guiguórén the people of your country
(polite)
pēngtiáo cuisine; culinary
fāngfǎ method
yīnggāi should, ought to
chībǎo eat one's fill (eat + full)

Notes

Part one

- 1 Jiěfàng qián, wǒ céng láiguó jǐ cì, dàn jiěfàng hòu, wǒ zhè shì dì yī cì.
Before the liberation I came (here) a few times, but after the liberation, this is my first time.
- a céng Céng is the shorter version of céngjīng. We have met céngjīng in the meaning of "previously" before, and that works all right in the absence of any other time indicator, but here we already have jiěfàng qián: before the liberation, which shows that céng(jīng) may have only a grammatical function of placing an event in the indefinite past, like -guo which attaches to the verb.
- b wǒ zhè shì dì yī cì: this is the first time for me This may be interpreted as wǒ zhè huí/cì shì dì yī cì: this time is the first time for me.
- 2 zhǐshì guòqu nàxiē dà fú zhāopái diànyǐng guǎnggào shénmede, dōu méi yǒu le. . . . only those big sign boards, film posters and so on, have all disappeared.
dà fú zhāopái: big sign boards Fú: strip is a measure word for cloth and paper, particularly on which something is painted or written; here fú is modified by dà, making literally big-strip, or large-scale.

Part two

- 3 Zhèige shūfáng lǐ de bǎishè dōu shì yī-jiǔ-wǔ-yī nián zhào tā fūren Xǔ Guǎngpíng tóngzhì de zhǐshì, àn Lǔxùn xiānsheng shēngqián shíyòng de qíngxíng bùzhì de. The furnishings in this study were all arranged in 1951 under the direction of his wife, Comrade Xu Guangping, according to the situation in which they were used in Mr. Luxun's lifetime.
The skeleton of this sentence is Zhèige shūfáng lǐ de bǎishè dōu shì . . . bùzhì de: all the furnishings in this study were arranged . . . ; the rest, describing how they were arranged, comes before the verb bùzhì.
- 4 Nǐmen kàn, zhèige rìlì zhǐ de shì shíyuè shíjiǔ rì, xīngqīyī. Look, this calendar shows October 19th, Monday.
Literally this says What this calendar shows is . . . If a noun were supplied it would be rìzi: zhèige rìlì zhǐ de rìzi: the day which this calendar shows.
- 5 Bù zhī hé nǐmen de kǒuwèi bù hé? I don't know if it will suit your taste. Bù zhī is short for bù zhīdào: I don't know (if). You remember that indirect questions of the type which follows are couched in alternative choice terms -hé/bù hé: suits/doesn't suit?
- 6 Wǒ juéde zuótiān zài fàndiàn lǐ chī de ròu bùrú zhèige hǎochī. I feel the meat we ate yesterday in the hotel was not as tasty as this.
bùrú Bùrú is used in comparisons. When some quality is being discussed, it functions like méi yǒu; bùrú zhèige hǎochī is the same as méi yǒu zhèige hǎochī. But bùrú can also function independently: wǒ bùrú tā: I am not as good as him.
- 7 Wǒ àirén yīnggāi xiàng Zhōngguó rénmin xuéxi, My wife ought to learn from the Chinese people.
xiàng The basic meaning of xiàng is facing towards, hence in some circumstances it can commute with wàng (going towards), as in the phrase yìzhí xiàng/wàng qián zǒu: go straight forwards. In the combination xiàng . . . xuéxi, however it matches the English preposition from—learn from.
- 8 Tuánzhǎng xiānsheng, zài gěi nín tiān wǎn fàn ba. Lit. Mr. delegation leader, let me again for you add a bowl of rice.
tiān: add May be amplified as "obtain or furnish additional numbers or supplies" of something. Another example: Nǐ tiān diǎnr yīfú ba: Put on some extra clothes (because its cold), or Buy some new clothes (to add to those you have already).

Lesson twenty-seven

Sightseeing at Xihu
(West Lake)

Translation

One

Delegation leader: There is a saying in China: "Above there is Heaven, below there is Su-Hang (Suchow-Hangchow)".
I knew already that Hangchow is a city of entrancing scenery, and multitudes of ancient relics.
Today, being able to come here, I feel an inexpressible happiness.
I think the other delegation members probably feel the same as I do.

Hangchow is not far from Shanghai, it only takes three hours by train to get there.

Hangchow is not like Shanghai, it doesn't have tall buildings, but the thoroughfares are flat and straight and broad, and lined with paulownia trees; the scene is very beautiful.

The Hangchow Hotel in which we stay is by the side of the Xihu, and by opening the window, one can see the whole view of Xihu.

In picture magazines I had seen scenic photos of the Xihu, and also heard people say how beautiful Xihu is, but how could that compare with the Xihu unfolding in front of my eyes?
Really, hearing about scenery is not as good as seeing it, seeing is believing.

It is already approaching dusk, I and Mr. Wang, as well as some delegation members, go together to the lake for a walk.
The water of the lake in autumn appears particularly clear and calm.

We go through the Baidi and walk in the direction of the town.
The Yan'an Road is Hangchow's busiest avenue, and there we bought many Hangchow special products.
For example: brocade, Longjing tea, fans, scissors, etc.; I also bought a Chinese people's cap, and a pair of Chinese cloth shoes.

The second day in the morning, we go to look around the Lingyin Temple, and in the afternoon, we come back and take a boat to go around the Xihu.

There are too many famous sites and ancient relics in Hangchow, and it is impossible to see them all in a few days.
I feel that Hangchow as a whole is one big park combining natural beauty and man-made beauty.
When it is time to leave, everybody says they hope to have a chance to come again to sight-see.

Two

The Lingyin Temple

Delegation leader: When was the Lingyin Temple built?

Wang Dawen: In the Eastern Chin era, which is more than sixteen hundred years ago.

Delegation leader: What temple is it?

Wang Dawen: It's a Zen temple.

It's Hangchow's oldest and largest temple, and it's also one of China's famous old buildings.

Delegation leader's wife: Do people still come here to worship Buddha?

Wang Dawen: Very few; even if there are some, they are mostly old people.

Here is the Tianwangdian, the statues on the left and right are the Si da Jingang.

Delegation leader's wife: So big!

Wang Dawen: Going in further, there is the Daxiongbaodian, which is also the Zhengdian.

Delegation leader: Is the great image of Buddha in the centre, the main Buddha?

Wang Dawen: That's right, it is the Shijiamouni Buddha.

Delegation member A: How tall is it?

Wang Dawen: It is more than twenty metres high.

Delegation leader: On that plaque on top are inscribed the words:

"Erected in 1955", what does that mean?

Wang Dawen: Before Liberation the Zhengdian and the statue of the main Buddha were already so rotted they were not presentable.

In 1953 the government decided to rebuild it, and it was completed in 1955.

Delegation leader: That's how it was.

No wonder the colours are so new!

Xihu

Wang Dawen: We've arrived at the Santan yinyue, let's go and look round.

Delegation leader: Looking at Xihu from here, Xihu appears even more beautiful.

Wang Dawen: Can you see the three stone pagodas standing up above the surface of the lake?

Delegation leader: I can see them.

Wang Dawen: On every full-moon night, the view made by the inverted image of the three pagodas reflected on the surface of the water and the round moon is truly beautiful.

- Delegation leader:* I see.
That's why this place is called the "Santan yinyue".
Wang Dawen: You're absolutely right (lit. not a bit wrong).
Delegation leader's wife: Unfortunately, tonight is not a full-moon night.
Delegation member A: Stand over there, and I'll take a picture of you.
Delegation leader: Thank you.
Delegation leader: I'll take a picture of you.
How do you take a picture with this camera?
Delegation member A: It's very simple, you don't need to adjust the aperture and distance, you just press the shutter and that's it.
Delegation leader: Good.
I'm taking it.
Smile, O.K., that's it!
Wang Dawen: Let's take the boat and go to Huagang Park.

New words in this lesson

- Xīhú "West Lake", in Hangzhou
jù measure word for phrases, sentences
súyǔ common saying
shàng above
tiāntáng heaven, paradise
xià below
Sū-Háng Suzhou and Hangzhou
fēngguāng landscape, scenery
míngmèi bright and captivating
gǔjī ancient relics
zhòngduō multitudinous
xīnzhōng in one's heart; inside
shuōbùchū unable to express in words
qítā (the) other
mǎlù main thoroughfare, main road
píngzhí flat and straight
wútóng paulownia trees
jiādao line the roads (on both sides)
měiguān beautiful to look at
Hángzhōu fāndiàn The Hangzhou Hotel
quánjǐng the whole view
zhàopiàn photograph
rúhé how
zěnné how (= zěnné)
bǐdeshàng compare with (compare + get up to)
zhǎn unfold, lay out
yǎnqián before one's eyes
tīng jīng bùrú kàn jǐng hearing about a scene is not as good as seeing a scene
bǎi wén bùrú yí jiàn a hundred hearings are not as good as one seeing
jìn near, approach
huánghūn dusk
háyǒu as well as, along with
yítóng together, in company
húpàn margin of the lake
húshuǐ water of the lake
xiǎnde appear, look
géwài exceptionally
qīngchéng clear (of water)
píngjìng calm, still
chuānguò pass through
Báidī "White Dyke" (embankment along Xihu)
shìnei inside of the city
Yán'ānlù Yen'an Road
fánhuá thriving, prosperous
tèchǎn special products
zhījīn brocade
lóngjīngchá longjing ("dragon well") tea
shànzi fan
jiǎndāo scissors
dǐng measure word for hat
rénmínmào "people's cap"

- shuāng pair of (anything matching)
bùxié cloth shoes
Língyīnsì Lingyin Temple
yóu travel round, go round
míngshèng famous sites, beauty spots
zhěnggè as a whole, in its entirety
jiānyǒu combine, have both . . . and . . .
zìránměi natural beauty
rénngōngměi man-made beauty
línbié about to leave, on the point of departure
jiānglái in the future
Dōngjìn Eastern Chin (A.D. 317-420)
jù (separated) from
sì temple, monastery
Chánsì Zen temple
sìyuàn temple
bái worship
fó Buddha
Tiānwángdiàn Hall of the Heavenly Kings
zuǒyòu to left and right
lìxiàng statue
Sìdà jīngāng Four Great Deva-kings
Dàxióngbǎodiàn Hall of the Great Hero (Buddha)
zhèngdiàn main hall
zhèngzhōng in the centre
dàfó great Buddha
zhǔfó chief Buddha
Shìjiāmóunífó Sakyamuni Buddha
shàngmian on top
kuài measure word for tablet
biǎn'é horizontal name tablet
tí inscribe
zìjù words, phrase
fǔxiǔ rot, decay
bù chéng yàngzi not presentable, lamentable
chóngjiàn rebuild, reconstruct
Sāntán yinyuè "Three pools impression of moon" (One of the ten famous spots of Xihu the "West Lake")
húmiàn surface of lake
shù stand up, stand erect (not of persons)
shítǎ stone tower, pagoda
yuèyè moonlit night
shíwǔ yuèyè night of the 15th of month, lunar calendar, when the moon is full
tǎ pagoda
yìng reflect, cast an image
dàoyǐng inverted image or silhouette
yuányuè round moon
guāngquān (camera) aperture
duì adjust
àn press
kuàimén (camera) shutter
xiào smile
ēi exclamation expressing approval
dé O.K., got it!
Huāgǎng gōngyuán "Flower Harbour Park", on the banks of Xihu

Notes

Part one

- Zhōngguó yǒu jù súyǔ shuō . . . China has a saying which says . . .
a This is a pivotal construction, súyǔ being both the object of yǒu and the subject of shuō.
- jù The word yì: a is omitted: yǒu yí jù súyǔ.
Jìntiān néng lái zhèlǐ, xīnzhōng yǒu shuōbùchū de gāoxìng. Today, being able to come here, I feel an inexpressible happiness.
a xīnzhōng: in my heart This is an alternative expression to xīnlǐ

- b **shuōbùchū**: *inexpressible* This is the negative potential form of the resultative verb **shuōchū**: *speak out = express*; here it is being used to modify **gāoxìng**.
- c **gāoxìng**: *happiness, pleasure* Previously we have met **gāoxìng** as an adjective; like most Chinese words it can act as more than one part of speech.
- 3 ... **zuò huǒchē zhǐ yào sān ge zhōngtóu jiù dào le**. Lit. *by train it just takes three hours, then you have arrived*.
zhōngtóu: *hour* The other word we know for *hour*, **xiǎoshí**, may act either as a measure word (**sān xiǎoshí**) or a noun (**sān ge xiǎoshí**). **Zhōngtóu** has the noun ending **-tóu**, therefore can never be a measure word, and needs the intercession of **ge** between the numeral and it.
- 4 ... **yě tīng rénmen shuōguò Xīhú shì rúhé de měilì**, ... *and have also heard people say how beautiful the Xihu is*,
 a **shuōguo**: *say* (sometime in the past) Note that Chinese is more precise in attaching the sign of the past (**-guo**) to the word for “say”, rather than that for “hear”, which is only a preliminary verb; you don’t say **tīngguo rénmen shuō**. A parallel example: **Wǒ qù Běijīng dōngwuyuán kànguo xióngmāo**: *I have been to see the pandas at Peking Zoo*. (Lit. *I went to Peking Zoo and have seen the pandas*.)
- b **rúhé (de)**: *how* **Rúhé** (Lit. *like what?*) is rather bookish language for **zěnmé**: *in what way(s)*. The **de** is the adverbial marker, appropriate since **rúhé** is modifying **měilì**: *how beautiful*.
- 5 **Zhēnshì tīng jǐng bùrú kàn jǐng, bǎi wén bùrú yí jiàn**. *Truly, hearing about a scene is not as good as seeing a scene, seeing is believing*.
 a **bùrú**: *not as good as* Here **bùrú** is used independently of any quality being compared (L26, N6).
 b **bǎi wén bùrú yí jiàn** Literally this means “a hundred hearings are not as good as one seeing”.
- 6 **Shíjiān yǐ jìn huánghūn, wǔ hé Wáng xiānsheng, háiyou jǐ ge tuányuán, yìtóng dào húpàn sànbù**. *It is already approaching dusk; I and Mr. Wang, as well as some delegation members, go together to the lake for a walk*.
 a **Shíjiān yǐ jìn huánghūn**: lit. *The time is already approaching dusk* More colloquially this would be **kuài dào bàngwǎn le**.
 b **háiyou**: *and ... as well* This introduces an afterthought, or something secondary.
- 7 **Qiūtiān de húshuǐ xiǎnde géwài qīngchéng píngjìng**. *The water of the lake in autumn appears extraordinarily clear and calm*.
xiǎnde: *appear* **Xiǎnde** means *appear* not in the sense of contrasting with reality, but of manifesting outwardly some quality. Another example: **Tā yǐjīng wúshí duō suì le, kěshì hái xiǎnde hěn niánqīng**: *He is already over fifty, but still appears very young*.

- 8 ... **jué bú shì jǐ tiān gōngfu kěyǐ kànwán de**. ... *it is impossible to finish seeing them in a few days*.
 a Literally this says (*they are*) *decidedly not something that one can finish seeing within a few days of time*.
 b **shì ... de** is used for generalizing about the situation.
 c **bú shì ... kěyǐ**: *it is not that ... you can* It is one of the peculiarities of **kěyǐ** that in the negative it only applies to permissibility: **Wǒ bù kěyǐ qù** can only mean *I am not allowed to go*, not “circumstances prevent me going”. However, here it is **shì**, referring to the whole fact, which is negated, not **kěyǐ**, so that restriction is lifted.

Part two

- 9 ... **jù xiànzài yǒu yìqiān liùbǎi duō nián le ba?** ... *which is more than sixteen hundred years ago now, isn't it?*
jù xiànzài: *from the present day* **Jù** is an alternative to **lí**: *separated from* (in space or time).
- 10 **Hǎo dà ya!** *How big!*
 The intensifying **hǎo** (*very, good and ...*) is often used in admiring exclamations.
- 11 ... **wǒ gěi nǐmen zhào zhāng xiàng** ... *I'll take a picture of you*.
 Notice that **gěi** (someone) **zhàoxiàng** means *take a photograph of* (someone). **Gěi** does not mean “for” in this context. If you take a photograph of something FOR someone, because they are unable to, the preposition in Chinese would be **tǐ**.
- 12 **Jiǎndānde hěn, guāngquān, jùlǐ, dōu yòngbuzháo duì, nín zhǐyào yí àn kuàimén jiù xíng le**. *It's very simple: you don't need to adjust either the aperture or the distance, you just need to press the shutter and it will be all right*.
 a **jiǎndānde hěn** **hěn**: *very* is being used in the complement position here; this is to make it clear that **hěn** is not an empty word, but really means “very”.
 b **yí ... jiù** This construction represents a consequence (**jiù ...**) automatically ensuing from one brief action (**yí ...**): *once you press the shutter, that's it*.
 c **zhǐyào**: *just need to* Essentially **zhǐyào** does the same job as **yí** in the preceding note, so they reinforce each other.
- 13 **Wǒ zhào le**. *I'm taking it*.
 Note that this does not mean “I have taken it” but “I have now set about taking it”.

Translation

One

Delegation leader: Today is our last day in China.
 Now, in Canton, the Chinese Export Products Trade Fair is just being held, and we have decided to go and have a look. The Trade Fair is held every year, once at each of the two seasons, spring and autumn.
 During the Fair session, numerous members of trading companies come from all over the world to take part.

The exhibition building is filled with a peaceful and friendly atmosphere.
 The exhibition building is spacious, the displays are abundant, (so) it is impossible to finish seeing it in a short time.
 In the exhibition halls were displayed oil products, and heavy industry products, textile goods, art handicraft products, etc., (so) the state of China's Socialist construction could be taken in at a glance.

Today, we are going to attend a farewell dinner party to be held at the Beiyuan Hotel.
 A saying goes: "Eat in Canton".
 Canton food is very famous in China, too.
 Mr. Wang told us with a smile:
 "There are some very strange things in Canton food!
 Later on, you'll have the opportunity to enjoy it".

Two

Visiting the Trade Fair

Wang Dawen: We've already finished seeing all the heavy industry products.
 Here is the textile products hall.

Delegation leader's wife: Look, how beautiful this rose embroidered cloth is!

Delegation leader: Mr. Wang, which place does that beautiful scenery depict?
 I can't recall for the moment.

Wang Dawen: It's Xihu, the West Lake.

Delegation leader: Ah, that's right.
 It's embroidered really skillfully.

Wang Dawen: Then, let's go to see the local products and the livestock hall.

Wang Dawen: Here displayed are Chinese herb medicines, furs, tea-leaves, carpets, etc.

Delegation leader's wife: Look, how fine the sheen is on this mink fur!
 It must be very expensive.

Delegation leader: We can only satisfy the eye.

Wang Dawen: In this light industry hall, besides things for daily use, musical instruments, china and toys, there are also on display products of art and crafts.

Delegation leader: Hey, that pair of jasper vases is so finely engraved!

Delegation leader's wife: If we have time, I really would like to examine them at length!

A farewell party

Branch manager: This dinner party, today, is only to express our regrets at your departure, though we don't have any special dishes, please everyone partake in a leisurely manner.

Delegation leader: Thank you for your kindness.

Branch manager: I have a proposal, first allow us to toast the health of all of you, success in your work, and hope that the friendship and cultural exchange between our two peoples will develop day by day, Cheers!

Delegation leader: The days have passed really quickly, our trip to China has already come to its last day without our noticing it, we feel really somewhat reluctant to leave.
 We are sincerely grateful that we are able to conclude this trip enjoyably and significantly.

Branch manager: We have been all this time talking, the food will get cold soon.
 If these dishes get cold, they don't taste good, please hurry and eat.
 This is genuine Canton food, please try it.

Delegation leader: Thank you.

Branch manager: Broadly speaking, Chinese food can be divided into several kinds as Peking food, Shanghai food, Szechwan food, Canton food.
 Each has its own special characteristics.

Delegation leader: Does it?

Branch manager: Canton food, as you all probably know, is famous for its snake dishes.
 In a moment they'll serve the "Longhudou" (dragon fighting tiger).
 The "dragon" of the "Longhudou" refers to the "snake", and the "tiger" to the "cat", the taste is very good.

Delegation leader's wife: Oh, do you use snakes to make Canton food?
 When the dish is made and ready, is it impossible to make out the shape of the snake?
 When it is brought, please, Mr Wang, you must tell me. I certainly dare not try it.

Delegation leader: Mr. Wang, please don't tell her!
 I want to see what her expression will be like, when she finishes eating it.
 Ha, ha!

- Delegation leader's wife: You are really bad.
 Branch manager: Everybody, please don't stand on ceremony, eat some more.
 Delegation leader: We have drunk and eaten to capacity.
 Branch manager: If you have a chance in the future, we hope that you will come to China, again.
 Delegation leader: Thank you, in the future, if we have the chance, we are sure to come again to visit.

New words in this lesson

Zhōngguó chūkǒu shāngpǐn jiāoyìhuì
 Chinese Export Products Trade Fair
jiāoyìhuì trade fair
huìqī fair session
màoyì trade
màoyì gōngsī trading company
guó country
zhǎnguǎn exhibition hall
héping peace
yǒuhào friendship
qīfēn atmosphere
guǎngkuò wide and spacious
zhǎnpǐn goods exhibited
shíyóu petroleum
zhìpǐn manufactures
yījī and (joining nouns)
zhònggōngyè heavy industry
fǎngzhìpǐn textiles
měishù art; fine arts
gōngyìpǐn craft products
shèhuìzhǔyì socialism
jiànshè construction
yí mù liǎorán understand at a glance
chūxí attend (a function)
Běiyuán fàndiàn Beiyuan Hotel
xībié say farewell (regretfully)
wǎnyàn dinner party
shí zài Guǎngzhōu eat in Canton (i.e. the best food is in Canton)
Guǎngzhōucài Canton food
xīxiào laugh merrily
qíguài strange, odd
xīnshǎng appreciate; see if one enjoys
fǎngzhìpǐnguǎn textile products hall
xiù embroider
qiángwēi rose
huāyàng pattern, design

chōushā drawnwork
jīnxiù beautiful (like a tapestry)
yíshí momentarily
xùchǎn livestock
Zhōngyào Chinese herbal medicines
máopí furs
dītǎn carpet
děngděng and so on, and such things
diāopí mink fur
guāngzé sheen, gloss
xiǎngbi think . . . must; be sure that
bǎo fill to the full
bǎobao yǎnfú feast the eyes
qīnggōngyè light industry
rìyòngpǐn things for daily use
yuèqì musical instruments
cíqì china utensils, ceramics
hēi exclamation expressing admiration
biyù jasper
diāokè carve, engrave
jīngměi exquisite
fēnshèzhǎng branch manager
biǎoshì express
yìsī intention, meaning
yòng partake (of food)
jiànyì propose, suggest
yǒuyì friendship
jiāoliú exchange
riyì increasing day by day
fāzhǎn develop
bùzhī-bùjué unnoticed, unawares
gǎndào to feel, experience
yúkuài enjoyable; happy
yìyì meaning, significance
zhōngxīn from the bottom of the heart
gù give the attention to

jiǎnghuà to talk
dídao genuine, authentic
lǒngtǒng in a general or oversimplified way
Zhōngguócài Chinese food
fēnwéi divide into
Běijīngcài Peking food
Shàngháicài Shanghai food
Guǎngzhōucài Canton food
yǐ on account of
shécài snake dishes
Lóngshǒudòu "dragon and tiger fight" (name of food dish)

lóng dragon
shé snake
hǔ tiger
māo cat
kānchūlai detect, make out (look + come out)
juéduì absolutely
língjiào "receive instruction"; try at someone's suggestion
jiūjīng after all, in the event
huài bad
jiǔ zú fàn bǎo "drink sufficient and food replete": had one's fill

Notes

Part one

- Jīntiān shì wǒmen zài Zhōngguó de zuìhòu yì tiān.** *Today is our last day in China.*
 When measure words, like **tiān**: *day*, are modified they still have to be preceded by a numeral or **zhèi/nèi**: **zuìhòu liǎng tiān**: *the last two days*; **zuìhòu yì tiān**: *the last (one) day*.
- Huìqī zhōng yǒu hěn duō màoyì gōngsī de zhíyuán cóng shìjiè gè guó lái cānjiā.** *During the Fair session numerous members of trading companies come from all over the world to take part.*
a zhōng: *during* **Zhōng** has the general meaning of *within the confines of*, and may apply to space or a designated time period.
b shìjiè gè guó: *lit. the various countries of the world.*
- ... jué bú shì duǎn shíjiān nèi kěyǐ cānguānwán de.** *... it decidedly is not something which one can finish looking round in a short time.*
jué bù: *decidedly not* This is a plain emphatic negative, different from **bìng bù**: *not at all*, which is used when there is a supposition to the contrary; in this case no one would assume that the fair could be looked round quickly.
- Jīntiān wǒmen yào chūxí zài "Běiyuán fàndiàn" kāi de xībié wǎnyàn.** *Today we are going to attend a farewell dinner party to be held at the Beiyuan Hotel.*
 The verb **chūxí**: *attend* takes a direct object: **chūxí wǎnyàn**: *attend a dinner party*. The **zài** (*at*) belongs to the modifying clause, **zài Běiyuán fàndiàn kāi de**: *which is to be held at the Beiyuan Hotel*.

- 5 **Xiǎngbishi hěn guì ba.** *I think it must be very expensive.*
Xiǎngbishi Literally means *think necessarily it is*, which would be more commonly expressed as *I think . . . must be . . .* Another example of **xiǎngbì**: **Wǒ de xìn, xiǎngbì nǐ yǐjīng shōudàole!** *I think you must have already received my letter.*
- 6 **Zhǐshì bǎobǎo yǎnfú ba.** *We can only enjoy the look of it.*
 a **zhǐshì**: *only, no more than.*
 b **bǎobǎo yǎnfú**: lit. *make replete the eye's bliss, i.e. feast one's eyes.*
- 7 . . . **diāokède kě zhēn gòu jīngměi de!** . . . *they are engraved really exquisitely!*
jīngměi: *exquisite* has three adverbs to strengthen it: **kě**: "indeed"; **zhēn**: *really*; and **gòu**: *enough (for anyone)*. The final **de**, you remember, habitually accompanies **gòu**.
- 8 **Jīntiān de zhèige wǎnyàn, zhǐshì biǎoshì wǒmen xībié de yìsi . . .**
This dinner party today is just meant to express our regret at parting . . .
zhǐshì biǎoshì . . . de yìsi: *just meant to express . . .* The word **yìsi** has a broad range of meanings, including *meaning, intention, mind, thought*. **Shì . . . de yìsi** is a formula for *is with the intention of . . .*, or *is intended/meant to . . .*
- 9 **méi shénme hǎo cài.** *Lit. we haven't any good food.*
 It is practically obligatory for a host to deprecate the quality of the food he is to give his guests.
- 10 **Wǒ jiànyì xiān ràng wǒmen wèi zhūwèi de shēntǐ jiànkāng, gōngzuò shùnlì, zhù liǎng guó rénmin de yǒuyì hé wénhuà jiāoliú rìyì fāzhǎn, gānbēi!** *I propose, first let us drink a toast to the health of all of you, success in your work, and to the hope that the friendship and cultural exchange between our two peoples will develop day by day!*
 a The essence of this sentence is **Wǒ jiànyì, xiān ràng wǒmen gānbēi**: *I propose, first let us drink a toast (drain our cups)*. All the rest is stating what they should drink to, introduced by **wèi**: *for the sake of*.
 b **rìyì**: *increasing daily* This is a more concise way of saying **yì tiān bǐ yì tiān**: *one day more than the last*.
- 11 **Nénggòu yúkuài de ér yǒu yìyì de jiéshùle zhèi cì de lǚxíng, wǒmen zhōngxīn gǎnxiè.** *We are sincerely grateful that we have been able to conclude this trip enjoyably and significantly.*
ér: *and* **Ér** is used to join two adjectives or descriptive phrases which are of equal standing.
- 12 **Wǒmen guāng gù jiǎnghuà le, cài dōu yào liáng le.** *Lit. We have only heeded talking, the food is already almost cold.*
 a **guāng**: *only (to the disregard of everything else)*: see L23, N14.
 b **dōu**: *already, as much as*: see L7, N12.

- 13 **Lóngtǒng de shuō, Zhōngguocài kěyǐ fēnwéi Běijīngcài, Shànghǎicài, Sīchuāncài, Guǎngzhōucài jǐ zhǒng.** *Broadly speaking, Chinese food can be divided into the several kinds: Peking food, Shanghai food, Szechuan food, and Canton food.*
 a **fēnwéi**: *divide into* The Chinese idiom is "divide as (**wéi**)". For **wéi** as a verb ending see L17, N6.
 b **jǐ zhǒng**: (*these*) *several kinds* Grammatically **jǐ zhǒng** resumes or brackets together the various kinds of food already specified.
- 14 . . . , **yǐ shécài yǒumíng.** . . . , *is famous for its snake dishes.*
yǐ Apart from referring to instrumentality (L22, N5a), **yǐ** also points to cause or attribution: **yǐ . . . yǒumíng** means *famous on account of . . .* In the ordinary spoken language there are few other combinations in which it occurs in this sense.
- 15 **Zhèige "lónghǔdòu" de "lóng" zhǐ de jiù shì "shé", . . .** *What the "dragon" of "dragon and tiger fight" refers to is in fact "snake", . . .*
zhǐ de is a pronominal construction: *that which it refers to*.
- 16 **Duānlaile, qǐng Wáng xiānsheng kě yào gàosu wǒ yì shēng a.**
When it is brought, you really must tell me, Mr. Wang, please.
 This utterance combines the two modes of polite request (**qǐng**: *please would*) and insistence (**kě yào**: *really must*). **Yì shēng** reinforces the polite aspect: Mr. Wang is only being asked to utter *one sound* (L5, N15).

Alphabetical vocabulary

Chinese - English

A

a *particle*
āi *exclamation*
āi (āizhe) near to, next to
ài love, be fond of
àihào love
àirén husband; wife
āiya *exclamation*
àn dark
àn according to, by
àn to press
ānpái arrange
ànshí punctually
ānwèi comfort
ānxīn with peace of mind

B

bā eight
bǎ *preposition introducing object*
ba *particle*
bàba father, dad
bābǎocài mixed vegetable dish
bǎi hundred
bǎi lay out
bài worship
bài defeat, suffer defeat
báicài Chinese cabbage
báicài niúròutāng soup with cabbage and beef
bàifāng visit
báigānr spirit made from sorghum
bǎihuò dàlóu department store
bǎihuò gōngsī department store
bǎishè fittings, ornaments
báitáng white sugar
bǎi wén bùrú yí jiàn "a hundred hearings are not as good as one seeing"
bàle that's all
bān shift, move across
bān class, group
bàn half
bàn mix
bàn manage, see to, deal with; run, operate
bàn play the role of
bànfā way, method
bāng help

bāngmáng help
bàngōng work, do business
bàngōngshì office
bàngqiú baseball
bānguòlai move over, across
bàngwǎn early evening, dusk
bànlǐ manage, carry out
bànshēng half-cooked; soft-boiled
bànshichù office
bàntiān a long time
bāo wrap
bāo packet
báo thin
bǎo fill to capacity
bǎo yǎnfú feast the eyes
bào hold in the arms
bào newspaper
báobǐng thin pancake
bāofáng private compartment
bàogào report
bǎogui precious
bāoguǒ parcel
bǎoliú preserve
bǎomǔ nursery attendant; nanny
bàoqiàn apologise, be sorry
bǎozhòng take care of oneself
bēi cup; cup of
bēi stone, monument
běi north
bèi by; *sign of the passive*
bèi times, -fold
Běijīngcài Beijing food
Běijīngrén native of Beijing
bèirù bedding
běn *measure word*
bēnlái originally
bènniàng head for
běnzhe on the basis of
běnnzì notebook
bǐ compared with; against
bì must
biān ... biān on the one hand ... on the other
biàn time
biànbì constipated
biànchéng become
biǎn'é horizontal name tablet
biànfàn simple meal, everyday meal
biàngēng alter, change

biànhuà change
 biānpào string of fire-crackers
 biǎntáoxiàn tonsils
 biānxiě compile
 biǎo watch
 biǎoqíng expression
 biǎoshì express
 biǎoxiàn express, represent
 biǎoyǎn perform
 bíchú wall cupboard
 bícǐ mutually, one another
 bideshàng able to compare with
 bié do not
 bié other
 biérén other people, someone else
 bīhuà stroke
 bǐjiào comparatively
 bǐjìběnr notebook
 bǐng "C" (third in order)
 bǐng (not) at all
 bǐng and also
 bǐng illness
 bǐngchuáng (hospital) bed
 bīngjiā military expert
 bǐngliè abreast
 bǐngpiē moreover
 bǐngqíng condition (of patient)
 bǐngzhuàng symptoms, condition
 bǐsài match, competition
 bítí nose mucus
 bixū must
 bixū yào must
 biyào (be) necessary
 biyè graduate
 biyù jasper
 bīzhēn realistic, life-like
 bízi nose
 bōli glass
 bōlichú glass case
 bówùguǎn museum
 bù not; not so
 bù chéng yàngzi not presentable
 bú kèqǐ de informally, without ceremony
 bú shì ... jiù shì if not ... then ...
 bú shì wánr de it's no joke
 bù tōng qìr be blocked
 bù xiāng shàng-xià neither having an
 advantage over the other
 bù xíng be no good, unacceptable
 bù yídìng not fixed or definite
 bù yíhuìr a short while
 bù zěnmē not particularly

búbì be unnecessary; no need to
 búcuò not bad, pretty good
 búdàn not only
 búdàn ... érqǐě ... not only ... but
 also ...
 bùdéliǎo be terrible, awful
 búduàn unceasing
 bùfēn part
 bùgǎndāng I wouldn't presume
 búguò but, however; merely
 bújìn no end
 bùjiǔ soon
 bùjué unceasing
 bùkě yàn indescribable
 bùliǎo not able to
 búlùn no matter ...
 bùqū unyielding, dauntless
 bùrán otherwise
 bùrú not as ...; not as good as ...
 bùtóng different
 bùxiè don't mention it
 bùxié cloth shoes
 bùxíng on foot
 búxiùgāng stainless steel
 búyào do not
 búyòng no need to
 búyòng shuō no need to say, let alone
 búyòng xiè don't mention it
 bùyuǎnr not far
 bùzhī not know
 bùzhī arrange; décor, layout
 bùzhī-bùjué unnoticed, unawares
 búzhù de unceasingly

C

cā wipe
 cāi guess
 cáí only then; only
 cǎi colour
 cài vegetables; dish of food
 caidān menu
 cǎisè colour
 caizǐ talented young man
 cānchē dining car
 cānguān visit, look round
 cānjiā take part in
 cǎohuā flowers (in natural state)
 céng previously; sign for indefinite past
 céng measure word; layer; level
 céngjīng previously
 cèsuǒ toilet

chā insert, stick in
 chá look up (information)
 chá tea
 chàbùduō about, about right; about the
 same; almost
 chágǔǎnr tea-house
 cháhàotái directory enquiries
 cháhú teapot
 cháiyóuji diesel engine
 cháiyóujichǎng diesel engine factory
 chán cicada
 cháng often
 cháng long; in length
 cháng qì long breath, sigh
 cháng taste, try
 chǎng measure word
 chǎng act, scene (in play)
 chǎng factory
 chàng sing
 chángcháng frequently
 chàngcí song words, lyrics
 chángdù length
 chàngpiānr record
 chàngqiāng style of singing opera
 chángtú long distance
 chǎnpǐn product
 chán sì Zen temple
 cháo dynasty
 chǎo quick-fry
 chǎonào noisy
 cháwǎn tea-bowl
 chàyè tea leaves
 chāzi fork
 chē vehicle
 chè remove
 chēbǎ handlebars
 chén heavy
 chèn while; take advantage of
 (opportunity)
 chéng orange (colour)
 chéng become, so as to make
 chéng fill
 chéng receive, be honoured by
 chéngjì record, results
 chénglì establish
 chénglóu watch-tower
 chéngqiáng wall
 chéngshì city
 chēngzàn praise
 chénliè set out, display
 chénlièpīn exhibits
 chènshān shirt

chēpiào ticket
 chēxiāng railway carriage
 chèxiāqu clear away
 chēzhàn station
 chī eat
 chǐ measure of length, approx. a foot
 chībǎo eat one's fill
 chībúxiàqù cannot eat any more
 chídào arrive late
 chīguāng eat up
 chīhǎo finish eating
 chīshí food, comestibles
 chòng strong (taste or smell)
 chóngdié piles one on another
 chóngjiàn reconstruct
 chōngmǎn fill up
 chōngxī develop (film)
 chóngxīn anew
 chōu smoke
 chōu shrink
 chōu smash, drive (pingpong, tennis)
 chōushā drawn work
 chōuti drawer
 chū come out, appear; produce
 chū ménr go out (of the house)
 chǔ get along together
 chù place; measure word
 chuān put on (clothes)
 chuān string together
 chuán boat
 chuán pass on
 chuǎn pant
 chuàn a string of
 chuāng window
 chuáng bed; measure word for blanket
 chuānghu window
 chuānghuā paper window decorations
 chuāngkǒu window, position (in post
 office, etc.)
 chuāngshang on the window(s)
 chuānguò pass through
 chuānshang put on (clothes)
 chuánzhēn diànbào radio photo
 chūchāi be sent on mission, business
 chúchuāng shop window
 chūcǐ first time
 chūfā set out
 chúfáng kitchen
 chúfēi unless
 chúfēi ... cái ... unless ... not ...
 chuī blow
 chuīdǎo blow over

chuīduàn break off (in wind)
chuīhuài ruin (due to wind)
chūkǒu export, exports
chūlai come out
chúle apart from
chúle ... yíwài apart from ...
chùlì stand erect, tower
chūn spring
chūnjié Spring Festival, New Year (by lunar calendar)
chūnlían spring hanging scrolls
chūntian spring
chūqu go out
chūtǔ excavate
chūxí attend a function
chūxià early summer
chūyuàn leave hospital
chūzhōng junior high school
cì time, occasion
cíqì china utensils, ceramics
cíwài besides, apart from this/these
cōng onion
cóng from; by way of
cóng ... qǐ starting from ...
cónglái all along, from the start
cóngqián formerly
cóngshì engage in
cù promote
cùi crisp
cún deposit
cúnshí undigested food
cūnzi village
cuò wrong

D

dá extend to
dǎ make (telephone call); put up (umbrella); practise (taijiquan); send (telegram); play (games)
dà big, great; oldest
dǎbàn dress up
dàbiàn stool, faeces
dàbūfen for the most part
dàdōu for the most part
dàfó Great Buddha
dàgài roughly, probably
dàgē eldest brother
dàhàn profuse perspiration
dài bring with one; have with one; with; take (a person somewhere)
dài dynasty

dàibiǎo representative
dàibiǎotuán delegation
dàifu doctor
dàihuīqu take back
dàikè entertain guests
dàjiā everybody
dǎjiǎo disturb
dàjiē avenue, high street
dǎkāi turn on (radio); turn on (light); open
dǎléi to thunder
dàlóu big building
dāmǐ rice
dàn but
dàn bland
dāndǎ singles
dāng ... de shíhou at the time when ...
dāngdài present day
dāngdì local
dāngrán of course
dàniáng ma'am
dànshi but
dānwèi unit
dānwù waste (time)
dānxīn worry
dǎnzī courage
dào to, to reach, to arrive
dào actually, after all
dào *measure word*
dào backwards, in reverse
dàobái spoken dialogue
dàobuliǎo not able to arrive
dàochù everywhere
dàodá arrive at
dàohàn perspiration (in sleep)
dàoshǔ count backwards
dàosui ears of rice
dǎotā collapse
dàoxǐ offer congratulations
dàoyǐng inverted image
dāozi knife
dàozi rice (plant)
dàqiáo great bridge
dǎsǎo sweep
dǎshǎn flash (lightning)
dàshì major event
dǎsuàn intend
dǎtīng make enquiries
dǎtōng get through (telephone)
dàxué university
dàxuě heavy snow
dàiyī overcoat
dàiyī general idea

dāying consent, agree
dàyǔ heavy rain
dàyuē roughly, probably
dàzhishang on the whole
dé get; OK
dé bìng fall ill
dé *sign for adverbial complement*
de *subordinating particle*
de huà *end marker for conditional construction*
de *adverbial suffix*
dédào get, receive
děi must, have to; need, take (time)
déle ready
dēng ascend
dēng and similar...; etc, and so on
dēng wait (until)
dēngchù and similar places
dēngdài await
dēngděng and so on, and such things
dēngguāng light
dēnghòu wait (for)
Déwén German (language)
déyì pleased with oneself
déyù moral education
dī low
dī *prefix for ordinal numbers*
dì fields; place, ground
dì èr tiān the following day
dì yí cì the first time
diǎn decimal point; hour of the clock; point, respect; a little
diǎn to check; to order (from menu)
diǎn to light
diànbào telegram
diànbàofēi telegram charge
diànbàozhǐ telegram form
diànchē tram
diàndēng electric light
diàndòngfúti escalator
diànhuà telephone
diànjī electrical equipment
diànlíng electric bell
diǎnr a little
diǎnshang to light
diànshìjī television set
diàntī lift
diǎntóu nod the head
diǎnxīn little snacks and pastries
diànyǐng(r) film
diāokè carve, engrave
diāopí mink fur

diāoqī carved lacquer
diànshǎi fade, lose colour
dìbǎn floor(boards)
dìdao genuine, authentic
didi younger brother
didiān location, place
dié fold
diézi plate
difang place; point, aspect
dǐng *measure word*
dìng order
dīng book, reserve
dǐngbù top (part)
dǐngshàng on top
dìqū region, district
díquè decidedly, certainly
dìr background
dītān carpet
dītóu lower the head
dìwáng emperors and kings
dìxia underneath
dōng east
dòng move
dòng cave
dōngbianr east side
dōngde understand
dōnglín neighbour on the east side
dōngmiàn east side
dōngnánfāng south-east direction
dōngpōròu a stewed meat dish
dōngtian winter
dōngwùyuán zoo
dōngxi thing
dòngzhao catch a chill
dòngzuò movement
dōu both, all
dōu already
dòufu beancurd
dòuzhēng struggle
dù degree
duān carry
duǎn short
duàn section, stretch
duànliàn train
duǎnshān blouse
dǔchǎng gambling hall
duī pile up, heap
duì correct; adjust; that's right
duì towards; against
duì a pair
duìbuqǐ sorry
duìfu cope (with)

duìhào according to (ticket) number
duìhuàn exchange (money)
duìle that's right
duìxiàng intended, partner
duìzhǎng captain
dùn to stew
dùnròu stewed meat
duō to what extent?; much, many; more,
more than; how...!
duō dà niánji how old?
duō dà suishur how old?
duōbàn mostly
duōcì multiple
duōduō a great deal
duōme how...!
duōnián (for) many years
duōshǎo to some extent
duōshao how many?
duōxiè many thanks
dūshì city
dúshū to study
dùzi belly

E

è (be) hungry
ě grunt of acknowledgement
ēi exclamation
èn press
ènshang affix
ér and
èr two
èrgē second elder brother
èrlái in the second place
érqiě moreover, and also
èrshíāi twenty or so
Éwén Russian (language)

F

fā despatch
fābàorén sender of telegram
Fǎguó France
fāhong be red, inflamed
fālǎn feel listless
fǎlěng feel chill
fàn food
fàn-cài food, meal as a whole
fàndiàn hotel
fǎndòng reactionary
fāng square
fáng room

fàng put, place
fàng let off (fireworks)
fāngbian convenient
fāngfǎ method
fānghàor room number
fāng-Huá visiting China
fāngjià have/take a holiday
fāngjiān room
fāngsōng relax
fānguǎnr restaurant
fāngwèn visit
fāngwū house(s)
fāngzhēn policy
fāngzhīchǎng textile factory
fāngzhīpín textiles
fāngzhīpǐnguǎn textile products hall
fāngzhuō rectangular table
fāngzhuōzi rectangular table
fángzi house
fángzū rent
fánhuá thriving, prosperous
fānpǎir backhand
fānpǎor meal ticket
fānshān-yuèlǐng climb hills and stride
over peaks
fān-shǒu-wéi-gōng turn defence into
attack
fānyì translate
fār way, method
fāshāo be feverish
fāshēng produce, give rise to
fāshòu (issue and) sell
Fǎwén French (language)
fāyán speak (in public)
fāzhǎn develop
fēi fly
fēi spend
fēicháng exceptionally
fēijiǐ aeroplane
féilǎo fertiliser
fèixīn go to trouble, be kind and
thoughtful
fèiyòng expense, fee
fēn minute; unit of currency (1/100 of a
yuan)
fēn separate into
fēn measure word
fēnfu give instructions (to)
fēng wind
fēng measure word
féngbù mend (clothes)
fēngchē spinwheel, windmill

fēngchuī-yǔdǎ battering from wind and
rain
fēngfù ample, abundant
fēngguāng landscape, scenery
fēnghuǒtái beacon station
fēngjiàn feudal
fēngjǐng scenery
fēngjǐng míngxìnpian picture postcard
fēngnián year of plenty
fēngyǔ storm
fēngzheng kite
féngzhì sew and make (toy)
fēnhóng pink
fēnpèi allocate
fēnr measure word
fēnshè branch office
fēnshèzhǎng branch manager
fēnshǒu part company
fēnwéi divide into
fó Buddha
fú a strip; measure word
fù pay
fúdiào bas-relief
fúhào symbol
fùjīn near, in neighbourhood of
fùkuǎndān bill
fù-mǔ parents
fū-qī husband and wife
fùqīn father
fūren wife; Mrs
fútī gangway
fúwù serve, service
fúwùtái service desk
fúwùyuan attendant, steward
fúxiǔ to rot, decay
fùyǒu be rich in
fùyǒu have attended
fùzé take responsibility
fúzhuāng dress
fū-zhǔrén deputy foreman

G

gāi should
gǎi change
gǎibiàn change
gǎichēng rename
gǎichéng change into
gǎikuàng general situation, outline
gǎitiān another day
gān empty, drain
gǎn dare

gǎn roll (pastry)
gàn do
gānbēi Cheers! Drink up!
gānbù cadre
gǎndào feel, experience
gǎndòng move (emotionally)
gǎndòng rén moving
gāng just now
gāngcái just now
gānjīng clean
gānkuài quickly, in haste
gànmá? What for?
gǎnmào catch a cold
gǎnpèi respect
gǎnshang come round to; by (the time of)
gǎnxiè (be) grateful
gānzháiyú fried fish
gāo high; in height
gǎo do
gàocí take one's leave
gāodù high, high degree of
gāoliang sorghum
gāolóu-dàshà tall and massive buildings
gāosu tell
gāoxìng pleased
gāoxuèyāzhèng high blood pressure
gǎozhǐ manuscript paper
gāozhōng senior high school
gē put
gé separated by
gè each, every; various
ge general measure word
gébì next door
gēchàng singing
gèdì various places, all over
gēge older brother
gěi for; give; sign of passive
gémìng revolution(ary)
gémìng wēiyuánhui revolutionary
committee
gémìng xiàndài jīngjù revolutionary
modern opera
gémìngjiā revolutionary
gēn together with, and
gèng even more
gēnggài outline
gèngjiā even more
gēnlai come along
gēnshang catch up
gēnzhe thereupon, following after
gēr song
gèr single unit

gèrén each person
gèsè all sorts
gèsè gèyàng all sorts and varieties
gèwài exceptionally
gèwèi each of you (polite)
gèwēihuì revolutionary committee
gèyàng all kinds (of)
gōng attack
gòngchǎndǎng communist party
gōngchǎng factory
gōngfu (spare) time
gōngfur (spare) time
gōnggòng public
gōnggòng qìchē bus
gònghéguó republic
gōngjī attack
gōngjījīn public savings
gōngjīn kilogramme
gōngkè lesson
gōnglǐ kilometre
gōnglùqiáo road bridge
gōng-nóng-bīng workers, peasants, soldiers
gōngren (manual) worker
gōngshè commune
gōngsī company
gōngyè industry
gōngyipǐn craft products
gōngyù apartment, flat
gōngyuán park
gōngyuán AD
gōngzī wages
gōngzuò work
gōngzuò rényuán employee
gòu enough; considerably
gòuchéng construct, form
gòumǎi purchase
gǔ ancient
gǔ shíhour ancient times
gǔ whiff (of)
gù give attention to
guā blow (wind)
guà hang
guàhào to register
guàhàochù registry
guàhàodǎn registration card
guàhàoxìn registered letter
guǎi turn
guàibude no wonder
guǎiwānr turn corner
guǎn *prep. to introduce object before*
jiào: call

guāng only, just
guàng take a stroll round
guǎngchǎng square (in a town)
guǎnggào advertisement, poster
guǎngkuò wide and spacious
guǎngquān aperture (camera)
guāngzé sheen, gloss
Guǎngzhōucài Cantonese food
guànjūn champion, championship
guānkǒu a pass, with gate
guǎnlǐ manage(ment)
guānshì see to business, be efficient
guānxi connection, relevance
guǎnxián wind and strings
guānxīn be concerned about
guānyú regarding, concerning
guānzhàn watch a contest
guānzhào look after
guānzhòng audience, spectators
guàshang hang up
guàixin worry, fret
gùgōng old palace
guì expensive
guìguórén people of your country (polite)
guīju rules
guīmó scale
guixìng may I ask your name?
gǔjī ancient relics
gùjū former residence
guō pot
guó country
guò past; celebrate; pass (time); cross; excessively, too
guo *verb suffix indicating indefinite past*
guóji international
guójiā state, country
guòjiǎng over-praise
guòjié celebrate festival
guólai across (*verb complement indicating movement towards speaker*)
guònián celebrate New Year
guòqù (in the) past
guòqu go past
guǒrán indeed, as predicted
guòshù fruit trees
guòyibúqù be sorry, apologetic, embarrassed
gǔshí ancient times
gùshi story
gǔzhǎng applaud, clap

H

hā hā sound of chuckle
hái as well, else; still; still more, even more; even...!
hǎibá above sea level
hǎiguān customs
háishi or; rather, for preference; still
háiyǒu as well as, along with
háizi child
hànbáiyùshí white jade stone
hánfēng cold wind
hángkōng air, aviation
hángkōngqiān airmail label
hángkōngxìn airmail letter
hángyè trade, line of business
hángyuán bank employee
hànshān vest, undershirt
hànzi Chinese characters
hǎo good; all right; good and, very; easy to; enable, so as to
hǎo de all right, very well
hǎo le finished, all ready now
hǎo jǐ a good few
hào day (of month); number
hǎochī tasty
hàofěi squander
hǎohāo de well, carefully
hǎo-huài good or bad, well or ill
hǎojiǔ a good long time
hǎokàn good-looking, pretty
hàomǎ number
hǎoshuō not at all
hàotóu number
hǎowánr amusing, diverting
hǎoxiàng apparently
hǎoxiàng ... shìde like, seem to be
hǎoyì well intentioned
hàozhào call
hē drink
hé together with, and
hé river
hé be equivalent to; suit, conform with
hēi black, dark
hēi exclamation
hēi-bái black and white
hēibǎn blackboard
hēiqilai get dark
héjú drawn game
hěn very

héping peace
héshì suitable
hóng red
hóngdēng red lamp
hōnglōng rumbling sound
hóngshāojī red-cooked chicken
hóngzhōng red and swollen
hòu after
hòu thick
hòu await
hòubian behind
hòuchēshì waiting room
hòufēi empress
hòujīting waiting room (at airport)
hòulái afterwards
hóulóng throat
hòumian behind
hòutuì retreat
hǔ tiger
hù household
huā blurred, dazzled
huá to row
huà draw
huà transform, -ize, -fy
huàbào illustrated magazine
huábīng ice-skating
huābù printed cloth
huāhuā drumming noise
huài bad
huáli colourful, gay
huǎn postpone, delay
huàn change; change to
huànchéng change into
huāndù celebrate
huáng yellow
huángchéng Imperial City
huángdì emperor
huánggōng Imperial Palace
huánghūn dusk
huángyóu butter
huānyíng welcome
huànzhuò change to (travel by)
huāpíng vase
huāqiāng decorated spears
huār flower
huàwùyuán operator (telephone)
huāyàng pattern, design
huāyàng pattern, design
húdié butterfly
huí return, go back

huì know how to; will, will possibly; be in the habit of
huìchǎng meeting hall, auditorium, stadium
huídá reply
huīfù recover, be restored to
huíguó return to one's own country
huíjiā return home
huíjià rate of exchange
huílai come back
huilai directional complement: back
huìqī fair session
huíqù go back
huiqu directional complement: back
huìr a while
huīshǒu wave the hand
huítóu later, after a while
huítóu jiàn see you later
húmiàn surface of lake
húnshēn (over) the whole body
huó knead
huó live
huǒ fire
huò exclamation
huò or
huǒchái match
huǒchē train
huòdé gain
huódòng activities
huópo lively
huòshi or
húpàn margin of lake
hūrán suddenly
hùshi nurse
húshuǐ water of lake
hútòng alley
hútòngkǒu mouth, end of alley
hútòng alley
hūxī breathe
hùzhào passport

J

jí How many?
jí yuè Which month?
jǐ crowd, jostle, throng
jì season
jì send
jì note down
jiā home, family; *measure word*

jiā put (between)
jiǎ "A" (first in order)
jià leave, time off work
jià *measure word*
jiācháng everyday, commonplace
jiācháng biànfàn homely food
jiādao line the roads (on both sides)
jiājí urgent, express
jiājí diànbào express telegram
jiājīn more urgently
jiān *measure word*
jiǎn cut
jiàn *measure word*
jiàn see, meet; perceive
jiǎnchá inspect
jiànchéng built (**chéng** – to completion)
jiǎndān simple
jiǎndāo scissors
jiàndào see
jiāng *preposition introducing object*
jiǎng oar
jiǎng speak
jiàng rainbow
jiàng fall
jiàng soyabean paste
jiàngu glue
jiǎnghuà to speak
jiānglái in the future
jiànguó founding of the state
jiàngxiàng generals and ministers
jiànjiān gradually
jiànkāng health(y)
jiànli establish
jiǎnlòu crude
jiànmiàn meet
jiǎnpào clip ticket
jiǎnpàokǒu gate where tickets are clipped
jiǎnpàoyuán ticker clipper
jiànshè construction
jiànyì propose, suggest
jiānyǒu combine
jiānyú fried fish
jiànzào construct
jiǎnzhi simply
jiànzhù building
jiànzhùwù building, construction
jiāo hand over
jiāo kuǎn pay the required sum
jiāo teach

jiǎo unit of currency: 1/10 of a yuan
jiào call, sing; tell order; cause, make; by (*in passive constructions*)
jiǎodēngzǐ pedal
jiāogēi hand over to
jiāogēi teach to
jiāohuáng brown (from cooking)
jiāojiǎnr roll of film
jiāoliú exchange
jiàoqilai rouse, wake up
jiàoshī teacher
jiàoshì classroom
jiāowài suburb
jiǎoxià at one's feet
jiāoyìhuì trade fair
jiāoyù education
jiàoyuán teacher
jiào-zhíyuán staff (at a school, college)
jiǎozi "Chinese ravioli"
jiàozuò be called
jiàqián price
jiār house; *measure word*
jiānr beautiful woman
jiāshang add
jiāshǔ members of family
jiāting family
jiāyǐ "subject to"
jiāyóu cheer for; get a move on
jiàzhí value
jiāzhútáo oleander
jìbùqīng unable to remember clearly
jīcéng basic, at primary level
jīchǎng airport
jīdàn egg
jìde remember
jīdòng stir, stimulate, arouse
jī meet; answer, take (telephone call); receive (service)
jiē street
jié *measure word* (a section of)
jiēdào receive
jiěfá refresh oneself
jiěfàng liberation
jiěfàngjūn Liberation Army
jiègēi lend to
jièguāng excuse me
jiéguǒ in the end
jiéhūn marry
jiējí (social) class
jiějie older sister

jiéjīng crystallisation
jiějué solve
jiěkai undo
jiēmiàn the streets
jiémù programme
jiēshang on the streets
jièshào introduce
jièshì shopping streets
jièshi strong, sturdy
jiéshù come to an end
jiētōng connect, get through to (telephone)
jiēzhe right after, in close succession
jīgòu organisation, structure
jīguān government office
jīhū almost, very nearly
jīhuì opportunity
jīhuì assembly
jìjié season
jíle extremely
jīliè energetic, fierce
jímáng hurriedly
jìmò lonely
jīn unit of weight (500 gr.)
jīn stand up to, endure
jīn closely, tightly
jìn near; close; to near, approach
jìn enter
jīnbǐ fountain pen
jīnbīosai championship
jìnbù (make) progress
jīngcǎi spirited, splendid, spectacular
jīngcháng regularly, all the time
jīngguò undergo
jīngjì economical
jīngjìng de quietly
jīngjù Beijing opera
jīngkuàng picture frame
jīnglǎoyuán old people's home
jīngmèi exquisite
jīngqiǎo delicate, intricate
jīngshén spirit
Jīngtāilán cloisonné enamel
jīngǎn don't hesitate to
jīngyàn experience
jīngzhì scenery
jīnhòu henceforth
jīnhuáng golden yellow
jìniàn commemorate
jìniàn yóupiào commemoration stamp

jìniànbēi memorial
jìniànguǎn memorial hall, museum
jìniànxiàng souvenir photographs
jǐnjí urgent
jǐnjīn barely
jīnlai verb complement in
jǐnliàng as far as possible
jǐnlítou very end
jīnnián this year
jīnqián money
jìnqu go in
jinqu verb complement in
jīnr strength
jīntiān today
jìnxíng set about, proceed (to)
jǐnxiù beautiful (as a tapestry)
jīnyú goldfish
jǐnzhāng tense, taut
jírán since
jíshì urgent matter
jiǔ nine
jiǔ a long time
jiǔ wine, spirits
jiǔ zú fàn bǎo have eaten and drunk one's fill
jiù old
jiù then; only; just
jiù shì is a case in point; that is to say
jiù yào ... le on the point of ...
jiūjìng after all, in the event
jiùshi even if
jiùyǒu old friend
jīxièhuà mechanise
jízhěnshì emergency treatment room
jú office; exchange (telephone); *measure word*
jǔ raise
jù *measure word* (sentence)
jù according to
jù (separated) from
juǎn roll up
jùchǎng theatre
jué decidedly, definitely
juéde feel
juéding decide
juéduì absolutely
juésài finals
juéwù consciousness
jùjīng-huìshén concentrate intently
jùlì distance

jùlóng giant dragon
jùmù repertoire
jūnduì soldiery
jùqíng plot of a play
jǔshǒu raise the hand
jùshuō according to report
jūsuo residence
jǔxíng hold (meeting, ceremony)
jùyǒu have
jǔzhòng weight-lifting

K

kǎchē truck, lorry
kāi open
kāi mén open (of shops etc)
kāichē depart (of train)
kāihuì hold meeting
kāimǎn open fully, be in full bloom
kāimù raise curtain
kāipi open up for cultivation
kāishǐ begin
kāishuǐ boiled or boiling water
kāiwǎng leave for, be bound for
kāiwánxiào make fun, have a joke
kāiyǎn begin performance
kàn look at, read; take the view, think; see, visit; examine, be examined
kàn yàng by the look of it
kànbùqīng unable to see clearly
kànchulai detect
kàndào see
kàndǒng make out understand
kàng-Rì zhànzhēng anti-Japanese war
kànjian see
kànqu gaze
kǎo roast, warm oneself
kào next to
kǎoyā roast duck
kē *measure word*
kě can, may
kě indeed; but
kè lesson; class
kè quarter of an hour
kè gramme
kě'ài lovable, nice
kèběn text book
kěbu you're telling me
kěfú overcome
kěn be willing to

kěnéng possibly, might
kěpà frightening
kèqì (be) polite
kèrén guest
kèwài extracurricular
kèwài zuòyè homework
kěxī unfortunately
kěyǐ can, may
kòng unoccupied
kǒngpà be afraid that, fear
kōngzhú spinning top
kǒu *measure word*
kòuchú deduct
kǒudài bag
kǒuwèi taste
kōuyīn accent
kū cry
kuài quick(ly), fast
kuài ... le on the point of, will soon
kuài yào ... le will soon
kuài *unit of currency* yuan
kuài piece, plot
kuài *measure word*
kuàichē express train
kuàigōng quick attack
kuàilè happy, cheerful
kuàimén shutter (camera)
kuàizi chopsticks
kuān broad
kuǎn sum (of money)
kuānchǎng spacious
kuānkuò wide
kuīde fortunately
kǔn tie, bind
kǔnjiēshi tie securely
kùnnan difficulty
kuòzhǎn expand
kùzi trousers

L

la *final particle*
Lǎdīng Latin
Lǎdīng zìmǔ Roman letters
lái come; come on; give, let have; do; for, over (a period of time)
... lái ... qù backward and forward
láiideji have time to, manage to
láláláiwǎngwǎng come and go
láiizhe *verb suffix for recent time*

lán blue
làn tender, soft
lángān balustrade
lánqiú basketball
lǎo old; *familiar form of address*; always, constantly; old (from former times)
lǎodàniàng old lady
lǎodàye old gentleman
láodòng labour
láodòng rénmin labouring people
láojià excuse me
lǎojiǔ old wine
lǎoniánrén old people
lǎorén old people
lǎo-yòu old or young
lǎoyuǎn a very long way
le *perfective particle*
lèi tired
léishēng sound of thunder
léiyǔ thunderstorm
lěng cold
lí (separated) from
lí pear
lǐ inside
liǎ two
lián in succession
lián ... dài including both ... and ...
lián ... yě ... even ...
liǎn face
liàn practise
liáng to measure
liáng cool, cold
liǎng two, a couple
liǎng *unit of weight* (50 gr.)
liàng *measure word*
liǎngbiān both sides
liǎngbiàn go one's own way
liǎngcè both sides
liàngguāng bright light
liángkuai cool
liǎngpáng both sides
liángshi food, grain
liángshuǎng refreshing
liánhuānhuì social get-together
liánjiē connect
liànliàn-bùshě very reluctant (to part)
liánluò get in touch (with)
liànxí practise
liánzhe together, in succession
liǎobùqǐ extraordinary, tremendous

liǎojiě understand
liáotiānr chat, gossip
liàozi material
lǐbianr inside
lièchēyuán guard (on train)
lihai severely, terribly
lǐjīng leave the territory (of a country)
líkai leave, part from
likè immediately
límào courtesy
límian inside
límianr inside
línbíe on the point of departure
líng zero
líng effective, efficient
líng bell
líng receive, take charge of; lead
líng cause, make
língdǎo leadership
línghuilai fetch
língjiàn spare parts
língjiào take advice
língqián change, odd coins
língwài besides
língxià below zero
língxīan (be) in the lead
línjū neighbour
lirú for example
lishǐ history
lǐtou inside
liú keep, retain
liú flow, run
liù six
liúbīng ice-skate
liúbīng chǎng skating rink
liúbù stay put (please don't go any further to see me off)
liúli fluent
liúxué study abroad
liwù gift
lǐxiǎng ideal
lixiàng statue
liyòng make use of
lóng dragon
lòng small alley
lóngghǔdòu name of a food dish
lóngjǐngchá "dragon well" tea
lǒngtǒng in general terms
lóu floor; multi-storied building
lóufáng storied building

lù way; line (in goods); route
lǜ green
lùchéng journey
lùetú sketch map
lǚkè passenger
lùmiàn road (surface)
lùn in terms of, according to, by
lúnchúan steamboat
luógǔ gongs and drums
Luómǎzi romanisation
lǚxíng travel
lǚxíngshè travel service
lùxù in succession, in ones and twos
lùyīnjī tape recorder
lúzi stove

M

mā mother, mum
mā wipe
mǎ horse
ma question particle
ma final particle
máfan bothersome; put to trouble
mǎi buy
mài sell
màidiào sell off
màigēi sell to
mǎli horsepower
mǎlù main road
māma mum
mǎmǎhūhū perfunctory, sloppy
mǎn full, fulfil; whole, all over
mǎn slow
máng busy
mǎnmǎnr de slowly, gradually
mántou steamed roll
mǎnyì satisfied
mǎnzú satisfied
māo cat
máo unit of currency 1/10 of a yuan
máobǐ writing brush
máomaoyǔ drizzle
máopí fur
Máotáijiǔ Maotai spirit
màoyì trade
màoyì gōngsī trading company
mǎshàng immediately
méi not
méi guānxi it doesn't matter

méi shénme it is/was nothing
méi yǒu de huà no such thing, nonsense
měi each, every; each time
měi beautiful, fine
měiféng on every occasion of
měiguān beautiful to look at
Měiguó America
měili beautiful
měimei younger sister
měinián every year
měishù art, fine art
měitiān every day
méiyānzi smut
mén door
méng receive, be favoured with
měng fierce
ménpái doorplate with house number
ménr door
mēnrè sultry
mǐ metre
miàn flour
miànbāo bread
miǎnbùliǎo inevitably, can't avoid
miànjù mask
miǎnshuì tax free
miào marvellous
miáoxiě describe
mǐfàn rice
mínfū civilian
míng bù xūchuán the reputation is deserved
míngbai be clear, understand
míngcài famous dish
mínglǎng bright, cheerful
míngmèi bright and captivating
míngmíng to name, give a name to
míngshèng famous sites, beauty spots
míngtiān tomorrow
míngxìnpian postcard
míngzi name
mófàn model
mùdì aim, objective
mùdìdì destination, goal
mǔqīn mother

N

nú noise made when cogitating
n noise of assent
ná take up; take

nǎ which?
nǎ yíkuài which part?
nà that; in that case
nágēi give to
nǎguóhuà language of any country
nài bear, tolerate
nǎinai grandmother, old lady
nálai bring
nǎli where?
nǎli nǎli not at all
nàli there
nàme in that case
nán difficult
nán male
nán south
Nánjīnghuà Nanking dialect
nánmiǎn inevitably
nánmiàn south side
nán-nǚ men and women
nánshòu hard to bear, uncomfortable
nánzī man, men
nǎr where?
nǎr de huà ne not at all
nàr there
nàxiàlai take down
nàxiē those
nàyàng that way
ne grammatical particle
nèi within
něibianr which side?
něibianr that side
něige which one?
něige that one
nèiróng content
néng can, be able
néngchī of large appetite
nénggòu able to
nǐ you
nǐ hǎo How are you?
nián year
niàn study
niánchéng harvest
niándēng New Year lanterns
niánhuà New Year paintings
nianhuò New Year goods
niánjí year (class)
niánji age
niánlíng age
niánqīng young
niánqīngrén young people

nǐmen you (*plural*)
 nǐmen zǎo good morning to you
 nín you (*polite*)
 nírénr clay figurine
 niúnǎi milk
 nóngchǎnpǐn agricultural produce
 nòngdiū lose, mislay
 nóngjù agricultural tools
 nóngmín peasants, farmers
 nòngwǎng make high, hot (*of a fire*)
 nóngyè agriculture
 nǚ female
 nuǎnhú thermos jug
 nuǎnhuo warm
 nuǎnqì central heating
 nuǎnshuǐpíng thermos flask
 nǚ'ér daughter
 nǚháizi girl
 nǚlì strive
 nǚzǐ women

O

Ō exclamation
 Ǒ exclamation
 ǒ exclamation

P

pà to fear; be afraid that
 pái row; queue
 pái brand, trademark
 pài depute, send
 páihào brand, trademark
 páiqiú volleyball
 pāizi bat
 páizi sign, placard
 pán *measure word*: a game; a dish
 pángbiānr by the side of
 pǎo run
 pǎomǎchǎng racecourse
 péi accompany
 pèifu respect
 pèijiàn accessories
 péitóng accompany
 péiyǎng foster, nourish
 pén tub, bowl, pot
 pèngjian meet, bump into
 pēngtiáo cuisine, culinary
 péngyou friend

pí skin, wrapping
 pǐ *measure word*
 piān section of book
 piàn a slice; to slice
 piányi cheap
 piào ticket
 piàoliang pretty, attractive
 píběo briefcase, small case
 píjiǔ beer
 pǐn to taste, savour
 píng even, drawn (game)
 píng bottle
 píng'ān peaceful and safe
 píngcháng normally
 píngfáng one storey house
 píngguǒ apple
 píngjìng calm, still
 píngjūn average
 pīngpāngqiú ping-pong
 pīngpāngqiú-sài ping-pong match
 píngri ordinarily
 píngxìn ordinary mail
 píngzhí flat and straight
 pín-xiàzhōngnóng poor and lower-middle
 peasants

pīnyīn spell the sound, spelling
 pírr skin, wrapping
 pìrú for example
 píxiāng suitcase
 pū to spread, cover
 pǔjí widespread, universal
 pūjìn assail, enter
 pūmǎn cover all over
 pútao grape
 pútaojiǔ grape wine
 pǔtōng ordinary
 pǔtōng diànbào ordinary telegram
 pǔtōnghuà "common language" –
 Mandarin

Q

qī seven
 qí chess
 qí to ride
 qǐ arise, begin
 qì build (up)
 qì breath
 qiān thousand
 qián before; in advance

qián money
 qiānbǐ pencil
 qiánbianr (in) front
 qiáng wall
 qiǎng forcibly, unreasonably
 qiángdǎ strong stroke
 qiángwēi rose
 qián-hòu from first to last, in all
 qiánjin advance
 qiánmian in front of
 qiánshù sum of money
 qiǎnwàn on any account, by all means
 qiānxū modest
 qiānzhèng visa
 qiānzi sign name
 qiāo knock, tap
 qiāo mén knock at door
 qiáo bridge
 qiáo look
 qiǎo by chance, coincidentally
 qiàoménr knack, secret
 qìchē car, motor vehicle
 qìchēchǎng car factory
 qìchēzhàn bus stop
 qìfēn atmosphere
 qíguài strange, odd
 qìhòu climate
 qǐjiān period
 qǐjiàn *see wèile ... qǐjiàn*
 qílai get up
 qilai *verb ending*: begin; up, together
 qīng light
 qīng indigo
 qíng clear, blue (of sky)
 qǐng please; ask for
 qīngcài green vegetables
 qīngcài zhádòufugānr fried beancurd
 with fresh vegetables
 qīngchéng clear (of water)
 qīngchu clear
 qīngdàn plain, mild, not spicy
 qīnggōngyèguǎn light industry hall
 qíngkuàng condition, circumstances
 qínglǎng bright and clear
 qīngnián young
 qīngpén dàyǔ torrential rain
 qīngqīng light(ly)
 qīngqiú request
 qǐngwèn May I ask?
 qíngxìng state, condition

qīngzǎo early in the day
 qīngzhù celebrate
 qīnqi relatives
 qīnqiè warm, friendly
 qípán chess board
 qìpò air, look
 qíquán comprehensive
 qìr air, breath
 qíshí in fact
 qítā (the) other
 qiū autumn
 qiú ball, point in game
 qiúlèi ball games
 qiúpāi bat
 qiūtiān autumn
 qìwēn temperature
 qíyú the rest
 qīzi wife
 qízìr chess piece
 qù go, go and
 qu *directional complement*
 quàn urge, try to persuade
 quánbù entirely
 quánháng total length
 quánhéng the whole city
 quánguó the whole country
 quánhǐng the whole view
 quánnián the whole year
 quánxiào the whole school
 qǔdé get, gain
 quēdiǎn fault
 qún crowd
 qùnián last year
 qúnzhòng the masses, the general public
 qúnzi skirt
 qùshì pass away, die

R

ràng make, tell, let, have
 ránhòu afterwards
 rè hot
 rèdù temperature
 rèliè enthusiastic
 rén person, people
 rènào jolly, bustling, boisterous
 réngōngměi man-made beauty
 rénkǒu population
 rénmín people
 rénmín gōngshè people's commune

rénmínbì people's currency
rénmínmào "people's cap"
rénqún crowd of people
rènsēng shy
rènshi know
rénxīn people's hearts
rénxíng dào pavement
rényuán personnel
rènzhen earnest
rèqíng warm(ly)
rèxīn enthusiastic
rì day
ribào daily paper
richáng everyday
richáng yòngpǐn everyday articles
richéng schedule
rìlì calendar
Rìwén Japanese language
riyì daily increasing
riyòngpǐn things for daily use
rìzi day
róng accommodate
róngnà hold, contain
róngxìng be honoured
róngyì easy
ròu meat
róuhuǎn gentle, soft and slow
ruǎnxí first class (on train)
rúguǒ if
rúhé how
rùmén introduction
ruò weak
rùzuò take one's seat

S

sài match, contest
sān three
sǎn umbrella
sàn disperse, scatter; break up, end
sànbù stroll
sānhǎo model (student)
sǎo sweep
sàsà rustling sound
sècǎi colour
shāchuāng screen window
shǎn flash
shānfēng mountain peak
shàng to; attend; mount, get on; go up;
 above

shàng tóu go to one's head
shang on top of; in (the sphere of); *verb*
ending on
shàngbān go to work, start work
shàngcéng upper level
shāngdiàn shop
Shànghǎicài Shanghai food
Shànghǎirén native of Shanghai
shàngjiào midday nap
shanglai *verb ending up*
shàngmian (on) top
shāngpǐn goods
shàngwǔ morning
shàng-xià superior and inferior
shàng-xiàbān go to and from work
shàngxián wind up
shàngxīn put one's mind to
shàngxué go to school, attend classes
shàngyǎn perform, put on
shàngyī top clothes
shānjī mountain ridge
shànyú excel in
shānzǎ hawberries
shànzi fan
shāo burn
shǎo little, few, rarely
shāohuǐ destroy by fire
shàoniángōng children's palace
shǎoshù small number, minority
shāowēi just a little
shé snake
shè service, agency
shè establish, provide
shèbèi facilities, equipment
shécài snake dishes
shēchǐ extravagant
shèhuìzhǔyì socialism
shèjì plan, design
shēncái stature, physique
shēng light; produce
shēng bìng fall ill
shēng xiù to rust
shēng to rise
shēng *measure word* a sound
shèng be left over
shèng (gain) victory
shèng-bài victory and defeat; winner and
 loser
shēngchǎn production
shēngchǎn dàduì production brigade

shēngchǎnduì production team
shēngchǎnfēi production expenses
shēngdào rise to
shēngdòng vivid, lively
shēnggāo to rise
shēnghuó live, life
shènglì victory
shēngmíng life
shēngqián (in) lifetime
shēng *measure word*; sound
shéng string, cord
shēngri birthday
shèngxíng popular
shèngxià leave over; leave behind
shēngyīn sound
shēngyuán cheer for
shēnhūxī breathe deeply
shénme what?; any
shénme shíhour when?
shénmede and so on
shēnpáng at one's side
shénqì life-like
shēngqīngdān application form
shēnshang on one's person
shēntǐ body
shènzhòng caution, cautious
Shè-shì centigrade
shèyuán commune member
shí ten
shí time; when
shǐ use; make, cause
shì business, affair, thing
shì be; that is so
shì style
shì try
shì de that is so
shì ma Is that so?
shībài failure
shībushàng unable to use
shícháng frequently
shíchāng market
shīcí poetry
shídài age, time, period
shìde *sign of comparison*: like
shíduo tidy up
shíhou time
shíhour time
shíjì actual
shíjì shang in actuality
shíjì exploits

shìjì century
shíjiān time
shìjiè world
shíjīnjiàng soyabean paste with other
 ingredients
shíjūn-lìdì evenly matched
shíliushù pomegranate tree
shíliushù-zhī pomegranate tree branches
shìnnèi inside the city
shīqī humidity
shíqī period
shìqíng matter, affair
shìr affair, business
shīrén poet
shítǎ stone tower
shítái stone platform, base
shítáng dining hall
shíwǔ yuèyè night of the full moon (the
 15th)
shíxí have practical training
shíyì poetic feeling
shíyòng use
shíyóu petroleum
shíyù appetite
shízài really, honestly
shízilùkǒu crossroad
shōu receive, accept
shǒu hand
shǒu defend; abide by
shòu receive
shōubàorén recipient of telegram
shòubùliǎo unable to bear
shòudào suffer, be subjected to
shòuděng wait
shòudū capital
shōuhǎo keep, put away
shōuhuò harvest, gain
shòuhuótíng sales kiosk
shòuhuòyuán sales person
shōujù receipt
shòumàibù department (in store)
shòupiàochù ticket office
shòupiàoyuán conductor; ticket seller
shōurù income
shōushi tidy up
shǒutí pībāo hand luggage
shōuxia accept
shǒuxù procedure
shōuyīnjī radio receiver
shū book

shū lose
shǔ count
shù stand erect
shuāng pair (of)
shuānyángrou boiled thin-sliced mutton
shūcài vegetables
shūdiàn bookshop
shūfáng study
shūfu comfortable
shuí who?; whoever
shuǐ water; liquid, ink
shuì sleep
shuǐfèn juice (content)
shuǐguǒ fruit
shuǐmiàn water surface
shuǐpíng standard, level
shùlì to erect
shùliàn expert, practised
shùmu figure
shùnlì successful
shùnzhe along
shuō say, speak
shuō huà speak
shuōbùchū inexpressible
shuōcuò make a blunder (verbal)
shuōmíng explain
shuōmíngshū programme
shuōshi say that
shūshu uncle
shūxin diànbào letter telegram
shù yè tree leaves
shùzhī tree branch
sì four
sì temple
Sichuāncài Szechuan food
sihū seemingly
sījī driver
sìjì four seasons
simiàn on four sides, all sides
sǐqū die
sīxiǎng thought, ideology, ideological
sīxiǎngjiā thinker
siyuàn temple
sìzhōu on all sides
sòng accompany, take (to); see off
sòngdào deliver to
sònggěi give to (as a present)
sòngxíng see off
suàn reckon; be considered
suàn garlic

suànle let it be, call it a day
suànzhang reckon up the bill
sūcuì crisp
suí (go) along with
sui year of age
suíbiàn at one's convenience
suihòu soon after
suīrán although
suīrán ... dànshi ... although ... yet ...
suishí at any time
suishur age, number of years
suitóng accompany, along with
sùjīng plain, sober
suǒ *measure word*
suǒ *particle used in descriptive clauses*
suǒduǎn reduce
suǒyǐ therefore
súyǔ common saying
sùzào sculpt, create

T

tā he, she, it
tǎ pagoda
tái *measure word*
tài too
táijī foundation
tàijíquán taijiquan (form of exercise)
tàiyáng sun
táizuò platform
tāmen they
tán chat
tán phlegm
tànbīng enquire after health
tāng soup
tǎng lie
tàng *measure word*
tánghúlu sugar-coated fruit
tángwū living room
tánhuà talk, chat
tánlùn discuss
tǎnzi blanket
tào *measure word*
táohuā peach-blossom
tǎolùn discuss
tāorǎo impose on hospitality
tèbié especial, specially
tèbié kuàichē special express
tèchǎn special products
tècháng special merit

tèdiǎn characteristic
téng hurt, ache
tèyì especially
tī kick; play (football)
tí mention
tí inscribe
tì in place of, for
tiān day; sky; time of day
tiān add, get extra
tiān máfan give extra trouble
tián sweet
tiánjīng field and track
tiānkōng sky
tiānqì weather
tiānshàng in the sky
tiāntáng paradise
tiánxiě fill in
tiányā force-fed duck
tiāo choose
tiáo *measure word*

tiáor stripe
tiāoxuǎn choose
tīcǎo gymnastics
tiē stick (on)
tiělù railway
tiělùqiáo railway bridge
tiēzhe up against
tígāo raise
tǐlì physical strength
tīng listen, listen to, heed
tíng stop
tíng very
tíngchē stop (of vehicle)
tīngdòng make out (from listening); understand
tīnghuà obey, obedient
tīngjiàn hear
tīng jīng bùrú kàn jǐng hearing about a scene is not as good as seeing a scene
tīngshuō hear tell
tiwēn (body) temperature
tiwēnbiǎo thermometer
tīyù physical training, sports
tiyùguǎn gymnasium
tōng pass through
tóngbān be in the same class
tóngbān tóngxué classmate
tōngguò through; pass through, over
tóngshí at the same time
tóngshì colleague

tóngxué fellow student
tóngyī uniformly
tóngzhì comrade
tóu head; first
tóuténg (have) headache
tóuyūn feel faint
tuán group, delegation
tuányuán member of group
tuánzhǎng leader of delegation
túchǎn local products
tùchū let out (from the mouth)
túdīng drawing pin
túhuà picture
tuì retreat, go backwards
tuishāo fever recede
tuō entrust (to)
tuō'ersuǒ nursery
tuōmo saliva
tuōxié slippers

W

wa *final particle*
wài outside
wàibì foreign currency
wàibīn foreign visitor
wàibù outside
wàiguórén foreigner
wàimian outside
wàiwén foreign languages
wān bend
wān yāo bend at the waist
wán finish
wǎn late
wǎn bowl
wàn ten thousand
wánchéng complete
wǎnfàn evening meal
wàng forget
wàng towards
wángōng complete work
wǎngqiú tennis
wánjù toy
wánle finished
wánquán completely
wánr play, amuse oneself
wánshàn complete, perfect
wǎnshàng evening, night
wǎnxiàqu bend over
wǎnyàn dinner party

wányìr plaything
wánzhěng perfect, intact
wéi verb ending as
wéi put round, surround
wèi measure word
wèi situated
wèi exclamation
wèi taste
wèi on account of; in order to
wèi stomach
wěidà great
wèidào taste
wéijīn scarf
wèikǒu appetite
wèile in order to
wèile ... qǐjiàn for the sake of, in the interests of
wèir smell
wéirǎo centre on
wèishénme why?
wěiyuán committee member
wén to smell
wěn steady, sure, calm
wèn ask
wéndào to smell
wéngé cultural revolution
wēnhe gentle
wénhuà culture, cultural
wénhuà dàgémìng Great Cultural Revolution
wénhuàgōng palace of culture
wénjiàn smell
wénmáng illiterate
wénrén literary man
wèntí question, problem
wénwù cultural relics
wēnxí revise, review
wénxuéjiā writer
wénzì form of writing
wǒ I, me
wǒ kàn in my view
wò grasp, hold
wòchē sleeping car
wǒmen we, us
wòpù sleeping berth
wòshì bedroom
wòshǒu shake hands
wǔ five
wǔdǎ fighting and acrobatics
wǔfàn lunch

wúguǐ diànchē trolley bus
wūlǐ indoors
wūmén door of room
wúshù countless
wúshù military art
wútái stage
wútóng paulownia
wútóu-wúwěi headless and tailless
wúyānméi smokeless coal
wūzǐ room

X

xī west
xī die away
xī wash
xì thin; closely, carefully
xì play
xià fall; get down from; play (chess); below; next
xià scare, frighten
xià summer
xià under
xiàbān finish work
xiàbianr (at the) bottom
xiàcéng lower level
xiàcì next time
xialai verb ending down; tail off
xiàmian beneath
xiān first
xiān ... zài ... first ... then ...
xiān fresh tasting
xián slack, idle
xiàn string, line
xiànbīng military police
xiáncài pickled vegetables
xiàndài the present time, modern times
xián-dàn seasoning, saltiness
xiānde appear, look
xiāng fragrant; appetising
xiāng mutual, between the two
xiāng inset, inlay
xiāng to sound
xiāng intend; think
xiàng like, be like
xiàng portrait
xiàng photograph
xiàng towards
xiǎngbì be sure that
xiāngdāng quite, fairly

xiànglái up till now, all along
xiàngpiàn photograph
xiàngqí chess
xiǎngqilai recall
xiāngtián sweet
xiāngtóng alike
xiāngwèir scent
xiángxì in detail; be well informed (about)
xiāngyān cigarette
xiàngyáng facing the sun
xiàngyào want
xiǎngyìng respond to, in response to
xiàngzhēng symbol
xiànr filling
xiānsheng Mr.
xiántán chat (idly)
xiānyàn loud, glaring
xiǎnyào strategically important
xiànzài now
xiànzi filling
xiāo pare, slice
xiāo sell
xiǎo small; little, young
xiǎo běnzi notebook
xiào smile, laugh
xiǎochī snack
xiǎode know
xiǎofēizhě consumer
xiǎomài wheat
xiǎopéngyou "little friends", children
xiǎoshí hour
xiǎoshòu sell
xiǎoshuōr fiction, novel
xiǎowányìr trifle, little thing
xiàoxīxī all smiles
xiǎoxué primary school
xiǎoxuésheng primary school pupil
xiǎozú soldier
xiàqu get off
xiaqu verb ending down
xiārén dòufu shrimp beancurd
xiāshuō talk silly
xiàtiān summer
xiàwàng look down
xiàwǔ afternoon
xībianr west side
xībié say regretful farewell
xǐdé washed and ready
xiē some
xiē rest (from)

xiě write
xiè thank
xiēgōng take time off work
xiěxialai write down
xièxiè thank you
xīfàn rice gruel
xífú suit
xīhuan like, enjoy
xījiāo western suburbs
xīmiàn west side
xīn heart, mind
xīn new
xìn letter
xīnfēng envelope
xíng be all right, OK
xǐng wake up
xìng be surnamed
xíngchéng form
xìngfú happy, fortunate
xìngguā apricot blossom
xíngli luggage
xínglijia luggage rack
xìngmíng name
xìngnéng capability
xīngqī week
xīngqī jǐ which day of the week?
xīngqīliù Saturday
xīngqīrì Sunday
xīngqītiān Sunday
xīngqīwǔ Friday
xīngqīyī Monday
xíng rén pedestrians
xíngshǐ drive, travel
xíngshì state of play
xíngshì form
xíngxiàng form, appearance, figure, image
xīnkǔ tiring, gruelling
xīnnián new year
xīnqíng feelings
xīnshǎng appreciate, see if one enjoys
xīnwén news
xīnxíng new style, new model
xīnzháiqū new housing area
xīnzhǐ writing paper
xīnzhōng in one's heart
xióngmāo panda
xióngwěi majestic
xìpiào theatre ticket
xīshēng sacrifice

xìshì matter for celebration
xiù rust
xiù embroider
xiūbù repair
xiūjiàn build
xiūlǐ repair
xiùr sleeve
xiūxi rest
xiūzhù construct
xīwàng hope; would like
xīxiào laugh merrily
xǐzǎojiàn bathroom
xǔan choos
xuāngào proclaim
xùchánguǎn livestock hall
xǔduō very many
xué learn; learn from, emulate
xuě snow
xuèhàn blood and sweat
xuéhuì learn, master
xuésheng student
xuéxí study, learn
xuéxiào school
xuèyā blood pressure
xùnsù speedy
xūyào need

Y

yā duck
ya final particle
yāgān duck liver
yāgǔ duck bones
yān tobacco
yán along
yán salt
yán tight, strict
yán speak, express
yǎn eyes
yǎn act, perform
yàn swallow
yǎng rear, keep
yàngbǎnxì model play
yánghuáihuā acacia blossom
yàng appearance
yàngzi look, appearance
yǎnji acting skill
yǎnjīng eye
yánjiū investigate
yánlù along the way

yǎnqián before one's eyes
yánsè colour
yàntai inkstone
yǎnyuán actor
yánzhe bordering, along the line of
yāo weigh
yào will, be going to; take (of time); want;
order
yào if
yàohǎo good, close (friends)
yáohuāng wave, sway
yàopín medicine
yāoqiú request
yàoshi if
yàoshi key
yāpí duck skin
yǎrlí type of pear
yāròu duck meat
yāròu chǎocài fried duck meat and
vegetables
yě also
yèlì night-time, at night
yèxià under the arm
yěxǔ perhaps
yèzǒnghuì night club
yī one; the whole
yí cì at one time
yì fāngmiàn ... yì fāngmiàn on the one
hand ... on the other
yī ... jiù ... as soon as ... then ...
yī rely on, follow the lead of
yǐ "B"
yǐ already
yǐ with, by; on account of
yībān average, general; on average
yìbiān one side
yìbiān ... yìbiān ... on the one hand ...
on the other ...
yìbiānr one side
yìbiānr ... yìbiānr ... on the one hand ...
on the other ...
yíbùfen part of
yíchǎn heritage
yīchú wardrobe
yídài area, district
yìdiǎn an amount (of)
yìdiǎnr a little
yídìng certain(ly); fixed
yīfu clothes
yígòng altogether

yǐhòu after; in the future
yíhuìr a while
yíhí and
yìjiàn view, opinion, comment
yìjīng already
yìjǔ-liǎngdé kill two birds with one stone
yíkùair together; a part
yílái in the first place
yìlián in succession, one after another
yílù the whole way
yílù píng'ān a safe journey, bon voyage
yí mù liǎoran understand at a glance
yǐn draw, attract
yǐn rén zhùmù attract people's attention
yīncǐ for this reason
yíng win
yíng reflect, cast an image
yīngdāng should be
yíngfu deal with, cope with
yīnggāi should, ought
yíngjiē welcome, meet
Yīngwén English
yíngxí second class
yíngxiǎng effect, influence
yīngxióng hero
yíngxípiào second class ticket
yíngyèyuán clerk
yínháng bank
yínhuābù printed cloth
yīnlì lunar calendar
yīnlì nián new year (according to lunar
calendar)
yīnshānglai cloud over
yīnshuāchǎng printing works
yīnwei because
yīnwei ... de guānxi due to, because of
yīnyuè music
yīnyuē vaguely
yìqǐ together
yìqián before; formerly
yíqiè all
yǐshàng upwards of
yīshēng doctor
yìshí momentarily
yìshù art, artistic
yìsī a wisp of
yìsì interest; meaning; intention
yìtóng together
yīwà clothes and socks
yīwài apart from, besides

yíwàng-wújì as far as the eye can see
yíwéi think
yíxià once
yíxiàng all along, consistently
yíxià once
yíxiàzi at one go; at once
yíxiē some, a few
yíyàng equally; the same
yìyì meaning, significance
yīyuàn hospital
yīyuè January
yìzǎo early in the morning
yízhènzì for a time
yízhí throughout; directly
yǐzi chair
yòng use; partake of
yòngbuzháo there is no need
yōngjī crowded
yònglái use to
yòngli use force, strenuously; (use) effort
yòngpǐn article
yòngzuò use as
yóu by
yóu travel round, go round
yǒu have, there is/are
yǒu lǐmào courteous
yǒu yì tiān one day
yǒu yìsì be interesting
yòu again, next
yòu ... yòu both ... and ...
yòucè right side
yóude some
yǒudeshì be plentiful
yóudiànjú post and telegraph office
yóudiānr somewhat
yòu'éryuán kindergarten
yǒuguān related to
yóuguàng roam around, tour
yǒuhǎo friendship
yóujiàn mail
yóujú post office
yóulǎn sight see
yóuliàng shiny
yòumian (on) the right
yǒumíng famous
yóuni greasy
yóupiào postage stamp
yōurán zídé unhurried and contented
yǒushì sometimes
yòushi ... yòushi ... both ... and ...

yòushǒu right hand
 yǒutiáo-bùwěn in perfect order
 yóuxì games, recreation
 yōuxiù outstanding
 yǒuyì friendship
 yóuyǒng swim, swimming
 yóuyú due to
 yú in, at, on
 yǔ rain
 yuán yuan (unit of currency)
 yuǎn far
 yuándàn first day of new year
 yuándì vegetable plot
 yuánlái it turns out that ...; originally
 yuánliào raw material, substance
 yuánshú practised; polished
 yuànyì be willing to
 yuányuè round moon
 yuánzhǔbǐ ballpoint pen
 yuànzi yard
 yǔdiǎnr raindrop
 yùdìng fix in advance, be planned to
 yuē approximately; arrange
 yuè month
 yuè ... yuè ... the more ... the more ...
 yuè lái yuè ... more and more ...
 yuèfā more and more, progressively
 yuēhǎo make an appointment
 yuēhuì appointment
 yuèjìhuā all season roses
 yuèqì musical instrument
 yuètái platform
 yuèyè moonlit night
 Yúgong yí shān Yugong moves
 mountains
 yùjiàn meet
 yúkuài enjoyable, happy
 yǔliàng rainfall
 yǔmáoqiú badminton
 yùmǐ corn
 yùn press, iron
 yúncái cloud
 yùndòng exercise, athletics, sports
 yùndòngyuán athlete, player
 yúntái "cloud platform"
 yǔshēng sound of rain
 yúshì thereupon
 yǔshuǐ rain, rainwater
 yǔwén language
 yùxiān in advance

Z

zài to be (located); in, at, on; engaged in
 zài jiā to be at home
 zài again; and then; further, more
 zàijiàn goodbye
 zánmen we
 zǎo early; long since
 zǎochén morning
 zǎofàn breakfast
 zǎojiù long since
 zǎorì soon, shortly
 zǎoshang morning
 záwén extempore essays
 zázhì magazine
 zěn how?
 zěnmē how? How is it that? How's that?;
 however
 zěnmē bàn What can be done?; How does
 one manage?
 zěnmē ge ... far How do you go
 about ...?
 zěnmeyàng How are things? How's it
 going?
 zěnyàng how?
 zhà brakes
 zhǎixiǎo narrow, cramped
 zhǎn *measure word* (usually for lamps)
 zhǎn unfold, lay out
 zhàn occupy, take up
 zhàn to stand; bus stop
 zhànchǎng battle ground
 zhǎnchū display
 zhāng *measure word*
 zhàng *unit of length*; chi
 zhàngfu husband
 zhàngkāi open
 zhàngluo wait upon, help with food
 zhǎngshēng sound of clapping
 zhǎngguǎn exhibition hall
 zhànguǎn used to standing
 zhǎnkāi unfold
 zhǎnpǐn exhibits
 zhànshèng beat (in contest)
 zhànzhēng war
 zhànzhù stop, halt
 zhǎo find, fetch; give change; look up,
 visit
 zhào to take (photograph)
 zhào according to, in terms of

zhāodài entertain
 zhāodàishì reception room
 zhāodào find
 zháojí anxious, agitated
 zhàojiù as before
 zhàoliào look after, take care of
 zhāopái signboard
 zhàopiàn photograph
 zhāoshù move, gambit
 zhàoxiàngjī camera
 zhǎozhǎo find
 zhè this
 zhè jiù right away
 zhè *progressive suffix*
 zhèbianr over here
 zhège this
 zhèlǐ here
 zhème so, thus
 zhème shuō from what (you) say
 zhēn real, really
 zhēn shìde that's really so
 zhèn spell, length of time
 zhènbìng medical examination
 zhěrchá examine
 zhēnde truly, it's true, yes indeed
 zhēng fight for, contend over
 zhěng exactly
 zhèng right, exactly
 zhèngdiàn main hall
 zhèngfǔ government
 zhènggè whole; as a whole
 zhènglǐ arrange, put in order
 zhèngmén main gate
 zhèngmiàn the right side; side of room
 facing door, in front of one
 zhèngqí neat, tidy
 zhèngquè accurate
 zhèngshì proper
 zhēngguì precious
 zhēngyòng conscript
 zhèngzài just in the process of
 zhèngzhì political
 zhèngzhōng in the centre
 zhènlǐào give treatment
 zhēnpǐn treasure
 zhēnshang fill up, pour (a cup)
 zhēnshì really
 zhēnzhào distinct
 zhèr here
 zhèxiē these, these things

zhèyàng in this way
 zhèyàng in this way
 zhī *measure word*
 zhī hòu after
 zhī jiāo at the juncture of
 zhī wài besides, apart from
 zhí all the time, all along
 zhí straight, upright
 zhǐ only
 zhǐ point to, show
 zhì extend to
 zhì system
 zhīdao know
 zhídao go directly to
 zhīdaole understood, very well
 zhǐdìng specify, fix
 zhígōng staff and workers
 zhīhǎo can only
 zhīhǎo cure
 zhīhuì wisdom
 zhíjiē direct, directly
 zhījīn brocade
 zhíliáo treat, receive treatment
 zhìpǐn manufactured goods
 zhǐshì instruct, direct
 zhǐshì (it is) only
 zhíxiàn in a straight line
 zhǐyào if only, as long as
 zhǐyǒu the only thing to do is
 zhìyú as to, with regard to
 zhìyù academic education
 zhíyuán staff member
 zhìzào manufacture
 zhōng in, inside
 zhōng clock
 zhōng sort, kind
 zhōng swollen
 zhōng plant, grow
 zhòngduō multitudinous
 zhōngfàn lunch
 zhònggōngyè heavy industry
 Zhōngguó cài Chinese food
 Zhōngguó huà Chinese language
 Zhōngguó lǐ Chinese li (= 500 metres)
 Zhōngguó rén Chinese (person)
 zhōngjiān in the middle, in between
 zhōngjiānr in the middle
 zhōnglèi variety, kind
 zhōngr small cup, wine cup
 zhòngshì lay stress on

zhōngtóu hour
Zhōngwén Chinese language
zhōngwǔ noon
zhōngxīn centre
zhōngxīn from the bottom of the heart
zhōngxué secondary school
zhōngxuéshēng secondary pupil
zhōngyāng (in the) middle, centre
zhòngyào important
Zhōngyàocái Chinese herbal medicine
zhōngyè all night
zhōngyú finally
zhōngzhōng all kinds of
zhōudào thorough
zhōunián anniversary
zhū pig
zhǔ boil
zhù stop
zhù live, reside
zhù wish
zhuā take hold of, carry forward
zhuàn turn, revolve
zhuāng put, pack
zhuāngào pass a message to
zhuàngguān grand sight
zhuāngjia crops
zhuànglì magnificent
zhùfáng dwelling house
zhǔfó chief Buddha
zhùhè offer good wishes for
zhùmíng notable, celebrated
zhùmù focus attention
zhǔn allow, be allowed
zhǔn accurate
zhǔnbèi prepare
zhuōzi table
zhǔrèn chairman
zhùshi watch attentively
zhūwèi all of you (polite)
zhǔxí chairman
zhǔyào main, mainly
zhùyuan go into, stay in hospital
zhùzhǐ address
zǐ violet
zì word, character
zidé content with oneself
zǐdì sons and brothers, young people
zìjǐ oneself, by oneself
zìjirén friends, one's own people
zìjù words, phrase

zìmǔ letter
zìmù caption
zǐr (chess) piece
zìránměi natural beauty
zìxíngchē bicycle
zìyóu free, freely
zǒng total
zǒng'éryánzhī to sum up, in short
zǒngjī exchange (telephone)
zǒngshè main office
zǒu go, walk
zǒuhǎo mind how you go
zǒujìn walk into
zǒuláng corridor
zǒumǎ-kànhuā cursorily
zǒuzhe on foot
zū rent, hire
zú enough
zǔ unit, team
zǔchéng make, form into
zǔfù-mǔ grandparents
zúgòu sufficient, adequate
zuǐ mouth
zuì most; extremely
zuì duō at the most
zuìchū at first
zuìgāofēng highest point, pinnacle
zuìhǎo it would be best
zuìhòu finally
zuìjìn recently
zuò do; make; as
zuò *measure word*
zuò sit
zuǒbian left side
zuǒgōng to work
zuòmǎn seat to capacity
zuǒmian (on) the left side
zuòr seat
zuǒshǒu (in the) left hand
zuótian yesterday
zuòwán to complete
zuòwèi seat
zuòwù crops
zuòxià sit down
zuòyè task, work
zuǒyòu to left and right; approximately
zuózhōng clock
zúqiú football

Proper names

Bādálíng Badaling (place to the N. W. of Beijing)
Báidī "White Dyke" (at Xihu in Hangchow)
Báitǎ "White Tower" (in Beihai Park in Beijing)
Běihǎi gōngyuán Beihai Park (in Beijing)
Běijīng Beijing
Běijīng bǎihuò dàlóu Beijing Department Store
Běijīng chēzhàn Beijing Station
Běijīng dàxué Beijing University
Běijīng dòngwùyuán Beijing Zoo
Běijīng kǎoyādiàn Beijing Roast Duck Restaurant
Běijīng shǒudū jīchǎng Beijing Metropolitan Airport
Běijīngshì yóujú Beijing City Post Office
Běiyuán fàndiàn Beiyuan Hotel (in Canton)
Cháng'ānjiē Changan Avenue (in Beijing)
Chángchéng Great Wall
Chángjiāng Yangtze river
Chéngxiánjiē xiǎoxué Chengxian Street Primary School
Dàxióngbǎodiàn Hall of the Great Hero
Dàzhài Dazhai brigade in Shanxi province
Dēngshì xīkǒu place in Beijing
Dōng'ān shìchǎng Dongan market (in Beijing)
Dōngfēng "East Wind" (brand name)
Dōngfēng shìchǎng Dongfeng Market (in Beijing)
Dōngjìn Eastern Chin dynasty
Fēnguó France
Guǎngzhōu Canton
Gùgōng bówùyuán Old Palace Museum
Guóqīngjié National Day
Hángzhōu Hangchow
Hángzhōu fàndiàn Hangchow Hotel
Hóngdēngjì Story of the Red Lantern
Huāgǎng gōngyuán "Flower Harbour Park" (in Hangchow)
Jiāyùguān Jiayu Pass (along Great Wall)
Jiǔlóngbì "Nine Dragon Wall" (in Beihai Park in Beijing)
Jiūshān Hatoyama
Jūyōngguān Juyong Pass (along Great Wall)
Láodòng rénmin wénhuàgōng "Labouring People's Cultural Palace"
Língyīnsì Lingyin Temple (Hangchow)
Lǔxùn Lu Hsun (Chinese writer)
Lǔxùn gùjū Lu Hsun's Former Residence (Shanghai)
Lǔxùn jìniànguǎn Lu Hsun Memorial Hall
Máo Zhǔxí Chairman Mao
Máxiàn hútolong Maxian Alley (in Beijing)
Míng Ming dynasty
Nánjīng Nanking
Nánjīng chángjiāng dàqiáo Nanking Yangtze Great Bridge
Nánjīng dàqiáo Nanking Great Bridge
Píng'ānlǐ place in Beijing
Qiánmén "Front Gate" (central district of Beijing)

Qín Ch'in dynasty
Qīng Ch'ing dynasty
Rénmín dàhuitáng Great Hall of the People
Rénmín gōngyuán People's Park (Shanghai)
Rénmín rìbào People's Daily
Rénmín rìbào shè People's Daily Corporation
Rénmín yīngxióng jìniànbēi People's Heroes' Monument
Sāntán yìnyuè islet in Xihu
Shànghǎi Shanghai
Shāngwù yìnshūguǎn Commercial Press
Shànghǎiguān Shanhai Pass (at Eastern end of Great Wall)
Shìjīāmóunífó Sakyamuni Buddha
Shǒudū jùchǎng Capital Theatre (Beijing)
Shǒudū tǐyùguǎn Capital Gymnasium (Beijing)
Shǒudū yīyuàn Capital Hospital (Beijing)
Sìdà jīngāng Four Great Deva Kings
Sū-Háng Suchow-Hangchow
Tiān'ānmén Tiananmen (gate of Imperial City in Beijing)
Tiān'ānmén guǎngchǎng Tiananmen Square
Tiānwángdiàn Hall of Heavenly Kings
Wángfǔjīng dàjiē Wangfujing Avenue (Beijing)
Wànlǐ chángchéng The Great Wall
Wénhuà dàgémìng The Cultural Revolution
Wǔ-yījié May Day
Xīchéngqū West City Quarter (Beijing)
Xīdān place in Beijing
Xīhú West Lake (Hangchow)
Xīnhuà Shūdiàn Xinhua Bookshop
Xīnjiēkǒu place in Beijing
Xīnkāi hútong Xinkai Alley (Beijing)
Xīnqiáo fāndiàn Xinquiao Hotel (Beijing)
Xǔ Guǎngpíng wife of Lu Hsun
Yán'ānlù Yanan Road
Yīngguó England
Yúntái "Cloud Platform" (at Juyong Pass)
Zhànguó Warring States
Zhōngguó China
Zhōngguó chūkǒu shāngpǐn jiāoyìhuì Chinese Export Products Trade Fair
Zhōngguó gémìng bówùguǎn Museum of the Chinese Revolution
Zhōngguó guójì lǚxíngshè China International Travel Service
Zhōngguó lìshǐ bówùguǎn Museum of Chinese History
Zhōngguó rénmin yínháng Chinese People's Bank
Zhōngguó rénmin gònghéguó Chinese People's Republic
Zijinchéng Forbidden City (Beijing)